Rooms Division Management-II

(BHA 505)

• • •

PREFACE

Gyan Bhushan, IES

Sr Economic Advisor and CEO, NCHMCT
Ministry of Tourism, Govt of India

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Entering your fifth semester, you stand at the threshold of transforming knowledge into expertise and preparing for leadership in the dynamic world of Hospitality Management. This student handbook has been meticulously crafted to provide you with a comprehensive understanding of the principles, practices, and strategies that are essential for success in the dynamic hospitality industry. As the global hospitality landscape continues to evolve, the role of hotel managers become increasingly multifaceted. This handbook written as per the new curriculum based on NEP is a reflection of our commitment to equipping you with the knowledge and skills that will make you not just a successful hotelier but a true hospitality professional.

I would like to extend my gratitude to the dedicated team of educators and industry experts who have contributed their expertise to this textbook. Their collective wisdom ensures that you receive the most relevant and up-to-date information. Remember, in the world of hospitality, the guest is at the heart of everything we do. I invoke you to approach your studies with the same spirit of guest-centricity. It has been a deliberate effort to keep the language used in the student handbook as simple as possible. Necessary pictorial illustrations, formats and review questions have been included to help the learners understand the concept without any difficulty. I wish you a rewarding and enriching learning experience.

Comments and suggestions are welcome for further improvement of the book.

Gyan Bhushan, IES

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit-1

PLANNING & ORGANISING THE HOUSEKEEPING DEPARTMENT

Unit Overview

This unit provides a thorough exploration of the planning process in the housekeeping department, emphasizing on its essential components and documentation. The meaning and significance of planning are covered first, then a thorough examination of the fundamental planning tasks, including their variations and documentation. Students will learn how to make and use area inventory lists, create frequency plans, and establish precise performance and productivity goals. The unit offers a thorough framework for operational excellence by explaining job breakdowns through task developments and job descriptions.

Further, the unit examines inventory management by distinguishing between recycled and non-recycled inventories, determining par levels, and keeping control records. It focuses on effective scheduling methods, guidelines, and formats, as well as tactics for team collaboration, motivation, and adherence to standard operating procedures. Learners will also acquire knowledge in shift organization, duty schedules, and training initiatives. Ultimately, the unit helps students in identifying, computing, and distributing housekeeping personnel efficiently to guarantee seamless operation within the department.

Learning Objectives

Sl. No	Sub Unit	Learning Topics	Key Learning Objectives
01	1.1 Introduction of the Unit	- Planning the Housekeeping Department	1. Define the Planning process of Housekeeping Department
02	1.2 Basic Planning Activities	- Introduction to Basic Planning Activities - Initial Planning Questions - Division of Work Document	1. List Basic Planning Activities 2. Explain Basic Planning Activities 3. Differentiate between the Basic Planning Activities Document
03	1.3 Area Inventory List (AIL)	- Introduction to Area Inventory List - Procedure of making Area Inventory List - Rules for Making the Area Inventory List - Sample format of Area Inventory List	1. Define Area Inventory List 2. Follow and apply rules of making Area Inventory List 3. Prepare the format of Area Inventory List
04	1.4 Frequency Schedule	- Introduction to Frequency Schedule - Key factors affecting	1. Describe Frequency Schedule 2. Develop Frequency

05	1.5 Performance Standard	• Introduction to Performance Standard • Maintaining Performance Standards • Sample format of performance standards. • Best practices. • Task list • Task List in Housekeeping Operations • Sample format of Task List • Job description • Introduction to Job Description • Sample format of Job Description • Standard operating procedure • SOP in Housekeeping • Need of SOP • Development of SOP	1. Illustrate Performance Standard 2. Design Standard Operating Procedure 3. Develop various Task 4. Deduce Job Description
06	1.6 Productivity Standard	• Introduction to Productivity Standard • Developing Productivity Standards. • Factors Influencing Productivity Standards • Sample Format & Example	1. Extrapolate Productivity Standard 2. Breakdown the productivity standard into steps for better understanding 3. Indicate the practice of balance between the performance and Productivity Standard.
07	1.7 Inventory Management	• Understanding Housekeeping Inventories • Recycled Inventory • Non-Recycled Inventory • Establishing Par Levels for Inventory • Par Level for Recycled Items • Par Level for Recycled Items • Inventory Control and Record Keeping • Essential Inventory Control Document • Benefits of Effective Management • Purchase Specifications	1. Differentiate between Recycled and non-Recycled Inventories 2. Compute Par Level 3. Control the inventories 4. Maintain Inventory records
08	1.8 Work Schedules	• Introduction to Work Schedule • Key principles for work schedule • Benefits of a well-structured work schedule • Developing a work schedule • Sample format of work schedule	1. Define Work Schedule 2. Practice the principles of Work Schedule 3. Develop the work-schedule
09	1.9 Coordinating Directing and Controlling	• Coordinating, directing, and controlling • Coordinating: harmonizing efforts for seamless operations • Directing: Guiding and Inspiring the Team • Controlling: Ensuring Standards and Performance • Types of shifts,	1. Coordinate between the team members 2. Inspire and motivate the team Members 3. Ensure the SOP 4. Understand different type of shift 5. Plan Duty rota 6. Organise training Programmes
10	1.10 Staffing	• Planning duty • Training of Housekeeping employees • Staffing in Housekeeping Operations • Staffing Guide • Calculating staff strength • Job allocation	1. Prepare list of housekeeping staffs. 2. Calculate the requirement of staff for housekeeping department. 3. Allocate the jobs

1.1 INTRODUCTION

A systematic approach to planning and setting up the housekeeping division guarantees effective and seamless operations. The fundamental sub-processes are always the same, even though the procedures and terminology may vary depending on the hotel. Important questions that influence the creation of documents for the housekeeping department are the first step in effective planning. When correctly recorded, these plans form the basis for managing personnel, tasks, and resources, eventually promoting rigorous levels of hygiene and service across the hotel.

1.1.1 PLANNING THE HOUSEKEEPING DEPARTMENT

The housekeeping department is essential to preserving hygienic conditions, cleanliness, and aesthetic standards across all areas of a hotel. It is primarily responsible for the upkeep of guest rooms and corridors, ensuring comfort and satisfaction for every guest. Beyond these, it meticulously maintains public areas such as the lobby, restrooms, poolside, patio areas, dining venues, meeting and banquet halls, gyms, spas, convention and exhibit spaces, and hotel-operated retail outlets. The department also manages cleanliness in operational zones like management offices, storage rooms, laundry and linen areas, and sewing rooms. Crucially, back-of-the-house spaces including employee locker rooms and service

Figure 1: Guest Room ITC Grand Chola

corridors are also kept spotless to ensure a safe, professional environment. Housekeeping thus directly supports the hotel's image and guest experience.

Systematic planning is the first step towards effective housekeeping since it guarantees seamless and effective operations. Clearly allocating the job to team members is the first step in the process.

To find and oversee every place that requires upkeep and cleaning, a thorough area inventory list is created. To determine how frequently each area has to be cleaned, frequency schedules are developed. Task lists, job descriptions, and standard operating procedures (SOPs) are examples of performance guidelines that are created to maintain high standards.

Productivity standards guarantee the best possible use of time and resources by measuring how well work is completed. It takes careful planning, direction, and staffing guidelines to manage employee schedules, shifts, and day-to-day operations. Frequent training guarantees the team operates effectively and reliably. Effective inventory management is also essential. This involves monitoring equipment, linen, cleaning supplies, guest supplies, etc. Standard record formats are employed, purchase criteria are defined, frequent stock inspections are carried out, and par levels, the minimum and maximum quantity to be maintained are determined using appropriate procedures. Better quality control, cost savings, and consistent service are the results of this methodical planning strategy. Additionally, it guarantees Guest' happiness, lowers errors, and enhances worker cooperation. In a nut shell, maintaining good standards in hospitality operations requires methodical housekeeping management.

> **Check Back Questions:**
> 1. Why does systematic approach to planning and setting up the housekeeping division is required?
> 2. What is the role of housekeeping department in Hotels?

1.2 BASIC PLANNING ACTIVITIES

In order to achieve hotel goals, the executive housekeeper plays a crucial managerial role by efficiently using scarce resources, including time, labour, equipment, and supplies. Since resources are frequently scarce, strategic planning is crucial to preserving efficient operations, keeping expenses under control, and guaranteeing service consistency. The executive housekeeper increases productivity, which ensures that the housekeeping department runs effectively and professionally, and coordinates team activities with hotel objectives through a methodical planning process.

1.2.1 INTRODUCTION TO BASIC PLANNING ACTIVITIES

Figure 2: Basic Planning Activities

To achieve the objectives specified by higher management, the executive housekeeper uses the resources available to them, just like any other hotel manager. Resources include things like people, money, time, labour, materials, energy, and equipment. Most executive housekeepers are going to happily admit that due to their scarcity, they rarely have all the resources they would desire. Therefore, a key component of the executive housekeeper's job is figuring out how to use the limited resources available to meet the hotel's objectives.

As an executive housekeeper, one of the most important duties is planning. Daily operations can become chaotic without adequate planning, which can result in low employee morale, decreased productivity, and higher expenses. Proper planning facilitates attention retention, distraction avoidance, and effort alignment with hotel objectives. Nonetheless, a methodical, well-defined planning process guarantees that all tasks are completed accurately, effectively and on time. It also aids in cost containment and prudent resource management. The executive housekeeper can confidently lead the team and provide consistent service quality throughout the hotel because to the structure and direction that effective planning provides.

The executive housekeeper's ability to organize the department's activities is demonstrated in the table given below. It outlines the first questions that direct the executive housekeeper's general planning activities and shows the outcome of each planning step. The produced documents serve as the foundational blueprints required to ensure the efficient operation of the housekeeping department.

1.2.2 INITIAL PLANNING QUESTIONS

Each stage of the planning process is examined in the sections that follow.

SI. No.	INITIAL PLANNING QUESTIONS	RESULTING DOCUMENTS
1	Prepare Division of work Document	Division of work Documents
2	What items in the area need to be cleaned or maintained?	Area Inventory List
3	How frequently should each item be cleaned or maintained?	Frequency Schedule
4	What procedures must be followed to clean or maintain the major items?	Performance Standards (Task Lists, SOPs)
6	How much time should it take for an employee to complete ench task as per performance standards?	Productivity Standards (Time Allocation)
6	What quantity of equipment and supplies is required to meet	Inventory Levels (Par Stock, Supply Requirement)
7	Who will do the Work	Work Schedule

1.2.3. DIVISION OF WORK DOCUMENT

The first stage of housekeeping planning is to list every area that falls within the purview of the department. This is particularly important for newly constructed hotels. Stewarding is usually in charge of the kitchen Cleaning (back-of-house) facilities at luxury hotels, whereas housekeeping is usually in charge of the public areas and guest rooms, offices, staff areas, banquet halls, meeting spaces, and leisure facilities. A thorough division-of-work document that includes a list of all staff and guest spaces and the cleaning teams in charge of them should be prepared by the executive housekeeper.

Figure 3: Division of work

areas, banquet halls, meeting spaces, and leisure facilities. A thorough division-of-work document that includes a list of all staff and guest spaces and the cleaning teams in charge of them should be prepared by the executive housekeeper.

Check Back Questions:

1.What are the resources at the disposal of housekeeper to meet the goals set by upper management?

1.3 AREA INVENTORY LISTS

The first step in planning housekeeping duties is to create a thorough area inventory list. It directs cleaning procedures, inspections, and training, guaranteeing that every object in the hotel which are to be cleaned by the housekeeping department are tracked and listed down. Different inventory lists are prepared for each type/category of guestrooms and each public area respectively.

1.3.1 INTRODUCTION TO AREA INVENTORY LIST

Making an inventory list of every item in each location that requires housekeeping's care is the first step in organizing the department's work. The area inventory list should be prepared first since it guarantees that all of the items for which housekeeping will be held responsible for cleaning are included in the subsequent planning activities. Long and incredibly thorough inventory lists are inevitable. All the public area and each sort of guestroom may require its own inventory list because most properties have multiple types of guestrooms.

Figure 4: Area Inventory List

1.3.2 PROCEDURE OF MAKING AREA INVENTORY LIST

For making an inventory list of the guestroom area, it's a good idea to use the same process that supervisors will use for their inspections and that room attendants will use as the sequence for their cleaning tasks. This makes it possible for the executive housekeeper to create cleaning methods, training plans and inspection checklists using the inventory lists as a foundation. Items in a guestroom, for instance, might be listed on an inventory list from top to bottom and from right to left. The idea is that room attendants and supervisors should utilize the same system in the course of their everyday work, regardless of the usage of other systematic techniques.

Figure 5: Making of Area Inventory List

1.3.3 RULES FOR MAKING THE AREA INVENTORY LIST

It's crucial to employ a methodical and consistent approach while generating an Area Inventory List for the housekeeping division. List the things starting at the area's entrance to guarantee a logical starting place. Next, cover all surfaces, including walls, ceilings, flooring, and furniture, working your way from top to bottom. To make sure you don't miss anything, go around the room either clockwise or counter clockwise.
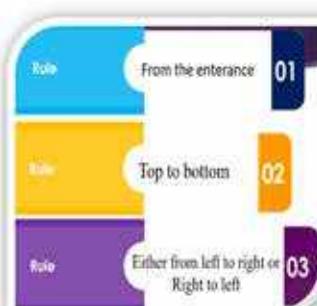

Figure 6: Rules to follow for making Area Inventory

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

This method guarantees that the inventory list is comprehensive and in line with the methods used by supervisors and room attendants to clean and inspect the area. Maintaining high standards, assigning tasks, and training are all facilitated by this uniformity.

INVENTORY RULE	DESCRIPTION
1. Start at the entrance	Begin listing items from the room or area entrance.
2. Top to bottom approach	Move from ceiling to floor—cover fans, lights, furniture, and carpets.
3. Clockwise or anticlockwise flow	Follow one direction around to room to avoid missing any section.

Note: Use the same pattern as used by room attendants and supervisors for inspections.

1.3.4. SAMPLE FORMAT OF AREA INVENTORY LIST

Every item in a particular area under housekeeping's supervision for cleaning is listed in detail in the Area Inventory List.

An example format for efficient planning and organizing can be found below.

BEDROOM AREA INVENTORY	BATHROOM AREA INVENTORY
Doors, locks, chains, stoppers	Bathroom door, lock, stopper
Light fixtures, switches, dimmers	Light fixtures, switches
Ceiling (cleanliness, paint, cobwebs)	Ceiling (moisture, cobwebs, cracks)
Walls (marks, cracks, stains)	Walls (tile grout, mold, stains)
Floor tiles or carpets (stains, cracks)	Floor tiles, non-slip mats
Woodwork (wardrobes, trims, skirting)	Vanity unit and storage shelves
Curtains, drapes, sheers, and hardware	Shower curtain or glass partition
Windows, sills, screens, locks	Mirrors (cleanliness, cracks)
HVAC system (heater, air conditioner)	Shower head, faucets, water flow
Telephone and intercom devices	Bathtub, grab bars, non-slip surface
Television, remote control, radio/alarm clock	Wash basin, mixer tap, water temperature
Headboards (cleanliness, fixture check)	Toilet seat, flush handle, cistern
Bed (mattress, linen, bedspread, pillows)	Toilet paper holder and supply

Dressers, nightstands, drawers	Sani-bin with liner
Lamps, shades, bulbs	Exhaust vent (dust-free, working)
Chairs, sofas, cushions	Towel racks, robe hooks
Ashtrays and waste paper basket	Amenities (soap, shampoo, towels)
Carpet (stains, fraying edges)	Floor drain (clear, odor-free)
Wall art, pictures, and mirrors	Cleaning signage and supply readiness
Closet interior, hangers, luggage rack, ironing board	
Electronic safe, operating instructions	
Mini-bar/fridge, inventory check, temperature	
Room amenities (tea/coffee maker, notepad, etc.)	

Check Back Questions:
1. Define Performance Standard.
2. What is the right way to choose cleaning agents for proper performance standards?

1.4. FREQUENCY SCHEDULE

All areas specified in the housekeeping area inventory are guaranteed to be cleaned methodically and on time with the help of a frequency schedule. It involves deep cleaning on a daily, weekly, and sporadic basis. Effective scheduling and departmental cooperation maximize employee productivity, uphold hygienic standards, and reduce visitor disruption, all of which improve service quality and the overall visitor experience.

1.4.1 INTRODUCTION TO FREQUENCY SCHEDULE

The frequency of cleaning and maintenance of various items from the area inventory list is specified in a frequency schedule, which guarantees methodical and regular maintenance of entire hotel. Daily or weekly duty including vacuuming carpets, dusting furniture, and cleaning bathrooms are all part of standard cleaning practices. A periodic or deep-cleaning program may include other duty like deep-cleaning curtains, polishing metal fixtures, or shampooing carpets, which can be planned on a biweekly, monthly, or quarterly basis. These are usually done as special tasks by the night cleaning staff or during off-peak

hours. Frequency schedules guarantee that no area is missed cleaning, preserve hygienic standards.

This will allow the executive housekeeper to schedule these duty as cleaning
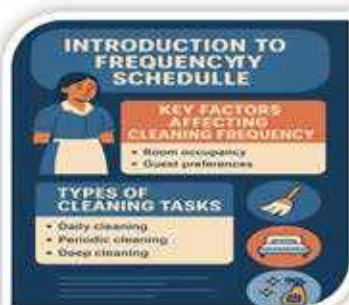
Figure 7: Frequency Schedule

Figure 8: Different Types Frequencies

projects all year long. By coordinating cleaning tasks with operational goals, this schedule guarantees the best possible staff and resource allocation. The executive housekeeper must ensure interdepartmental collaboration, staff availability, and occupancy levels into account when making frequency Schedule. For example, to save time, general cleaning for certain guestrooms should be done concurrently with major repairs planned by the engineering department. Efficiency is ensured, visitor interruption is decreased, and service quality is improved by coordinating with departments such as banquets, maintenance, front office and other departments of the hotel. A better guest experience, increased staff efficiency, and more seamless operations are all results of proactive calendar preparation of frequency Schedule.

1.4.2 KEY FACTORS AFFECTING CLEANING FREQUENCY AND SCHEDULING

Factors Influencing Cleaning Frequency:

1. Type of area (guestroom, public area, back-of-house, etc.)
2. Condition of surfaces (material type, wear and tear)
3. User density and foot traffic
4. Function of the area and nature of activities conducted
5. Required cleanliness and hygiene standards
6. Type of soil present (dust, grease, organic waste, etc.)
7. Mode of soil transport (e.g., via shoes, airflow, spills)
8. Risk of infection or contamination
9. Guest feedback or complaint history

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

10. Climatic or seasonal variations (e.g., monsoons may demand higher frequency)

1.4.3 TYPES OF CLEANING TASKS

Routine Cleaning Tasks:

➢ Performed daily or weekly

➢ Includes dusting, vacuuming, mopping, emptying bins, sanitizing bathrooms, etc.

➢ Incorporated into standard operating procedures (SOPs)

Deep Cleaning Tasks:

➢ Scheduled bi-weekly, monthly, or quarterly

➢ Includes carpet shampooing, curtain laundering, furniture polishing, tile scrubbing, etc.

➢ Treated as special projects

Scheduling Considerations:

➢ Deep cleaning and special projects should align with low occupancy periods

➢ Scheduling should be flexible to adapt to operational changes

➢ Coordination with other departments is essential for efficiency

➢ Planning minimizes guest disturbance and maximizes staff productivity

1.4.4   SAMPLE FORMAT OF FREQUENCY SCHEDULE:

A. BEDROOM CLEANING FREQUENCY SCHEDULE	
TASK	**FREQUENCY**
Clean doors, locks, chains, stops	1/D
Clean and inspect the switches and lights	1/D & Check: 1/W
The ceiling should be clean	1/M
Dust Walls	1/W
Clean Walls	1/6M
Vacuum/mop floor tiles	1/D
Buff floor tiles	1/M
Polish floor tiles	1/6M
Dust every piece of furniture	1/D
All woodwork should be polished	1/M
Window drapes and its tracks should be cleaned	1/M
Clean Windows	1/W
Make sure the air conditioning and heating settings are correct	1/D
Dust and inspect television and radio	1/D

Damp-dust headboards	2/W
Change spreads and bedding	2/D
Turn and rotate mattress	1/6M
Make sure the nightstand and dressers are clean	2/W
Clean the lamps, lampshades and bulbs	1/D
Damp-dust pictures and mirrors	1/D
Polish picture and mirror glass	1/W
Vacuum chairs and sofa	2/W
Vacuum carpets	2/W
Carpets Shampooing	1/6M
Empty and clean ashtrays and wastepaper baskets	1/D
Dust closet and safe	2/W
Damp-dust mini bar	2/W
Replenish mini bar contents	1/D
Replenish guestroom amenities	1/D
Disinfect high-touch surfaces (e.g., remotes, handles, phones)	1/D
D = Daily W = Weekly M = Monthly 2M = Every Two Months 6M = Every Six Months	

B. BATHROOM CLEANING FREQUENCY SCHEDULE	
TASK	**FREQUENCY**
Damp-dust bathroom doors	1/D
Clean and inspect the lights and switches	Clean: 1/D & Check: 1/W
Clean ceiling	1/M
Dust Walls	1/W
Wash Walls	1/6M
Mop floor tiles	1/D
Buff floor tiles	1/M
Damp-dust the mirrors	2/D
Polish mirrors	2/W
Clean tub and grab bars	1/D
Clean shower head	1/M
Damp-dust shower curtain	1/D
Scrub shower curtain	2/M
Inspect and clean fixtures and faucets	1/D
Clean toilet seat and flush handle	1/D
Inspect and clean tissue holder	1/W
Clear and clean sanitary bin	2/D

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Dust exhaust vent	2/M
Refill bathroom amenities (soap, tissues, toiletries)	1/D
Disinfect high-touch bathroom areas (e.g., handles, faucets, toilet)	1/D
D = Daily W = Weekly M = Monthly 2M = Every Two Months 6M = Every Six Months	

Check Back Questions:

1. Define frequency schedule.
2. List down 5 different frequencies of cleaning such as Daily Cleaning.
3. What are the Scheduling Considerations?

1.5 PERFORMANCE STANDARD

For housekeeping operations to remain consistent, high-quality, and productive, performance standards must be established. These guidelines help employees' complete duties effectively and specify expected labour levels. The executive housekeeper makes sure that these standards are recognized, followed, and updated when operational requirements change through staff interaction, frequent training, and inspections.

1.5.1 INTRODUCTION TO PERFORMANCE STANDARD

In order to create performance criteria, the executive housekeeper needs to determine the precise duties needed to keep important areas clean. These guidelines set the bar for all housekeeping tasks and specify the caliber of work that is anticipated. Ensuring consistency in the way activities are completed is one of planning's main objectives. Clear development, communication, and

Figure 9: Performance Standard

enforcement of performance standards lead to consistency. Standards must be strictly followed, even though they may differ from property to property. Tasks may be finished inefficiently and productivity may suffer in the absence of clearly defined and controlled standards. Performance standards are therefore essential for preserving service quality, increasing productivity, and guaranteeing that every employee continuously meets departmental objectives.

1.5.2 MAINTAINING PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

Reaching an agreement on how cleaning and related jobs should be carried out is a crucial part of creating performance standards. The best way to do this is to involve the employees who really perform the work, making sure that the standards are universally recognized, realistic, and useful. Once established, these standards must be effectively communicated through continuous, hands-on training programs. While many properties compile detailed housekeeping manuals outlining performance standards, these documents often remain unused on office shelves. No matter how well-written, standards have little value unless actively implemented. The true key to integrating standards into daily operations lies in consistent, well-executed training that reinforces expectations and transforms written guidelines into actual workplace practices.

The executive housekeeper is responsible for managing performance standards after they have been communicated through continuous training initiatives. To maintain compliance, managing standards requires regular inspections. As experienced housekeepers know, the adage "daily inspections and periodic evaluations should be followed up with specific on-the-job coaching and retraining" is accurate. This ensures that each worker constantly completes their tasks in the most efficient and effective manner. When new work processes are implemented, the executive housekeeper should review the department's performance standards at least once a year and make the required modifications.

	HOW TO MAINTAIN PERFORMANCE STANDARDS IN HOUSEKEEPING
1.	**Select Appropriate Cleaning Methods** ✓ Ensure cleaning methods are task-specific, efficient, and systematically followed.
2.	**Use the Right Cleaning Agents** ✓ Depending on the surface type, degree of soiling, and safety regulations, select the best cleaning solutions.

3.	**Deploy Correct Equipment** ✓ Use suitable, well-maintained equipment to enhance productivity and ensure safety.
4.	**Ensure Consistent Task Execution** ✓ All staff should perform tasks uniformly, adhering to standard procedures.
5.	**Follow Prescribed Cleaning Frequencies** ✓ Tasks must be completed as per defined daily, weekly, or periodic schedules.
6.	**Conduct Time and Motion Studies** ✓ Regular analysis helps identify inefficiencies and optimize workflows and staff allocation.
7.	**Communicate Standards through Training** ✓ Executive Housekeeper (EHK) must deliver clear, ongoing training to all employees for complete understanding and adherence.
8.	**Ensure Full Compliance** ✓ 100% conformity to standards is essential to maintain quality and operational consistency.
9.	**Avoid Ineffective Communication** ✓ Poorly developed or inadequately communicated standards result in decreased productivity and inconsistent performance.
10.	**Implement Regular Supervision & Inspection** ✓ Ongoing supervision, quality inspections, and feedback mechanisms help ensure standards are met.
11.	**Evaluate Performance Consistently** ✓ Periodic evaluations help assess employee performance and identify training needs.
12.	**Encourage Innovation and Cost Efficiency** ✓ The EHK should explore new methods, tools, and products that improve effectiveness and reduce costs.
13.	**Revise Standards Annually** ✓ Update performance standards at least once a year to reflect changes in processes, equipment, or technology.
14.	**Involve Staff in Standard Setting** ✓ Encourage input from frontline staff during standard development for greater practicality and ownership.

1.5.3 SAMPLE FORMAT OF PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

Performance Standard for Cleaning of Vanity Unit		
STEP	**PROCEDURE**	**KEY POINTS / GUIDELINES**
1	Put on gloves and plastic apron	Ensure personal safety and hygiene before starting.
2	Put personal belongings away, such as soap, glasses, a dentist kit, a shaving kit, etc.	Handle guests' belongings carefully; place on a clean towel or tray.
3	Rinse the area surrounding the basin and empty the plug hole of any visible waste.	Use tweezers for hygiene; dispose waste in Sani-bin.
4	Fill the basin halfway with warm water, then moisten the swab cloth.	Helps loosen dirt and improve cleaning efficiency.
5	Clean the outside of the basin, the pipes, the taps, the mirror, and the area behind the basin with a swab cloth and neutral detergent.	Use nylon-web pad for stubborn stains. Avoid harsh abrasives.
6	Rinse surfaces with clean water after washing a swab cloth.	Prevents chemical residue build-up.
7	Use a bottle brush to wipe the overflow after emptying the basin.	Overflow area accumulates grime if neglected.
8	Clean the chain, stopper, and interior of the basin with a swab cloth soaked in detergent.	Ensure all parts, including under the rim, are thoroughly cleaned.
9	Rinse all cleaned areas well with clean water after washing the swab cloth again.	Clean cloth prevents spreading grime.
10	Dry surfaces, mirrors, and faucets using a lint-free duster.	Avoid excess water on mirrors. Polish mirrors with glass cleaner/newspaper twice a week for shine.
11	Fold hand and face towels and replace all personal belongings in a tidy manner.	Replenish soap and towels as per hotel standards. Ensure everything is tidy and organized.
12	Examine the vanity area for any damage or issues.	Report any faults (leaky tap, cracked basin) immediately to the supervisor.
13	Clean the swab cloth, bottle brush, nylon pad, gloves, and apron, among other cleaning supplies.	Dry and store them properly. Dispose of razor blades separately and safely (wrapped in paper).
14	After completing a task, properly wash your hands.	Maintains personal hygiene and prevents cross-contamination.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

1.5.4 BEST PRACTICES FOR CLEANING OF VANITY UNIT

- Always use a neutral pH cleaner to protect surfaces from damage.
- Use color-coded cloths to avoid cross-contamination (e.g., separate for mirror, taps, and basin).
- Follow company SOPs for replenishment standards and inspection checklists.
- Maintain a log of faults and maintenance needs for tracking recurring issues.

1.5.5 TASK LIST

An essential tool for hotel housekeeping is a task list, which lists the precise responsibilities given to each employee throughout their shift. It guarantees reliable service, effective time management, and comprehensive coverage of every area. It is created by supervisors to match daily responsibilities with the needs of guests, different types of rooms, and personnel levels.

1.5.5.1 TASK LIST IN HOUSEKEEPING OPERATIONS

In the housekeeping department of a hotel, a task list serves as an essential resource that specifies the distinct duties and responsibilities designated to each staff member during their shift. It aids in maintaining operational efficiency, guarantees consistency in performance, and enables supervisors to systematically track work progress. A clearly outlined task list makes sure that all areas are cleaned and maintained in accordance with hotel standards, preventing any section from being overlooked. Furthermore, it enhances time management by providing realistic time estimates for each task based on the workload and the availability of staff.

The task list is usually prepared by the Executive Housekeeper or Floor Supervisor, considering factors such as the room type (occupied, vacant, check-out), guest preferences, staffing availability, and any special events. It encompasses standard duties like making beds, dusting, vacuuming, cleaning

bathrooms, restocking supplies, and conducting inspections. Additionally, it might outline deep cleaning schedules, maintenance checks, or requests for extra supplies. For instance, a room attendant assigned to 12 rooms during a morning shift will have a task list detailing room numbers, types (VIP, standard), required cleaning category (departure, stayover), and any specific instructions.

Figure 10: Task List in Housekeeping Operations

1.5.5.2 SAMPLE FORMAT OF TASK LIST

A sample layout of a basic room attendant's task list

Date:

Shift: Morning/Evening

Staff Name:

Supervisor:

ROOM NO.	ROOM TYPE	STATUS (OC/VC/OOS)	CLEANING TYPE (STAY OVER/CHECK-OUT)
101	Deluxe	VC	Check-out
102	Standard	OC	Stayover
…	…	…	…

Employing an organized task list enhances efficiency and minimizes misunderstandings between managers and staff. It also guarantees responsibility, allowing supervisors to confirm that tasks have been performed according to expectations. In contemporary hotels, task lists are incorporated into property management systems (PMS) and can be accessed via mobile devices for instant updates. Therefore, the task list functions not merely as a cleaning checklist, but as an essential element of quality assurance and guest satisfaction in hotel management.

1.5.6 JOB DESCRIPTION

An essential document in the housekeeping department that describes tasks, responsibilities, reporting lines, and performance standards is the job description. It guides recruitment, training, performance evaluation, and promotion. A well-written job description includes key sections like Job Title, Department, reporting to, Purpose of the Job, Duties and Responsibilities, Skills Required, and Working Conditions. It ensures clarity, accountability, and supports the creation of Standard Operating Procedures and training modules.

1.5.6.1 INTRODUCTION TO JOB DESCRIPTION

A job description is an official document that outlines the tasks, obligations, reporting lines, and performance standards related to a particular position in the housekeeping department. It is a vital part of workforce planning and management, serving as a guideline for recruitment, training, performance

evaluation, and promotion. For students pursuing a career in hotel housekeeping, understanding the job description helps them align their skills with professional requirements and prepares them for real-world responsibilities.

In the housekeeping department, job descriptions vary based on hierarchy—from Room Attendants to Housekeeping Supervisors to the

Figure 11 Job Description for various Positions

Executive Housekeeper. A well-written job description includes key sections such as Job Title, Department, reporting to, Purpose of the Job, Duties and Responsibilities, Skills Required, and Working Conditions. For example, a Room Attendant's job description would focus on daily cleaning, guest service, linen handling, and reporting maintenance issues. On the other hand, a Housekeeping Supervisor would have responsibilities like allocating rooms, inspecting cleaned areas, and coordinating with other departments.

A good job description brings clarity and accountability, ensuring each team member knows what is expected of them. It also supports the creation of Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) and training modules. Below is a sample format of a basic job description for a Room Attendant:

1.5.6.2 SAMPLE FORMAT OF JOB DESCRIPTION

Sample Job Description – Room Attendant	
JOB TITLE	ROOM ATTENDANT
Department	Housekeeping
Reports To	Housekeeping Supervisor
Job Purpose	To provide clean, sanitary, and well-maintained guestrooms that meet hotel standards.
Key Responsibilities	- Clean and service assigned rooms daily - Change bed linen and replace guest supplies

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

	- Dust, vacuum, and disinfect all areas - Report maintenance issues - Maintain guest privacy and hotel property
Skills Required	Attention to detail, time management, physical stamina, customer service, knowledge of cleaning techniques
Working Conditions	Shift-based work, standing for long hours, use of cleaning chemicals

Understanding and referring to job descriptions is crucial for hospitality professionals. It not only improves work efficiency but also enhances guest satisfaction, staff morale, and operational consistency. For students, learning how to interpret or even create a job description provides a strong foundation for supervisory and managerial roles in the future.

1.5.7   STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE

Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) are detailed written instructions used in housekeeping that outline how to do specific cleaning and maintenance tasks precisely and consistently. It helps employees meet required service standards and keep the entire property clean by ensuring consistency, efficiency, safety, and quality throughout operations.

1.5.7.1   STANDARD   OPERATING   PROCEDURE   (SOP)   IN HOUSEKEEPING

The Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) is a thorough, detailed manual designed to assist housekeeping staff in doing specific tasks in a dependable and efficient manner. SOPs are crucial to hotel operations because they guarantee consistency, excellent service, and adherence to hygienic and safety regulations. Since SOPs are the foundation of everyday hotel operations, it is essential for students in the housekeeping department to comprehend them.

SOPs are customized to the hotel's category, guest expectations, and service standards and are created by the Executive Housekeeper in coordination with supervisory staff. Making beds, cleaning bathrooms, restocking amenities, managing lost and found things, providing turn-down service, and managing guest laundry are just a few of the duties they

Figure 12: SOP in Housekeeping Department

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

undertake. In addition to outlining the process, a well-documented SOP also covers the necessary tools and equipment, safety measures, deadlines, and reporting requirements. Regardless of shift or staff changes, the primary goal of SOPs is to guarantee that every team member performs their responsibilities in a consistent and expert manner. SOPs lessen visitor complaints, increase production, decrease supervision effort, and aid in training new hires. The SOP for cleaning a guest bathroom, for instance, will guarantee that every room is cleaned completely and consistently, eliminating any possibility of mistakes or omissions.

Flow Chart to develop SOP for the 'Steps of Entering a Guest Room'

```
                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │  Identify the room   │
                          └──────────┬──────────┘
                                     ↓
              ┌──────────────────────────────────────────┐
              │ Check the status of the room in the House │
              │       room attendant's status slip.       │
              └──────────────────────────────────────────┘
                    ↓              ↓              ↓
          ┌──────────────┐  ┌──────────────┐  ┌──────────────┐
          │ Do Not       │  │ Occupied room│  │ Vacant room  │
          │ disturb room │  │              │  │              │
          └──────┬───────┘  └──────┬───────┘  └──────┬───────┘
                 ↓                 ↓                  │
       ┌──────────────┐   ┌──────────────────┐       │
       │ Proceed to   │   │ Knock the door   │       │
       │ next room    │   │ thrice with the  │       │
       │ without      │   │ knuckles &       │       │
       │ disturbing   │   │ announce the     │       │
       │ the guest    │   │ department. Now  │       │
       └──────────────┘   │ wait for 10      │       │
                          │ seconds for the  │       │
                          │ guest to open    │       │
                          │ the door         │       │
                          └───┬──────────┬───┘       │
                              ↓          ↓            │
       ┌──────────────────┐   ┌──────────────────┐   │
       │ If the guest is  │   │ If guest not in  │   │
       │ in the room,     │   │ the room         │   │
       │ greet him as per │   └────────┬─────────┘   │
       │ the time of the  │            ↓             ↓
       │ day & seek       │   ┌──────────────────────────┐
       │ permission to    │   │ Open the door with the   │
       │ render the       │   │ section master key,      │
       │ service          │   │ announce the department  │
       └──────────────────┘   │ & slowly enter the room  │
                              └──────────────────────────┘
```

1.5.7.2   NEED OF STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP)

i) They save time and money: A task may take longer to accomplish if it is done in multiple methods. Employees can do more tasks in less time when a standard operating procedure is in place because it streamlines the process.

ii) They offer consistency: Standard operating procedures guarantee that housekeeping department processes are carried out correctly no matter who is working on them.

iii) They enhance communication: Standard operating procedures simplify the work of your staff by eliminating the need for them to guess how they should carry out their duties. Additionally, they can recall what you taught them when they were originally hired without having to try to shatter their brains

iv) They enable you to hold your staff members responsible: Without established standards, how can you assess your staff members? Employee assessments become subjective in the absence of standard operating procedures, which is hardly fair to your staff.

v) They make the workplace safer: When workers carry out identical jobs in disparate methods, it is not only ineffective but also a liability for your company. Standard operating procedures guarantee that workers carry out their duties in a consistent and safe manner.

1.5.7.3 DEVELOPMENT OF STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE (SOP)

Written, detailed instructions on how to carry out a routine task are known as standard operating procedures. To ensure that the standard is maintained, workers should always complete them in the same manner.

How to Write a Standard Operating Procedure?

❖ **Title:** This can include the name of the process, the name of the department that the SOP applies to, etc.

❖ **Table of Contents:** (If the document is too long).

❖ **Requirements** (Cleaning Equipment /Cleaning Agents/ Linen, etc.)

❖ **Precautions:** Information about machinery / equipment, health and safety warnings, (MSDS) etc.

❖ **The Procedure (Method / Steps):** Process documentation, map or flow chart of the work, etc.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

1.5.7.4 SAMPLE FORMAT OF SOP

Sample SOP Format: Cleaning a Guest Bathroom	
CLEANING OF GUEST BATHROOM	
Department	Housekeeping
Prepared By	Executive Housekeeper
Objective	To ensure hygienic, safe, and standardized cleaning of guest bathrooms.
Materials Required	Gloves, apron, swab cloth, toilet brush, disinfectant, glass cleaner, mop
Procedure	1. Wear protective gear 2. Flush and clean toilet 3. Clean sink, taps, and mirror 4. Scrub bathtub/shower area 5. Mop floor 6. Replenish amenities 7. Dispose waste properly
Time Required	10–12 minutes per bathroom
Safety Measures	Use gloves and proper ventilation while using chemicals. Avoid slip hazards.

For housekeeping students to succeed in hands-on training and eventual managerial positions, they must learn how to interpret, adhere to, and develop SOPs. In addition to guaranteeing high-quality services, it also encourages professionalism, security, and client happiness in all aspects of hotel operations.

> **Check Back Questions:**
> 1. Define Performance Standard.
> 2. What is the right way to choose cleaning agents for proper performance standards?
> 3. Define SOP.

1.6 PRODUCTIVITY STANDARD

Productivity standards in a hotel's housekeeping department are crucial for efficient operations and guest satisfaction. They define the expected output per employee within a specific timeframe, ensuring consistent quality, managing labour costs effectively, and optimizing resource allocation to uphold a superior level of service and hygiene.

1.6.1 INTRODUCTION TO PRODUCTIVITY STANDARD

Productivity standards establish the standard for the amount of work that housekeeping employees must accomplish, whereas performance standards specify the desired caliber of work. The time required for an employee to finish duty in compliance with performance work. The time required for an employee to finish duty in compliance with performance standards must be determined by an Executive Housekeeper (EHK). Maintaining service levels while staying within the hotel's operational budget requires adherence to these guidelines.

Productivity requirements differ depending on the kind of property and service quality. For example, a budget hotel might have a faster room turnover rate, whereas a luxury hotel might need more thorough room cleaning, turndown service, and amenity arrangement, which would increase time per room. As a result, it is not possible to standardize across hotels; instead, each hotel must create its own reasonable standards.

Figure 13: Productivity Standard

Formal time-and-motion studies are sometimes linked to productivity requirements, but this isn't always the case. Instead, the time needed for important tasks, such cleaning a guestroom or replenishing supplies, can be ascertained by close observation of cleaning procedures, staff input, and practical experience.

1.6.2 DEVELOPING PRODUCTIVITY STANDARDS

Productivity standards in hotel housekeeping are essential for operational efficiency, cost control, and maintaining high guest satisfaction. They clearly communicate the quantity of work expected from each employee, ensuring consistent service delivery.

Before developing these crucial standards, housekeeping managers must consider several key factors:

• **Understanding Task Timings:** Managers must know exactly how long it takes a worker to complete the primary duties listed in area inventory lists. This information is essential for precise workload distribution and staffing needs.

• **Balancing Performance and Productivity:** Effective housekeeping strikes a delicate balance between performance standards (quality of work)

and productivity standards (quantity of work). While productivity dictates how much is done, performance ensures it's done well.

• **Variability Across Hotel Types:** It's crucial to recognize that fixed productivity standards cannot be universally applied across all hotels. The duties of room attendants, for instance, vary significantly between economy, limited-service, and luxury hotels, requiring tailored standards.

• **Budgetary Alignment:** Productivity standards must be developed in conjunction with the hotel's operating budget plan. They are vital for properly staffing the department within established financial limitations.

• **Informed Management Decisions:** Housekeeping managers must be fully aware of the time required for specific tasks, such as cleaning a guest room. This detailed information is the bedrock upon which effective productivity standards are built.

• **Impact of Standards on Guest Satisfaction:** Setting productivity standards too low can lead to an unexpectedly high quantity of work, potentially compromising quality. This can result in unsatisfied guests and a decline in repeat business, underscoring the importance of realistic and well-calibrated standards.

By meticulously considering these points, hotels can develop productivity standards that optimize efficiency, control costs, and consistently deliver the high-quality guest experience that is paramount in the hospitality industry.

1.6.3 FACTORS INFLUENCING PRODUCTIVITY STANDARDS:

Practically speaking, since there are a number of variables that greatly affect productivity requirements and they differ from property to property, each hotel must establish its own standards.

Among these are the following:

• **The Type and Age of the Property:** Newer, modern hotels witcontemporary layouts and materials might have different cleaning times compared to older properties.

• **The Accessibility of the Work Area from Service Areas:** The distance between linen rooms, supply closets, and guest rooms or public areas directly impacts the time taken for tasks.

• **The Amount of Traffic in the Work Areas:** High-traffic areas (lobbies, corridors) may require more frequent and thorough cleaning, affecting the time allocated per task.

• **The Function of the Work Area:** Cleaning a guest room differs significantly from cleaning a banquet hall, kitchen, or pool area, each demanding specific

time frames and expertise.

• **The Expected Standards of Cleaning:** A five-star luxury hotel will have far more stringent cleanliness requirements than a budget hotel, demanding more time and attention to detail.

• **The Types of Surfaces Involved:** Different surfaces (marble, carpet, wood, glass) require specific cleaning methods and agents, influencing the time and effort.

PRODUCTIVITY STANDARDS

Several Factors that influence the Productivity Standards

- Type and age of property
- Accessibility to work area from service area
- Amount of traffic in the work area
- The function of the work area
- Expected standard of cleaning
- Types of surfaces involved
- The degree and type of soiling
- Frequency of cleaning
- The quality of employee.

Figure 14: Several Factors Influencing

• **The Degrees and Types of Soiling:** Heavily soiled areas (e.g., after a large event or a long-stay guest) will naturally take longer to clean than lightly used spaces.

• **The Frequency of Cleaning:** Daily cleaning of guest rooms versus weekly deep cleaning of public areas dictates different productivity expectations.

• **The Types of Cleaning Supplies and Equipment Available:** Modern, efficient equipment (e.g., powerful vacuums, floor scrubbers) and high-quality cleaning agents can significantly reduce cleaning times.

• **The Quality of Supervision and Inspection:** Effective supervision ensures adherence to standards and helps identify areas for improvement, contributing to consistent productivity.

• **The Quality of Employees:** Well-trained, motivated, and experienced staff will naturally be more productive than inexperienced or unmotivated employees.

Additional Points to Consider:

• **Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs):** Detailed SOPs for every cleaning task are fundamental. They provide step-by-step instructions, ensure consistency, aid in training, and serve as a benchmark for performance evaluation.

• **Technology Integration:** Utilizing housekeeping management software or property management systems can streamline scheduling, track room status in real-time, facilitate communication, and provide data for productivity analysis.

• **Time and Motion Studies:** Periodically conducting time and motion studies can help identify the most efficient cleaning methods and optimize workflows, leading to more accurate productivity standards.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

• **Employee Training and Development:** Ongoing training, including proper use of equipment and chemicals, safety protocols, and efficient cleaning techniques, directly impacts employee productivity and quality of work. Cross-training of staff can also enhance versatility and efficiency.

• **Inventory Management:** Efficient inventory management of cleaning supplies, linens, and guest amenities prevents delays due to shortages, ensuring continuous workflow.

• **Guest Feedback:** Incorporating guest feedback on cleanliness directly into performance and productivity evaluations can highlight areas for improvement and reinforce the importance of high standards.

• **Motivation and Incentives:** Recognizing and rewarding productive and high-performing employees can significantly boost morale and encourage consistent adherence to productivity standards.

• **Maintenance and Upkeep of Equipment:** Regularly maintaining and upgrading cleaning equipment ensures optimal performance and prevents breakdowns that can hinder productivity.

1.6.4 SAMPLE FORMAT & EXAMPLE

For instance, the Executive Housekeeper finds that a room attendant at a mid-range hotel needs about 30 minutes to clean a single standard room while still fulfilling performance requirements. The crew has 7.45 working hours (465 minutes) every day, which is an 9-hour (540m) shift less a 75 minute for different breaks (such as breakfast, tea/coffee, lunch, dinner, etc.), briefing and debriefing Consequently:

Note: This is an indicative productivity only. Actual may differ from hotel to hotel. The productivity may change based on type of room, size of room, quality of service expected, SOP of the hotel, change of shift, etc.

SL	STEPS	DESCRIPTION	TIME
01	Step-1 (Assume)	Time taken to service one guestroom by GRA as per the performance standard (Set using time & Motion Study)	30 Minutes (in morning shift)
02	Step-2 (Assume)	Total Shift timing of a GRA	9 Hours = 9 X 60 min=540 min
03	Step-3 (Assume)	Total time available for guestroom servicing Total Shift time Briefing - 15 minutes Tea Coffee Break - 20 minutes Lunch Break - 30minutes De-Briefing - 10 minutes	540 minutes -75 minutes **465 minutes**
04	Step-4 (Therefore, based on Assumption)	Number of rooms to be cleaned by the GRA in 1 day (morning shift) is obtained by dividing the time available for servicing guestroom by the time required to service one guestroom	465minutes ÷ 30 minutes ---------- **15.5 rooms = 16 rooms**
05	Productivity	The Productivity Standard of GRA (If any of the above parameter changes, result will change)	16 rooms for 9 hrs. Shift

Figure 15 Calculation of Productivity Standard

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Productivity Standard Format:

Task	Time per Unit	Working Time/Day	Units per Shift
Guestroom Cleaning	30 minutes	465 minutes	$465 \div 30 = 16$ rooms

1.6.5 BALANCING QUALITY AND QUANTITY

Quality and quantity in housekeeping are often two sides of the same coin—but if not managed wisely, they can become a double-edged sword. When performance standards are set too high, the focus on impeccable cleanliness and detailing may significantly slow down room turnover. This situation forces the Executive Housekeeper (EHK) to hire more staff to meet daily operational demands, pushing labour costs beyond budgeted limits. Eventually, this prompts General Managers (GMs) to reduce departmental costs—often by cutting down staff or replacing the EHK altogether.

Conversely, setting performance standards too low may initially boost productivity. More rooms get cleaned, fewer staff are needed, and short-term savings look attractive. However, over time, guest complaints, negative reviews, and a visible decline in property standards will damage the hotel's reputation. This again brings the EHK under scrutiny, potentially leading to a change in leadership.

The real challenge lies in striking a balance between quality and quantity. Well-defined Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs), regular training, and task optimization can help maintain both. For example, if a room attendant is taking 30 minutes instead of 20 minutes to clean a standard room, a review of their trolley setup or cleaning sequence might reveal inefficiencies.

Optimization Format		
ISSUE	**OBSERVATION**	**SOLUTION**
Repeated trolley returns	Supplies not restocked fully	Implement a restocking checklist
Long cleaning time	Unclear task flow	Provide step-by-step SOP & time estimates
Guest complaints rising	Rushed cleaning	Adjust staffing for realistic productivity

Ultimately, smart labour allocation, constant performance review, and realistic productivity goals are key to ensuring operational excellence without compromising service quality.

Check Back Questions:

1. Productivity Standard deals with Quality or Quantity? Illustrate.
2. Draw a sample format of Productivity standard.
3. What do you understand by balancing quality & Quantity?

1.7 INVENTORY MANAGEMENT

After meticulous planning, an executive housekeeper's crucial next step is to ensure the housekeeping team has all necessary equipment and supplies for efficient operations. Strategic inventory management is required for this, starting with figuring out how much of each item is required to continuously meet departmental criteria. The solution creates an efficient purchasing system in addition to guaranteeing smooth everyday operations. Executive housekeepers mainly oversee two categories of inventory: non-recyclable (consumed, such as cleaning supplies and guest amenities) and recyclable (reusable items, such as linens and cleaning equipment). The secret to cost control and operational effectiveness is striking a balance between these inventories while taking storage constraints and financial prudence into account.

1.7.1 UNDERSTANDING HOUSEKEEPING INVENTORIES

In housekeeping, "inventory" refers to the stock of equipment, supplies, and other objects that have been acquired and are kept for potential future use. There are two main types of inventory that the executive housekeeper is in charge of Recyclable and Non-Recyclable:

Figure 16: Housekeeping Inventories

1.7.1.1 RECYCLED INVENTORY ITEMS

These items have a relatively limited useful life but are reused repeatedly in housekeeping operations. Their longevity depends on wear and tear, proper maintenance, and laundering. Examples include:

- **Linen:** Bed sheets, pillowcases, duvet covers, bath towels, hand towels, face cloths, bath mats, pool towels, restaurant tablecloths, napkins.

Figure 17: Housekeeping Recyclable Inventories

- **Uniforms:** Staff uniforms for all departments that are laundered and reissued.
- **Most Machinery and Large Pieces of Equipment:** Vacuum cleaners, floor polishers, carpet extractors, laundry machines, trolleys, and carts.
- **Guest Loan Items:** Hot water bottles, heating pads, irons, ironing boards, adaptors, extra blankets, cots, rollaway beds.

1.7.1.2 NON-RECYCLED INVENTORY ITEMS

Unlike recycled items, these are consumed or used up during routine housekeeping operations. They are generally single-use or have a very short lifespan once put into service. Examples include:

- **Most Guest Amenities:** Soaps, shampoos, conditioners, lotions, shower caps, dental kits, shaving kits, sanitary bags, sewing kits, slippers, pens, notepads, tea/coffee sachets, sugar, creamer.

- **Cleaning Supplies:** Detergents, disinfectants, glass cleaners, all-purpose cleaners, floor cleaners, furniture polish, air fresheners, trash bags, toilet paper, paper towels, dustbin liners.

- **Small Equipment:** Brooms, mops, cleaning cloths, sponges, scrub brushes, buckets, dustpans, gloves, squeegees.

Figure 18: Non-recycled inventory items

> ### *The Importance of Balanced Inventory Levels*

The executive housekeeper must strike a delicate balance when establishing inventory levels for both recycled and non-recycled items. Overstocking is a common pitfall that should be meticulously avoided. It ties up valuable cash that could be used elsewhere in the hotel's operations and demands larger, often expensive, storage areas. On the other hand, under stocking can lead to operational disruptions, guest dissatisfaction, and frantic last-minute purchases at higher costs.

An effective purchasing system is therefore paramount. It must consistently maintain the inventory levels set by the executive housekeeper, ensuring that necessary items are always available without excessive surplus.

1.7.2 ESTABLISHING PAR LEVELS FOR INVENTORY

The executive housekeeper must ascertain the par level for every inventory item in order to manage inventory efficiently. "Par" stands for the usual amount of each item that needs to be kept in stock in order to support regular, everyday housekeeping tasks. Par levels are established due to the differing usage patterns of the two types of inventories.

1.7.2.1 PAR LEVEL FOR RECYCLED ITEMS

For recycled inventory items, a par number is typically expressed as a multiple of the standard quantity required to support day-to-day housekeeping functions. This multiple accounts for items in use, items in laundry, items being repaired, and a safety stock.

Example for Linen (Recycled Item):

If a hotel has 200 rooms, and each room requires 2 bath towels, 2 hand towels, and 2 face cloths, the "in-use" par would be 400 bath towels, 400 hand towels, and 400 face cloths.

However, a linen par level is usually calculated to cover:

- One set in the guest rooms: Currently in use by guests.
- One set in the linen closets/floor pantries: Ready for immediate use by room attendants.
- One set in transit/laundry: Being laundered or transported.
- One-half to one full set as safety stock: For emergencies, heavy occupancy, or unexpected damage/loss.

So, a common linen par level is 3.5 to 4 times the daily requirement.

Formula for Recycled Inventory Par Level:

Par Level (Recycled Item) = (Daily Use + In Transit/Laundry + Safety Stock)

Example: Bath Towels for a 200-Room Hotel

- Daily Use (rooms occupied): 200 rooms * 2 towels/room = 400 towels
- Par Level Multiplier (e.g., 3.5): 400 towels * 3.5 = 1400 towels

So, the hotel would aim to have approximately 1400 bath towels in total inventory across all locations (guest rooms, linen closets, laundry, storage).

Note: PAR Level may range between 3 to 5.

1.7.2.2 PAR LEVEL FOR NON-RECYCLED ITEMS

For non-recycled inventory items, a par level is typically a range between a minimum inventory quantity and a maximum inventory quantity. This approach is more suited for consumable items that are used up.

Figure 19: Non Recycled Items

> ## Minimum Inventory Quantity (Safety Stock Level)

The fewest purchasing units (items per case) that ought to be kept in stock at any particular time is referred to as the minimal quantity. The safety stock level is another name for this minimum amount. A non-recycled inventory's on-hand quantity should never drop below this amount in order to avoid stock outs.

Explanation of Terms	
TERM	**DESCRIPTION**
Total Quantity Used	Total number of units of the item consumed during the period (weekly/monthly).
Room Occupied Nights	Total number of rooms sold × number of nights (used to normalize usage).

> ## Formula for Minimum Inventory Quantity:

Minimum Quantity=Lead-time Quantity + Safety Stock Level

Where:

- **Lead-time Quantity:** The number of purchase units that are used up between the time a supply order is placed and the time the order is actually received. This depends on daily consumption and the supplier's delivery time.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

o **Formula:** Lead-time Quantity = Daily Consumption Rate × Lead Time (in days)

- **Safety Stock Level:** The number of purchase units that must always be on hand in case of emergencies, unexpected damages, delays in delivery, or sudden spikes in demand. This ensures smooth daily operations even in unforeseen circumstances.

Example: Guest Soap (Non-Recycled Item)
● Daily Consumption: A 200-room hotel might use 200 bars of guest soap per day (assuming 1 per occupied room).
● Lead Time: The supplier takes 5 days to deliver an order after it's placed.
● Lead-time Quantity: 200 soaps/day × 5 days = 1000 soaps.
● Safety Stock Level: The executive housekeeper decides to keep a safety stock of 3 days' consumption, which is 200 soaps/day × 3 days = 600 soaps.
● Minimum Quantity (Re-order Point): 1000 (Lead-time Quantity) + 600 (Safety Stock) = 1600 soaps.
■ This means when the stock level of guest soaps drops to 1600, a new order should be placed.

➢ Maximum Inventory Quantity

The maximum inventory quantity refers to the greatest number of purchase units that should be in stock at any given point in time. Establishing this level requires considering several factors:

- **Storage Space Available:** Hotels often have limited storage, so over-ordering can lead to clutter, damage, and inefficiency.
- **Cost of the Item:** High-cost items should generally have lower maximum inventory levels to minimize tied-up capital.
- **Shelf Life ('Best Before' or Expiry Date):** Perishable items or those with a limited shelf life (e.g., certain cleaning chemicals, some guest amenities) should have lower maximums to prevent waste.
- **Purchase Discounts/Volume Pricing:** Sometimes, buying in larger quantities offers significant discounts. The executive housekeeper must weigh these savings against storage costs and potential obsolescence.
- **Delivery Frequency from Suppliers:** If suppliers deliver frequently, maximum levels can be lower. If deliveries are infrequent, higher maximums might be necessary.

➢ Formula for Maximum Inventory Quantity (Common Approach):

A simplified approach for maximum quantity often considers the re-order cycle:
Maximum Quantity=Minimum Quantity + Economic Order Quantity (EOQ)

Or,

more practically for hotel operations:

Maximum Quantity=Daily Consumption Rate×(Days between orders + Lead Time) + Safety Stock

Example: Guest Soap (continued)
● Minimum Quantity: 1600 soaps.
● Days between orders: The hotel typically orders guest soaps every 30 days.
● Daily Consumption Rate: 200 soaps/day.
● Lead Time: 5 days.
● Safety Stock: 600 soaps.
Maximum Quantity = (200 soaps/day × (30 days + 5 days)) + 600 soaps
Maximum Quantity = (200 soaps/day × 35 days) + 600 soaps
Maximum Quantity = 7000 soaps + 600 soaps = 7600 soaps
So, the maximum quantity of guest soaps that should be in stock at any given time is 7600.

1.7.3 INVENTORY CONTROL AND RECORD KEEPING

Effective inventory control relies heavily on meticulous record-keeping and regular physical inventories. These practices help identify losses, track consumption, and ensure that par levels are maintained.

> **Master Inventory Control Sheet**

The Master Inventory Control Sheet is a crucial tool for the executive housekeeper to analyze the results of physical inventories, particularly for high-value items like linen. It allows for a systematic comparison of expected quantities versus actual counts, revealing losses and guiding replenishment orders.

Here's an enhanced version of the Master Inventory Control Sheet, incorporating more practical elements and explanations:

➢ MASTER INVENTORY CONTROL SHEET – LINEN

Location Name: [Hotel Name / Department]
Inventory Date: [DD/MM/YYYY]
Prepared by: [Name & Signature]
Verified by (Executive Housekeeper): [Name & Signature]
Approved by (General Manager): [Name & Signature]

Part 1: Inventory Reconciliation

Item	Linen Item	Last Inventory Data (Units) (A)	New Received (Units) (B)	Subtotal (A+B) (C)	Recorded Discard (Units) (D)	Recorded Quantity	Expected Quantity (C-D) (E)
1	King Flat Sheet						
2	Queen Flat Sheet						
3	Double Fitted Sheet						
4	Std Pillowcase						
5	Bath Towel						
6	Hand Towel						
7	Face Cloth						
8	Bath Mat						
9	Pool Towel						
10	F&B Napkin						
11	F&B Tablecloth						
...	(Add other linen items as needed)						

Part 2: Physical Count and Replenishment Needs

Item #	Linen Item	Physical Count (Guest Rooms)	Comm. Linen Room 1 (G)	Comm. Linen Room 2 (H)	Physical Laundry 1 (I)	Physical Laundry 2 (J)	Physical Storage (K)	Total Actual Count (F+G+H+I+J)	Loss/Gain (E-L)	Established Level/ Par (L)	On Order (Units) (N)	Net Order Required (M+N)
1	King Flat Sheet											
2	Queen Flat Sheet											
3	Double Fitted Sheet											
4	Pillow case											
5	Bath Towel											
6	Hand Towel											
7	Face Cloth											
8	Bath Mat											
9	Pool Towel											
10	F&B Napkin											
11	F&B Tablecloth											
12	... Add other linen ...											

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

➢ Explanation of the Master Inventory Control Sheet:

• **Part 1:** Inventory Reconciliation:

o **Last Inventory Data (A):** The total quantity of each linen item recorded during the previous physical inventory.

o **New Received (B):** Any new linen items received into stock since the last inventory.

o **Subtotal (C):** The sum of the last inventory and new receipts.

o **Recorded Discard (D):** The number of linen items formally removed from inventory due to damage, wear, or being deemed unusable (requires a separate discard record).

o **Expected Quantity (E):** The theoretical amount of linen that should be in inventory if all records were perfectly accurate (Subtotal - Recorded Discard).

• **Part 2:** Physical Count and Replenishment Needs:

o **Physical Count Locations (F-I):** The actual number of linen items counted in each designated area (e.g., guest rooms, linen rooms, laundry, central storage). This requires a detailed and accurate physical count.

o **Total Actual Count (J):** The sum of all physical counts for each item across all locations.

o **Loss/Gain (K):** The difference between the Expected Quantity (E) and the Total Actual Count (J). A negative number indicates a loss, while a positive number would indicate a gain (though rare and usually points to a counting error). Significant losses warrant immediate investigation.

o **Established Par Level (L):** The predetermined standard quantity of each linen item that should be maintained. This is the ideal stock level.

o **Quantity Needed to Reach Par (M):** The number of items required to bring the current actual inventory back up to the established par level (Established Par Level - Total Actual Count).

o **On Order (N):** Any quantities of linen that have been ordered but not yet received.

o **Net Order Required (O):** The precise quantity of each linen type that still needs to be ordered to replenish the par stock, taking into account items already on order (Quantity Needed to Reach Par - On Order).

After each physical inventory, the executive housekeeper should ensure that the par levels are brought back to their established figures. The completed Master Inventory Control Sheet, along with any linen discard records, should be submitted to the general manager for verification and initialling before being forwarded to the accounts department. The accounts department can then provide invaluable cost information related to usage, loss, and expense per occupied room,

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

which is crucial for determining and monitoring the housekeeping department's budget.

➤ Physical Inventories of F&B Linen

Physical inventories of table linen used by the Food & Beverage (F&B) department should be handled similarly to room linen. The same general rules and procedures apply.

- **Separate Inventory Lists:** Prepare inventory lists for each F&B outlet (restaurants, bars, banquet facilities) itemizing all types, sizes, and colours of table linen used.

- **Strategic Timing:** The inventory should be taken when the movement of table linen to and from the laundry can be halted, and each F&B outlet is fully stocked to its established par levels. This minimizes discrepancies and provides an accurate snapshot.

- **Calculating Replacement Stock:** By following the same procedure as for room linen, the total inventory of table linen can be calculated, enabling the executive housekeeper to determine the need for replacement stock due to loss, damage, or wear.

1.7.4 ESSENTIAL INVENTORY CONTROL DOCUMENTS

Beyond the Master Inventory Control Sheet, several other forms and procedures are vital for comprehensive inventory management:

1. Linen Discard Record

This documents are used to remove linen from circulation due to damage, excessive wear, or stains that cannot be removed. It's crucial for tracking losses and justifying replacements.

Format Example: Linen Discard Record

LINEN DISCARD RECORD

Department: Housekeeping

Date: [DD/MM/YYYY]

Discard Initiated by: [Name & Signature of Supervisor]

Approved by: [Name & Signature of Executive Housekeeper]

S. No.	Linen Item	Size (if applicable)	Reason for Discard (e.g., Torn, Stained, Burned, Worn Out)	Quantity
1	Bath Towel	Standard	Torn	5
2	King Flat Sheet	King	Permanent Stain	3
3	F&B Napkin	Standard	Burned	10
4	Pillowcase	Standard	Worn Out	8
	Total Discarded Quantity			

Remarks:

- Discarded linen is stored separately for inspection and proper disposal/ recycling.
- This record supports replacement orders.

2. Daily Consumption Log / Issue Record

For non-recycled items, maintaining a daily log of items issued from the main store to floor pantries or specific housekeepers is essential. This helps track usage patterns and calculate accurate daily consumption rates.

Format Example: Daily Cleaning Supplies Issue Log

DAILY CLEANING SUPPLIES ISSUE LOG

Department: Housekeeping

Date: [DD/MM/YYYY]

Issued by: [Name & Signature of Storekeeper]

S. No.	Item Name	Unit of Measure	Quantity Issued	Issued To (e.g., Room Attendant Name/Floor No.)	Remarks
1	All-Purpose Cleaner	Liters	2	Floor 3	
2	Toilet Bowl Cleaner	Liters	1	Floor 4	
3	Microfiber Cloth	Pcs	10	Laundry	
4	Guest Soap	Bars	50	Floor 2	
5	Trash Bags (Large)	Rolls	1	Public Areas	

3. Purchase Request / Requisition Form

When inventory levels approach the re-order point, a formal purchase request is initiated. This document details the items needed, quantities, and often includes the justification.

HOUSEKEEPING PURCHASE REQUISITION

Requisition No.: [Unique Req. Number]

Date: [DD/MM/YYYY]

Required by Date: [DD/MM/YYYY]

Department: Housekeeping

S. No.	Item Description	Unit of Measure (e.g., Pcs, Case, Liters)	Current Stock Level	Par Level (Min/Max)	Quantity Needed (to reach Par)	Justification/Remarks
1	Guest Shampoo	Case (144 pcs)	5 cases	4/10 cases	5 cases	Below minimum par
2	Disinfectant Cleaner	5-liter bottle	8 bottles	10/20 bottles	12 bottles	Upcoming deep cleaning
3	Bath Towel	Pcs	1200 pcs	1400 pcs	200 pcs	Replenish due to loss
4	Vacuum Cleaner Bags	Pack (10 bags)	3 packs	5/10 packs	7 packs	Regular consumption

Requested by: [Name & Signature of Supervisor]

Recommended by: [Name & Signature of Executive Housekeeper]

Approved By (General Manager/Purchasing): [Name & Signature]

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

4. Receiving Log

Upon delivery, all incoming inventory items should be carefully checked against the purchase order and recorded in a receiving log. This ensures that the correct items and quantities are received and helps reconcile invoices.

HOUSEKEEPING INVENTORY RECEIVING LOG

Receiving Date: [DD/MM/YYYY]

Supplier Name: [Supplier Name]

Purchase Order No.: [PO Number]

Received by: [Name & Signature of Storekeeper]

S. No.	Item Description	Unit of Measure	Ordered Quantity	Received Quantity	Batch/Lot No. (if applicable)	Expiry Date (if applicable)	Condition (Good, Damaged) / Remarks
1	Guest Conditioner	Case	10	10	AB123	12/2026	Good
2	Floor Stripper	Gallon	5	5	XYZ456	N/A	Good
3	Hand Sanitizer	Liters	20	18	DEF789	06/2025	2 missing / Check with supplier

1.7.5 Benefits of Effective Inventory Management

Implementing robust inventory management practices in housekeeping offers numerous benefits:

- **Cost Control:** Minimizes overstocking (reducing tied-up capital and storage costs) and under-stocking (avoiding rush orders and higher prices).
- **Operational Efficiency:** Ensures that staff always have the necessary supplies and equipment, preventing delays and improving productivity.
- **Guest Satisfaction:** Guarantees that guest amenities are always available and that rooms are cleaned to the highest standards consistently.
- **Waste Reduction:** Tracks usage and discards, helping to identify areas of excessive waste or pilferage.
- **Budgeting Accuracy:** Provides accurate data on consumption and losses, leading to more realistic and effective budget planning.
- **Improved Accountability:** Clear records and procedures enhance accountability among staff for inventory handling.

By meticulously planning inventory levels, utilizing appropriate forms, and consistently conducting physical counts, the executive housekeeper can maintain an efficient, cost-effective, and high-quality housekeeping operation, directly contributing to the hotel's overall success.

1.7.6 PURCHASE SPECIFICATIONS

Effective procurement for a hotel's housekeeping department is crucial for maintaining brand standards, guest satisfaction, and operational efficiency. These specifications detail requirements for key inventory categories.

1. Guest Supplies

- **Toiletries (Shampoo, Conditioner, Lotion, Shower Gel, Soap):**
  - **Material:** Bottles/containers predominantly made from PET or HDPE, clearly marked for recycling. Individual soap bars should be wrapped in recyclable paper or biodegradable film.
  - **Size/Capacity:** Standardized mini-sizes (e.g., 30ml-50ml for liquids, 20g-30g for soap bars). Consideration for bulk dispensers in select areas to reduce plastic waste.
  - **Quality:** Hypoallergenic, paraben-free, and dermatologically tested formulations. Pleasant, mild fragrance or fragrance-free options.
  - **Packaging:** Secure, leak-proof caps/pumps. Bulk packaging for shipping to minimize waste.
  - **Branding:** Ability to customize with hotel logo/branding.
  - **Sustainability:** Preference for products with eco-certifications (e.g., EU Ecolabel, Nordic Swan) or those containing post-consumer recycled (PCR) content.

- **In-Room Beverages (Tea Bags, Coffee Sachets, Sugar, Creamer):**
  - **Quality:** Reputable brands, diverse selection (e.g., black tea, green tea, decaf coffee).
  - **Packaging:** Individually sealed for freshness and hygiene. Recyclable outer packaging.
  - **Shelf Life:** Minimum 12-month shelf life upon delivery.

- **Other Consumables** (Slippers, Dental Kits, Shaving Kits, Vanity Kits, Sewing Kits):
  - **Material:** Slippers – breathable, non-slip sole, often non-woven fabric. Others – typically plastic components.
  - **Quality:** Comfortable slippers, effective and safe for single guest use.
  - **Packaging:** Minimal, hygienic packaging.
  - **Sustainability:** Explore biodegradable options for items like toothbrushes and combs.

2. Cleaning Agents

- **Types:** All-purpose cleaner, glass cleaner, bathroom cleaner (descaler/

/disinfectant), floor cleaner, laundry detergent, carpet spot cleaner.

• **Concentration:** Highly concentrated formulas preferred to reduce packaging waste and shipping costs.

• **Eco-Certification:** Mandatory Green Seal, Eco logo, or equivalent certification.

• **Safety:** Must come with comprehensive Safety Data Sheets (SDS) and clear usage instructions. Non-corrosive, non- flammable, and low-VOC (Volatile Organic Compounds) where possible.

Figure 20: Cleaning Agents

• **Effectiveness:** Proven efficacy against common hotel soils and pathogens (for disinfectants).

• **Packaging:** Durable, clearly labelled, and preferably refillable containers. Bulk purchasing options.

3. Linen

- **Bed Linen (Sheets, Duvet Covers, Pillowcases):**
  - o **Material:** 100% long-staple cotton or high-quality cotton-rich blends (e.g., 60% cotton/40% polyester) for durability and comfort.
  - o **Thread Count:** Minimum 200TC for guest comfort and longevity.
  - o **Weave:** Percale or sateen.

Figure 21: Hotel Linen

  - o **Colour:** Optic white, consistent shade across all items.
  - o **Construction:** Double-stitched hems, generous sizing for proper fit after laundering shrinkage.
  - o **Durability:** Must withstand frequent commercial laundering (high temperatures, strong detergents) without significant degradation or pilling.

- **Towels (Bath, Hand, Face, Bath Mat):**
  - o **Material:** 100% ring-spun cotton for superior absorbency and softness.
  - o **GSM (Grams per Square Meter):** Bath towels: 550-700 GSM; Hand towels: 450-550 GSM; Face towels: 400-500 GSM.
  - o **Colour:** Optic white, consistent shade.
  - o **Construction:** Dobby border, double-stitched hems for durability.
  - o **Durability:** High absorbency, low linting, and resistance to snagging.

4. Uniforms

- **Material:** Durable, breathable, and comfortable fabric suitable for the Chennai climate (e.g., cotton-polyester blends, moisture-wicking fabrics).
- **Design:** Professional, consistent with hotel branding, allowing ease of movement for various tasks.
- **Sizing:** Available in a full range of sizes for all staff.
- **Durability:** Colourfast, wrinkle-resistant, andable to withstand frequent industrial laundering. Reinforced stitching at stress points.
- **Maintenance:** Easy to care.

Figure 22: Hotel Uniforms

5. Equipments

- **Vacuum Cleaners:** Commercial-grade, HEPA-filtered, quiet operation, robust construction. Bagged or bag-less options based on preference, with easy maintenance.
- **Floor Cleaning Machines:** Auto scrubbers, polishers – appropriate size and power for hotel floor types. User-friendly, efficient.
- **Trolleys/Carts:** Durable, manoeuvrable, sufficient storage capacity for linens, amenities, and waste. Non-marking wheels.
- **Mops & Buckets:** High-quality micro-fibre mops for effective cleaning. Durable, easy-to-empty buckets with wringers.
- **General Cleaning Tools:** Sprayers, squeegees, brushes, dustpans – ergonomic, durable materials (e.g., high-grade plastics, stainless steel).
- **Safety Equipment:** Wet floor signs (highly visible), appropriate PPE (gloves, safety glasses).

Figure 23: Cleaning Equipment

- **Repair & Maintenance:** Availability of spare parts and service support from the supplier. Energy efficiency ratings for powered equipment.

General Procurement Guidelines:

- **Supplier Certification:** ISO 9001 (Quality Management) and ISO 14001 (Environmental Management) preferred.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

- **Samples:** Mandatory pre-purchase samples for quality and fit approval.
- **Lead Times & Delivery:** Reliable delivery schedules and ability to meet demand fluctuations.
- **Warranty:** Clear warranty terms for all products and equipment.
- **Cost-Effectiveness:** Competitive pricing while maintaining quality and standards.

Check Back Questions:

1.1.Define non-recyclable inventories.

2.Define recyclable inventories

3.Differentiate between Large and small housekeeping equipment.

4.What is 'PAR'? Illustrate.

5.What is the Formula for Minimum Inventory Quantity?

6.Define Lead Time

7.What is the Formula for Maximum Inventory Quantity?

8.Discuss about the Purchase specifications for housekeeping inventories of Cleaning agents.

1.8 INTRODUCTION WORK SCHEDULES

A work schedule outlines an individual's tasks, including breaks and tidying, for a specific period. It ensures clear responsibilities, prevents confusion and fatigue, and guarantees all daily, weekly, or periodic tasks are covered without duplication. Schedules also aim for fair work distribution and efficient task allocation to minimize non-productive time.

1.8.1 INTRODUCTION TO WORK SCHEDULE

Housekeeping work schedule is a vital operational blueprint. It details every task for each team member per shift, encompassing core cleaning, meal breaks, equipment maintenance, and administrative duties. This meticulous planning, built on clarity, comprehensive task coverage, equitable distribution of work, and adaptability, directly drives efficiency and consistent cleanliness. Ultimately, it ensures a welcoming guest environment and cultivates a productive, motivated housekeeping team.

1.8.2 KEY PRINCIPLES FOR WORK SCHEDULE

1. Clarity and Precision: Eliminating Ambiguity A fundamental principle is that each team member must have an unequivocal understanding of "what to do, where, and when." This includes specifying the exact rooms or areas assigned,

Figure 24 Scheduling Work Schedule

the sequence of tasks within each area, and the expected timeframes for completion. Ambiguity leads to confusion, inefficiency, and potential guest complaints. Detailed task lists for different room types (e.g., standard, suite, accessible) and public areas (e.g., lobby, corridors, restrooms, dining areas) are crucial.

2. Task Coverage and Frequency: No Task Left Behind The work schedule must ensure that all essential cleaning and maintenance tasks, whether daily, weekly, monthly, or periodically, are systematically covered without omission or wasteful duplication. This requires a thorough understanding of the hotel's cleanliness standards and the varying frequencies required for different areas. For instance:

- **Daily Tasks:** Guest room cleaning (occupied and departure), public area cleaning (lobby, restrooms), waste disposal, restocking amenities.
- **Weekly Tasks:** Deep cleaning of specific guest rooms, thorough cleaning of high-traffic public areas, linen inventory.
- **Monthly/Periodic Tasks:** Washing curtains, carpet shampooing, polishing furniture, cleaning light fixtures, pest control checks, deep cleaning of kitchenettes in suites. The "number of schedules" directly correlates to the "frequency to clean one area," ensuring that specific zones receive the attention they need at the prescribed intervals.

3. Fair and Even Distribution of Work: Preventing Overlap and Burnout Equitable workload distribution is paramount for staff morale, productivity, and preventing burnout. The schedule must ensure that each team member is assigned a fair share of duties commensurate with their skill level and within their designated working hours, avoiding overlapping responsibilities that can lead to conflict or inefficiency. This involves:

- **Room Allocation:** Distributing rooms based on type, expected occupancy, and estimated cleaning time.
- **Public Area Rotation:** Rotating public area assignments to ensure variety and shared responsibility.
- **Special Projects:** Allocating deep cleaning or special projects fairly among the team.
- **Considering Physical Demands:** Being mindful of the physical demands of certain tasks and distributing them appropriately.

4. Optimized Workflow and Adjoining Area Allotment: Minimizing Non-

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Productive Time Efficiency is significantly boosted by minimizing unnecessary movement. Schedules should strategically allot adjoining or proximate areas to the same team member whenever possible. This "clustering" of assignments reduces non-productive time spent walking from one area to another, allowing more focus on actual cleaning and service. For example, a room attendant should ideally be assigned a block of rooms on the same floor rather than scattered rooms across different levels.

5. Integration of Breaks and Administrative Time: Realistic schedules factor in essential breaks (meal and short breaks) and necessary administrative time. This includes time for:
- Clocking in/out and debriefing.
- Collecting and returning keys/devices.
- Retrieving and returning cleaning trolleys and supplies.
- Reporting maintenance issues or unusual findings.
- Attending short team briefings. Neglecting these elements leads to rushed work, missed tasks, and fatigued employees.

6. Flexibility and Adaptability: Responding to Dynamic Needs While structure is crucial, an effective work schedule must also possess a degree of flexibility to adapt to the dynamic nature of hotel operations. Unexpected guest check-outs, early arrivals, last-minute room changes, or sudden maintenance emergencies require the ability to quickly reallocate resources. This might involve:

- **Contingency Planning:** Having backup staff or cross-trained employees.
- **Communication Channels:** Ensuring efficient communication between supervisors and team members for real-time adjustments.
- **Digital Scheduling Tools:** Utilizing software that allows for easy modifications and instant updates.

7. Quality Control and Supervision: The work schedule is also a tool for supervisors to monitor progress and ensure quality. It provides a clear framework against which performance can be measured. Regular inspections and feedback sessions based on the schedule's expectations help maintain high standards. Supervisors can use the schedule to identify areas that consistently take longer than expected or require more attention.

8.Training and Development Considerations: When crafting schedules, especially for new or less experienced staff, consideration should be given to training needs. Pairing new hires with experienced team members or assigning them to less complex tasks initially can be beneficial. The schedule can also be adjusted to accommodate ongoing training sessions.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

1.8.3 BENEFITS OF A WELL STRUCTURED WORK SCHEDULE

- **Enhanced Efficiency and Productivity:** Optimal allocation of resources and minimized wasted time.

- **Consistent Quality Standards:** Ensures all areas are cleaned to the hotel's specific benchmarks.

- **Improved Guest Satisfaction:** Clean rooms and public areas directly contribute to a positive guest experience.

- **Reduced Operational Costs:** Efficient use of labour and supplies.

- **Increased Staff Morale and Retention:** Fair workload, clear expectations, and reduced stress.

- **Effective Resource Management:** Better control over linen, amenities, and cleaning supplies.

- **Simplified Supervision and Performance Monitoring:** Provides a clear benchmark for evaluation.

- **Proactive Maintenance:** Early identification of repair needs.

1.8.4 DEVELOPING A WORK SCHEDULE

- Multiple work schedules must be produced for usage in a single day because the quantity of work in a day may exceed the duration of a single shift.

- Work schedules must be written in plain English and in a succinct format.

- As a result, the quantity of schedules created for a certain region indicates the number of employees needed to clean that area on that day.

- When an employee reports for work, or during the briefing (if necessary), they should be given the schedule.

It's crucial to remember that the precise number of rooms and duties may change depending on the hotel's size, occupancy, and star level. As a template, this timetable should be modified as necessary.

1.8.5 SAMPLE FORMAT OF WORK SCHEDULE

MORNING SHIFT ROOM ATTENDANT WORK SCHEDULE

Date:	[Date]
Room Attendant:	[Room Boy's Name]
Shift Hours:	8:00 AM - 4:00 PM
Supervisor:	[Supervisor's Name]

TIME	TASK	REMARKS/ROOM NUMBERS ASSIGNED
8:00 – 8:30 AM	Shift Briefing & Preparation	Report to Housekeeping Office, collect keys/device, get daily assignments, check trolley supplies.
8:30 - 8:45 AM	Linen & Supply Collection	Collect fresh linen, amenities, and cleaning chemicals for assigned rooms.
8:45 - 9:00 AM	Guest Corridor Check	Quick check of assigned floor corridors for cleanliness, unusual activity, or service requests.
9:00 - 12:30 PM	Departure Room Cleaning (Block 1)	Rooms: [e.g., 201, 203, 205, 207, 209, 211, 213, 215] (8 rooms) Tasks: Strip beds, clear trash, clean bathroom, dust, vacuum, restock.
12:30 - 1:00 PM	Lunch Break	Report to staff canteen/designated break area.
1:00 - 3:30 PM	Departure Room Cleaning (Block 2)/Occupied Room Service	Rooms (Departure): [e.g., 217, 219, 221, 223] (4 rooms) Rooms (Occupied): [e.g., 202, 204, 206] (3 rooms) Tasks - make beds, tidy, replace towels/amenities.
3:30 - 3:45 PM	Trolley & Equipment Tidy-Up	Empty trash, sort dirty linen, replenish trolley for next shift, clean equipment.
3:45 - 4:00 PM	Reporting & Handover	Report maintenance issues (e.g., leaky faucet, broken light), lost & found items, guest requests not fulfilled. Handover keys/device.

Important Notes for Room Attendant:

- **Guest First:** Always prioritize guest requests and privacy.
- **"Do Not Disturb" (DND) Rooms:** Do not enter rooms with DND signs. Note them down for reporting.
- **Security:** Always ensure room doors are closed and secure after cleaning.
- **Lost & Found:** Immediately report and secure any items left behind by guests.
- **Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs):** Follow all hotel SOPs for cleaning and guest service.
- **Communication:** Inform your supervisor immediately of any issues or delays.

Check Back Questions:

1. What are the points to be kept in mind while scheduling work schedule tasks?
2. What are the contents of Work Schedule documents?

1.9. COORDINATING, DIRECTING AND CONTROLLING

In the bustling ecosystem of a star hotel, the Housekeeping department is the silent guardian of guest satisfaction and the physical manifestation of the hotel's brand promise. Beyond just cleaning, it orchestrates a symphony of activities that ensures every corner, from the grand lobby to the most private guest room, radiates comfort, hygiene, and luxury. This document delves into three pivotal management functions – Coordinating, Directing, and Controlling – that are indispensable for the efficient and exemplary operation of a star hotel's Housekeeping department.

1.9.1 COORDINATING, DIRECTING, AND CONTROLLING

The Executive Housekeeper (EHK) and their dedicated team are the unsung
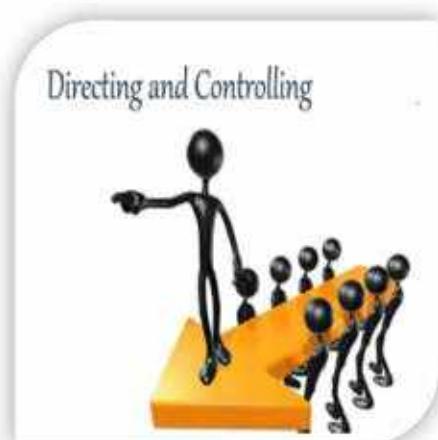
Figure 25: Directing and Controlling

heroes of any thriving hotel. Their role transcends mere tidiness; they are the architects of atmosphere, meticulously crafting an environment where guests feel truly at home. Functioning as strategic leaders, they orchestrate a complex ballet of tasks, from inventory management to staff scheduling, ensuring every linen is pristine and every surface gleams.

Beyond their managerial prowess, EHKS are powerful motivators, inspiring their teams to maintain unwavering standards of excellence. Their success hinges on seamless communication, crystal-clear directives, and a rigorous system of quality control. This integrated approach directly elevates guest satisfaction, safeguards the hotel's reputation, and ultimately, drives its financial success.

1.9.1.1 COORDINATING: HARMONIZING EFFORTS FOR SEAMLESS OPERATIONS

Coordination in the Housekeeping department is the art of ensuring that all moving parts work in unison, both within the department and with other hotel departments. It's about creating a unified flow that anticipates needs, resolves conflicts, and optimizes resource utilization.

1. Internal Coordination:

Between Sections: The EHK must ensure smooth information flow and task allocation between different sections of the department: guest room attendants,

public area attendants, laundry, linen room, and uniform room. For instance, the linen room needs to coordinate with laundry for timely washing and pressing, and with room attendants for linen supply based on occupancy.

• **Shift Handovers:** Meticulous handover procedures between shifts are critical.

• This includes communicating room status updates, pending tasks, special guest requests, and any maintenance issues to ensure a continuous and uninterrupted service.

• **Resource Allocation:** Coordinating the deployment of staff, cleaning equipment, and supplies. This involves real-time adjustments based on fluctuating occupancy, guest check-outs, and unexpected demands. For example, if there's a sudden large group check-in, the EHK coordinates by reallocating room attendants to ensure rooms are ready promptly.

2. External (Inter-Departmental) Coordination:

• **Front Office:** This is perhaps the most critical coordination point. Housekeeping relies on the Front Office for accurate guest arrival/departure lists, room status updates (e.g., vacant dirty, vacant clean, occupied dirty, occupied clean), special guest requests (e.g., extra towels, specific pillow types), and VIP arrivals. In return, Housekeeping provides real-time room status to the Front Office, allowing them to assign rooms efficiently. A breakdown here can lead to significant guest dissatisfaction.

• **Engineering/Maintenance:** Housekeeping staff are often the first to identify maintenance issues (e.g., leaky faucets, faulty lights, broken furniture). Prompt reporting to Engineering and follow-up on repairs is vital for guest comfort and safety. Coordination ensures that rooms are not assigned until repairs are completed, or guests are informed accordingly.

• **Food & Beverage (F&B):** Coordination with F&B is essential for cleaning F&B outlets (restaurants, bars, banquet halls) after operational hours, managing linen for F&B services, and handling in-room dining clearances. For instance, Housekeeping needs to know when a banquet hall will be vacant for cleaning and setup.

• **Security:** For lost and found items, handling suspicious activities, and ensuring the safety of both guests and staff within guest rooms and public areas. Coordination ensures proper protocols are followed for safeguarding guest belongings.

- **Sales & Marketing:** For preparing show rooms, coordinating special setups for events or photoshoots, and understanding future occupancy forecasts to plan staffing and resources.

Example: Coordination for a VIP Arrival When a VIP guest is expected, the Front Office informs Housekeeping. The EHK then coordinates with a senior room attendant to prepare a specific room, ensuring it's impeccably clean, amenities are top-tier, and any special requests (e.g., flower arrangements) are fulfilled in coordination with the florist or F&B. Maintenance might be called for a final check of all utilities. This multi-departmental coordination ensures a flawless VIP experience.

1.9.1.2 DIRECTING: GUIDING AND INSPIRING THE TEAM

Directing involves leading, motivating, and guiding the housekeeping team to achieve departmental and hotel objectives. It's about setting the tone, empowering staff, and ensuring everyone understands their role in delivering exceptional service.

- **Leadership and Motivation:** The EHK acts as a role model, demonstrating professionalism, a strong work ethic, and a guest-centric approach. Motivating staff through recognition (e.g., "Employee of the Month"), positive feedback, and creating a supportive work environment is crucial. A motivated team is more likely to go the extra mile for guests.

- **Communication:** Clear, concise, and consistent communication is paramount.

- **Briefings:** Daily morning briefings are essential for assigning tasks, disseminating important information (e.g., VIP arrivals, special events, guest feedback), addressing concerns, and reinforcing standards.

- **Feedback:** Providing constructive feedback to staff on their performance, highlighting areas of strength, and identifying areas for improvement. This should be a continuous process, not just during formal appraisals.

- **Two-Way Communication:** Creating an open-door policy where staff feel comfortable sharing ideas, concerns, and suggestions. This fosters a sense of ownership and can lead to valuable operational improvements.

Figure 26: Controlling, Monitoring & Evaluating

- **Delegation:** Effectively delegating tasks and responsibilities to supervisors and team members. This not only lightens the EHK's workload but also empowers staff, builds their skills, and increases their job satisfaction.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

• **Training and Development:** Directing includes overseeing ongoing training programs. This could involve refresher training on cleaning techniques, new product introductions, guest service etiquette, safety procedures (e.g., chemical handling, fire safety), and cross-training to enhance versatility. Continuous learning ensures staff skills remain sharp and up-to-date.

• **Problem-Solving and Conflict Resolution:** Directing involves addressing day-to-day operational issues, resolving conflicts among staff members, and managing challenging situations with professionalism and fairness.

1.9.1.3 CONTROLLING: ENSURING STANDARDS AND PERFORMANCE

Controlling is the process of keeping an eye on performance, comparing it to predetermined benchmarks, and implementing remedial measures to guarantee that departmental goals are fulfilled. It is the system that guarantees responsibility, effectiveness, and quality.

• **Quality Control Inspections:** This is a cornerstone of housekeeping control. Supervisors and the EHK conduct regular, unannounced inspections of cleaned guest rooms, public areas, and back-of-house areas.

o **Checklists:** Using detailed checklists to ensure every item meets the hotel's exacting standards (e.g., dust-free surfaces, streak-free mirrors, properly made beds, correct amenity placement, clean and sanitized bathrooms).

o **Random Spot Checks:** Performing random checks on rooms and public areas throughout the day to ensure consistency.

o **Feedback Loop:** Providing immediate feedback to the responsible staff member for any deviations from standards and ensuring corrective action is taken.

• **Performance Monitoring and Evaluation:**

o **Key Performance Indicators (KPIs):** Tracking metrics such as average time to clean a room, guest complaints related to cleanliness, linen usage per occupied room, cost of cleaning supplies per occupied room, and staff productivity.

o **Guest Feedback Analysis:** Systematically collecting and analyzing guest feedback from surveys, comment cards, and online reviews. Negative feedback related to cleanliness is a direct indicator of control deficiencies.

o **Staff Performance Appraisals:** Conducting formal periodic reviews of individual staff performance against set objectives and standards.

• **Inventory Control:** Meticulous control over supplies and linen.

o **Usage Tracking:** Monitoring the consumption of cleaning supplies, guest

amenities, and linen to identify unusual patterns, prevent waste, and deter pilferage.

   o **Stock Counts:** Regular physical inventory counts of linen and supplies to reconcile with records and identify discrepancies.

   o **Par Stock Levels:** Maintaining appropriate par stock levels to avoid shortages and overstocking, which ties up capital.

• **Budgetary Control:** Monitoring departmental expenses against the allocated budget. This involves tracking costs for cleaning materials, linen, equipment maintenance, and salaries. Any significant deviations require investigation and corrective action.

• **Safety and Security Compliance:** Ensuring strict adherence to all safety protocols (e.g., correct chemical handling, use of PPE, safe operation of equipment) and security procedures (e.g., lost and found policy, key control, reporting suspicious activity). Regular audits ensure compliance.

Example: Controlling Room Cleanliness Standards A supervisor uses a digital checklist on a tablet to inspect a 'vacant clean' room. They mark off items like "Bathroom fixtures sparkling," "Bed perfectly made," "No dust on furniture." If they find a smudge on the mirror, they immediately call the room attendant back to rectify it, providing direct, on-the-spot feedback and ensuring the standard is met before the room is released for guest occupancy. This direct intervention is a powerful form of control.

1.9.2 TYPES OF SHIFTS

In the dynamic world of hospitality, the Housekeeping Department operates as a finely tuned machine, running 24 hours a day to ensure impeccable cleanliness, comfort, and guest satisfaction. This continuous operation necessitates a well-planned system of shifts, designed to maximize efficiency, cover all areas, and cater to the varying demands of hotel occupancy throughout the day and night.

► THE CORE SHIFTS IN HOTEL HOUSEKEEPING

While specific timings and roles may vary slightly between hotels based on size, star rating, and operational needs, the housekeeping department generally operates on three primary shifts:

1. **Morning Shift (Day Shift):** This is typically the busiest and most critical shift for the housekeeping department.
2. **Afternoon Shift (Evening Shift):** This shift focuses on maintaining cleanliness and providingspecific guest services.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

3. Night Shift: The quietest shift, primarily dedicated to deep cleaning and preparation for the next day.

Let's delve into each type of shift, its typical responsibilities, and how it contributes to the overall seamless operation of the hotel.

1. Morning Shift (e.g., 7:00 AM - 3:00 PM / 8:00 AM - 4:00 PM)

The morning shift is the powerhouse of the housekeeping department. It begins before most guests are awake and continues through the peak check-out and check-in periods. The majority of the housekeeping staff, particularly Room Attendants (GRAs - Guest Room Attendants), are scheduled during this time.

Key Responsibilities:

• **Room Cleaning (Check-out Rooms):** Prioritizing and thoroughly cleaning rooms vacated by guests, ensuring they are ready for new arrivals. This involves stripping linens, making beds, sanitizing bathrooms, vacuuming, dusting, and replenishing amenities.

• **Room Cleaning (Stay-over Rooms):** Cleaning occupied rooms as per guest requests or hotel policy, tidying up without disturbing guest belongings.

• **Public Area Cleaning (Pre-opening):** Ensuring all public areas (lobbies, restaurants, meeting rooms, corridors, restrooms) are spotless and presentable before peak guest activity.

• **Linen Management:** Collecting dirty linen from rooms and pantries, sending it to the laundry, and stocking clean linen.

• **Guest Requests:** Attending to immediate guest requests such as extra towels, toiletries, or assistance with luggage.

• **Minibar Stocking:** Checking and replenishing minibar items in guest rooms.

• **Reporting Maintenance Issues:** Identifying and reporting any maintenance defects in rooms or public areas to the engineering department.

• **Supervision and Coordination:** Floor supervisors oversee GRAs, inspect cleaned rooms, and coordinate with the Front Office for room status updates.

Example Morning Shift Schedule for a Room Attendant:

TIME	ACTIVITY
7:30 AM	Report to duty, collect daily assignment sheet, key, and supplies.
7:45 AM	Stock trolley and proceed to assigned floor.
8:00 AM - 1:00 PM	Clean assigned check-out and stay-over rooms.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

1:00 PM - 1:30 PM	Lunch Break
1:30 PM - 3:00 PM	Finish cleaning remaining rooms, attend to last-minute guest requests, tidy pantry.
3:00 PM	Return key, submit daily report, sign out.

2. Afternoon/Evening Shift (e.g., 2:00 PM - 10:00 PM / 3:00 PM - 11:00 PM)

The afternoon shift is less focused on heavy room cleaning but plays a crucial role in maintaining guest comfort and preparing for the next day's operations. This shift typically has fewer GRAs and more Public Area Attendants.

Key Responsibilities:

• **Turndown Service (in luxury hotels):** Preparing guest rooms for the night by turning down beds, placing amenities, drawing curtains, and refreshing bathrooms.
• **Attending to Late Check-outs/Early Check-ins:** Cleaning rooms for guests checking out late or checking in early, if not covered by the morning shift.
• **Public Area Maintenance:** Continuous cleaning and upkeep of public areas, especially high-traffic zones like lobbies, lounges, and F&B outlets.
• **Guest Requests:** Responding to evening guest requests promptly.
• **Linen Room Operations:** Receiving clean linen from the laundry, sorting, and stocking.
• **Pantry Stocking:** Ensuring all floor pantries are well-stocked with supplies for the next morning shift.
• **Reporting:** Handover to the night shift.

Example Afternoon Shift Schedule for a Public Area Attendant:

TIME	ACTIVITY
2:30 PM	Report to duty, receive handover from morning supervisor.
2:45 PM	Clean and maintain lobby, main entrance, and restrooms.
5:00 PM	Spot cleaning in F&B; outlets before dinner service.
6:00 PM - 6:30 PM	Dinner Break
6:30 PM - 10:00 PM	Continue public area cleaning, respond to special requests, prepare for night shift.
10:00 PM	Handover to night supervisor, sign out.

3. Night Shift (e.g., 10:00 PM - 6:00 AM / 11:00 PM - 7:00 AM)

The night shift is generally the quietest in terms of guest interaction but crucial for deep cleaning and ensuring the hotel is pristine for the morning rush. It

usually has the smallest team, focusing on areas that cannot be thoroughly cleaned during the day due to guest traffic.

- **Deep Cleaning:** Performing intensive cleaning tasks in public areas, offices, and back-of-house areas (e.g., carpet shampooing, floor polishing, window cleaning).

- **Inventory and Stocking:** Taking inventory of supplies, receiving deliveries, and re-stocking main linen and supply rooms.

- **Linen Management:** Further sorting and preparing linen for the next day's laundry.

- **Emergency Cleaning:** Responding to any cleaning emergencies that may arise during the night (e.g., spills, accidents).

- **Pest Control:** Assisting with scheduled pest control activities in coordination with external agencies.

- **Security Checks:** Assisting security with checks of various areas for cleanliness and safety.

- **Reporting:** Preparing reports for the morning shift, including any incidents or pending tasks.

Example Night Shift Schedule for a Public Area Attendant/Houseman:

TIME	ACTIVITY
10:45 PM	Report to duty, receive handover from evening supervisor.
11:00 PM - 3:00 AM	Deep cleaning of specific public areas (e.g., lobby, banquet halls if not in use, restrooms).
3:00 AM - 3:30 AM	Break
3:30 AM - 6:30 AM	Continue deep cleaning, prepare equipment for next shift, general tidying.
6:30 AM	Handover to morning supervisor, sign out.

▶ **Other Specialized Shifts or Considerations:**

- **General Shift (e.g., 9:00 AM - 5:00 PM):** Often for administrative staff, supervisors, or linen room personnel who primarily work standard business hours.

- **Break Shifts:** Some hotels utilize break shifts where staff work split hours (e.g., 8:00 AM - 1:00 PM and 6:00 PM - 11:00 PM) to cover peak periods without requiring continuous long shifts. This can be challenging for staff due to the split nature.

- **Flex Shifts/On-Call:** For unforeseen circumstances or sudden spikes in

occupancy, hotels might have a small team of flexible or on-call staff.

• **Overlapping Shifts:** Often, shifts will overlap for a short period to facilitate smooth handover and communication between outgoing and incoming teams.

Efficient shift management in the housekeeping department is fundamental to delivering a consistently high standard of cleanliness and service, ultimately enhancing the overall guest experience and contributing to the hotel's reputation and profitability.

1.9.3 PLANNING DUTY

Optimizing staff allocation and ensuring seamless operations are critical for any successful housekeeping department. This is where a well-structured duty roster (or rota) becomes indispensable.

➢ *Why Duty Rosters Are Essential*

Duty rosters are more than just schedules; they are vital tools for efficient workforce management. Here's why:

• **Optimal Staffing Levels:** They ensure adequate staff coverage at all times, preventing understaffing and ensuring all tasks are completed efficiently.

• **Compliance and Fairness:** Rosters guarantee staff work their contracted hours, promoting fairness and adherence to labour laws.

• **Employee Well-being:** Regular and predictable days off provide staff with adequate rest, reduce burnout, and contribute to a healthier work-life balance.

• **Fair Leave Planning:** They facilitate equitable distribution of special days off and holiday requests among the team.

• **Payroll Accuracy:** Rosters are crucial for accurate attendance tracking and streamlined payroll processing.

• **Emergency Preparedness:** In emergencies like a fire, a clearly posted roster helps identify who is on the premises, ensuring everyone's safety.

• **Transparency and Communication:** Duty rosters should be posted in an accessible location at least a week in advance, allowing staff to plan their personal lives. New employees should receive a clear explanation of the roster during their induction.

• **Operational Flexibility:** Incorporating a degree of flexibility within the roster can lead to smoother operations and better adaptability to unforeseen circumstances.

➤ *Key Considerations for Creating a Duty Roster*

Before drafting a duty roster, it's crucial to gather specific information to ensure its effectiveness:

- **Operational Hours:** Determine the exact hours the housekeeping department needs to be fully operational.

- **Staff Headcount:** Ascertain the number of full-time, part-time, and any available casual or agency staff.

- **Work Hours:** Confirm the standard number of hours each employee works per day or week.

- **Break Allowances:** Account for meal and coffee break times.

- **Productivity Rates:** Estimate the expected productivity rate per employee for a given period (e.g., number of rooms cleaned per day).

- **Staff Requests & Absences:** Factor in staff requests for specific days off, holiday periods, and potential absences due to illness. Always have a contingency plan for last-minute sick calls or unforeseen absences.

- **Workload Projections:** Estimate the daily workload, including expected occupancy rates and special events.

- **Special Projects:** Account for unique operational factors like deep cleaning schedules, refurbishment projects, or VIP arrivals.

➤ *Daily Staff Monitoring*

In addition to pre-planned rosters, daily staff placement monitoring is essential. This involves:

- Continuously tracking staffing levels across all shifts throughout the 24-hour cycle.
- Making immediate alternate arrangements for absentees or latecomers.
- Allocating staff for extra jobs or unforeseen tasks.
- Maintaining a staff placement register daily to ensure all areas are covered and additional tasks can be handled efficiently.

Example Duty Rota for a Hotel Housekeeping Department for Morning Shift
Here's an example duty rota for a 150-room hotel based on following criteria:

- **Day Maids:** Work from 7:30 a.m. to 3:30 p.m., including a 30-minute lunch break.
- **Work Week:** Each full-time maid works a 40-hour week.
- **Hotel Occupancy:** 150 rooms, fully booked for the week.
- **Productivity:** Each maid is expected to clean 15 rooms per day.
- **Staff:** 14 full-time day maids (no part-time or casual staff).

• **Special Requests:** Maid 'M' is on holiday Saturday and Sunday. Maid 'S' has requested Thursday off for a clinic visit.

Calculation of Required Staff:

- Total rooms to be cleaned per day = 150 rooms
- Rooms cleaned per maid per day = 15 rooms
- Number of maids required per day = 150 / 15 = 10 maids

Housekeeping Duty Rota - Week of [Start Date]

STAFF NAME	MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	FRIDAY	SATURDAY	SUNDAY
Maid A	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	Off
Maid B	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off
Maid C	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty
Maid D	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty
Maid E	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off
Maid F	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off
Maid G	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty
Maid H	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty
Maid I	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	Off
Maid J	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off
Maid K	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty
Maid L	Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Off	On Duty	On Duty
Maid M	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Holiday	Holiday
Maid S	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty	Day Off	On Duty	On Duty	On Duty
Total Maids On Duty	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
Maids Required	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
Buffer Staff	2	2	2	2	2	2	2

Meal times: Lunch 12-12:30 pm or 12:30-1:00 pm
Supper 6:30-7:00 pm or 7:00-7:30 pm

Note:

"On Duty" indicates a standard 7:30 a.m. - 3:30 p.m. shift.

- The "Buffer Staff" column shows the number of extra maids available beyond the daily requirement of 10. This allows for flexibility to cover for unexpected absences or to handle additional tasks like deep cleaning.
- This rota ensures that even with Maid S taking Thursday off and Maid M on holiday over the weekend, there are still ample staff to meet the 10-maid daily requirement.

1.9.4 TRAINING OF HOUSEKEEPING EMPLOYEES

Ensuring a consistent, high standard of service in the housekeeping department is paramount to a hotel's reputation and guest satisfaction. This consistency is achieved through effective and standardized training. Training in housekeeping is not a one-time event; it's a continuous process of skill development and reinforcement, crucial for both new hires and experienced staff.

➤ Training to Standards: The Foundation of Excellence

Training in housekeeping is intrinsically linked to established performance standards. These standards, meticulously detailed in job breakdowns, serve as the blueprint for every task an employee performs. Housekeeping managers and supervisors leverage these breakdowns to:

• **Identify Training Needs:** By evaluating employee performance against these breakdowns, managers can pinpoint specific areas where experienced staff might need re-training or skill refinement.

• **On-board New Employees:** Job breakdowns are invaluable for new hires, especially those with limited or no prior hospitality experience. Their detailed nature provides a clear, step-by-step guide to mastering new tasks.

• **Develop Comprehensive Training Plans:** A holistic training plan can be constructed directly from the job lists associated with each position, ensuring all core responsibilities are covered.

• **Create Detailed Lesson Plans:** Individual training sessions and their corresponding lesson plans are built upon the specific standards and additional information outlined in the job breakdowns.

Figure 27: Housekeeping Training in Action

For instance, a comprehensive 5-day training plan for a new Room Attendant might be developed directly from a detailed job list. The key principle here is mastery before progression: trainees must achieve 100% conformity to performance standards for one group of related tasks before moving on to the next. While the training sequence often follows the actual task performance order, flexibility is sometimes necessary to optimize learning.

➤ The Four-Step Training Method: A Practical Approach

The core function of any trainer in housekeeping is to effectively communicate performance standards. This is best achieved through a structured approach, commonly known as the Four-Step Training Method. This method is adaptable for both new hires and seasoned employees and forms the backbone of effective on-the-job training. The four steps are:

1. Prepare to Train
2. Conduct the Training

3. Coach Trial Performances

4. Follow Through

This robust framework ensures that training is systematic, thorough, and leads to tangible improvements in employee performance. Let's explore each step in detail.

Step 1: Prepare to Train: Effective training never happens by accident. Even experienced managers who know housekeeping skills inside out can overlook crucial details without proper preparation. A structured, written format is essential to guide the training session.

➤ *Key Preparation Activities:*

• Write Training Objectives

• Develop Lesson Plans

Sample Lesson Plan Segment (Task: Making a Bed - Fitted Sheet):

STEP NO.	ACTION (WHAT TO DO)	KEY POINTS (HOW TO DO IT / WHY IT'S IMPORTANT)
1.	Position Fitted Sheet	Identify head/foot, center seam. Ensure label faces up.
2.	Secure Top Corners	Tuck firmly under mattress, ensuring no wrinkles.
3.	Secure Bottom Corners	Pull tightly, tuck firmly, creating a smooth surface.
4.	Smooth & Adjust	Run hands over sheet to remove any remaining wrinkles.

• Decide on Training Methods:

• Establish a Timetable for Instruction:

• Select the Training Location:

• Assemble Training Materials and Equipment:

• Set Up the Workstation:

Step 2: Conduct the Training: With thorough preparation complete, the actual training can commence. This phase focuses on clear communication, demonstration, and initial comprehension checks. *Guidelines for Presenting the Training:*

• Prepare the Trainees

• Begin the Training Session

• Demonstrate the Procedure

• Avoid Jargon

• Take Adequate Time

• Repeat the Sequence

Step 3: Coach Trial Performances: Once trainees feel comfortable with the demonstration and explanation, it's time for hands-on practice. This step is critical for skill development and confidence building. *Key Coaching Techniques:*

• Immediate Practice

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

• Demonstrate and Explain
• Provide Immediate Feedback
    o Compliment correct performance immediately.
    o Correct errors immediately and constructively.
• Build Confidence

Step 4: Follow Through: A common, yet critical, training mistake is neglecting the follow-through phase. Without it, the knowledge and skills gained during training can quickly erode. Follow-through ensures that learned procedures are consistently applied and maintained.

Essential Follow-Through Elements:

• Continue Positive Reinforcement:

• Provide Constant Feedback:

• Coach a Few Tasks Each Day:

• Evaluate the Employee's Progress:

By diligently applying these four steps, housekeeping departments can cultivate a highly skilled, efficient, and consistent workforce, directly contributing to a superior guest experience and the overall success of the hotel.

Check Back Questions:

1. What do you understand by Shift Handovers in housekeeping department?
2. Define Inter department coordination.
3. Write short notes on Leadership and Motivation.
4. Write short notes on Safety and Security Compliance
5. Differentiate between Morning Shift and Night Shift.
6. What are the Key Responsibilities of Afternoon Staff?
7. How would you prepare yourself to begin the training sessions?

1.10 STAFFING IN HOUSEKEEPING OPERATIONS

Proper staffing is not just about filling positions—it is about hiring the right people, preparing them for success, and nurturing them for growth. A strategically executed staffing plan leads to improved employee morale, guest satisfaction, and operational efficiency.

In the context of hotel operations, particularly in the Housekeeping Department, staffing involves the recruitment, selection, orientation, training, and

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

development of personnel to ensure operational readiness and service quality. The Executive Housekeeper, having completed the planning and organization phases—including the Area Responsibility Plan and House Breakout Plan—must now focus on human resources to support smooth operations. The Department Staffing Guide, derived from these planning documents, helps determine manpower requirements across various categories.

1.10.1 STAFFING GUIDE

1. STAFFING PROCESS OVERVIEW

STAFFING STAGE	KEY ACTIVITIES
Workforce Planning	Analyze needs via staffing guides, workload, and property layout
Recruitment	Mass hiring via advertising, job fairs, referrals
Selection & Interview	Screening, interviewing, and evaluating candidates
Orientation	Introduction to policies, environment, and responsibilities
Training	On-the-job and classroom training on standards, procedures
Development	Employee growth opportunities through skill enhancement and promotion pathways

2. SOURCING EMPLOYEES

Sourcing methods may include:

- Print Media: Classified advertisements for mass recruitment
- Online Job Portals
- Campus Recruitment
- Internal Referrals
- Walk-ins and Career Fairs

Example: A new 5-star property may run newspaper ads or online ads for 100+ positions across housekeeping, F&B, front desk, etc., two weeks prior to pre-opening.

3. PROCESSING APPLICATIONS

A structured and courteous application process builds a positive brand image and ensures efficient handling of potential hires. Steps in Processing Applicants:

- Application Submission
- Pre-screening Interview– to filter unqualified candidates (based on job specifications)
- Department Referral– shortlisted applicants are sent to the concerned department
- Detailed Interview– conducted by department head and possible reporting supervisor
- Final Selection and Offer

STAGE	RESPONSIBLE PARTY	PURPOSE
Pre-screening	HR	Screen out unfit applicants
Final Interview	Department Manager + Supervisor	Assess job suitability and team compatibility
Reference Check	HR/Manager	Verify authenticity of credentials and history

4. THE INTERVIEW

A well-structured interview helps evaluate the applicant's technical fit and cultural compatibility. Key Qualities to Assess:

- Reliability and Stability
- Physical stamina (for manual housekeeping work)
- Grooming and Cleanliness
- Communication Skills
- Previous Experience and Training
- Attitude and Motivation

Poor interviewing may lead to hiring mismatches, resulting in high attrition and performance issues. Best Practices for Conducting Interviews:

- Be well-prepared
- Ensure a quiet, professional environment
- Practice open-ended questioning
- Be observant and a good listener
- Allow input from the reporting supervisor

5. REFERENCE CHECKS

A critical but often neglected step, reference checks should not be limited to formality.

Types of Reference Checks (in order of effectiveness)

TYPE	EFFECTIVENESS	NOTES
In-person meetings	★★★★★	Best but rare; often feasible only for senior hires
Telephone conversations	★★★★	Ideal for real-time verification and deeper queries
Written recommendations	★★	Least reliable due to legal liability concerns of former employers

6. ORIENTATION PROGRAM

Orientation shapes the first impression a new employee forms about the hotel. It is crucial to instil confidence and integrate the employee into the organization.

PHASE	DESCRIPTION
Employee Acquisition	Candidate reports to the HR for onboarding formalities
Employee Handbook	Handbook explains policies, benefits, code of conduct, grooming, etc.
Familiarization Tour	Guided tour of the hotel and key areas, including staff areas
Orientation Meeting	Group session introducing company history, goals, and Q&A with management

Components of an Effective Orientation:
Example: Before opening a new resort, all housekeeping employees may be onboarded through a week-long orientation including property tours, departmental introductions, and safety drills.

7. TRAINING & EMPLOYEE DEVELOPMENT
Once employees are oriented, training ensures standardization of service. This includes:
• Use of cleaning equipment
• Guestroom service standards
• Safety and hygiene protocols
• Team communication and cooperation

Developmental Programs for performers may include:
• Cross-training (e.g., laundry, public area)
• Supervisory skill development
• Certification courses (fire safety, chemical handling)

1.10.2 CALCULATING STAFF STRENGTH

Calculating housekeeping staff is a dynamic and ongoing process that requires careful consideration of a hotel's unique characteristics, operational efficiency, and commitment to guest satisfaction. While general benchmarks exist, a precise staffing model in the Indian context necessitates a deep understanding of local labour practices, productivity norms, and the specific service standards expected from each star category. Regular review and adjustment of staffing levels are crucial to maintain both operational efficiency and impeccable cleanliness, ensuring a positive guest experience and a healthy bottom line for the hotel.

The housekeeping department is the backbone of any hotel, directly impacting guest satisfaction and, consequently, the hotel's reputation and profitability. In India's diverse hospitality landscape, from budget-friendly accommodations to luxurious five-star resorts, accurately calculating housekeeping staff is a critical exercise. This isn't a one-size-fits-all formula, but rather a nuanced process influenced by several key factors.

➤ **Key Factors Influencing Staffing Levels**

1.Hotel Star Rating: Higher star ratings (e.g., 5-star vs. 3-star) typically imply more elaborate cleaning protocols, higher guest expectations, and often larger, more intricately designed rooms and public areas, demanding more staff.

2.Number of Rooms & Room Mix: The total room count is foundational. However, the mix of room types (standard rooms, suites, executive floors,

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

villas) significantly impacts cleaning time. Suites, for instance, take considerably longer to clean than standard rooms.

3.Occupancy Rate: This is a dynamic factor. Higher occupancy means more rooms to clean daily. Hotels often calculate staffing based on average or projected peak occupancy.

4.Cleaning Standards and Protocols: The level of cleanliness expected (e.g., daily deep cleaning, turn-down service, specific sanitization protocols, especially post-pandemic) directly influences the time spent per room and public area.

5.Hotel Layout and Design: A sprawling resort with multiple buildings and extensive landscaped areas will require more staff for public area cleaning and linen transportation compared to a compact city hotel.

6.In-house Laundry vs. Outsourced: Hotels with in-house laundries will need additional staff for washing, drying, ironing, and linen management.

7.Public Area Size and Usage: Large lobbies, multiple restaurants, banquet halls, swimming pools, fitness centers, and extensive gardens all require dedicated public area attendants.

8.Staff Productivity and Efficiency: This can vary based on training, equipment used, supervision, and motivation. Time and motion studies can help establish realistic productivity benchmarks.

9.Operating Hours and Shifts: Most housekeeping departments operate across multiple shifts (morning, evening, night) to ensure continuous cleanliness.

10.Indian Labour Laws and Practices: Considerations like weekly offs,

➢ **Core Staffing Categories and Calculation Methods**

The housekeeping department typically comprises several distinct roles. Here's how to approach their calculation:

1. Room Attendants (GRAs - Guest Room Attendants)

This is the largest segment of the housekeeping staff. The calculation is primarily based on the number of rooms an attendant can clean in a standard shift.

• **Productivity Standard:** In India, a general benchmark for a room attendant is cleaning 14-16 standard rooms in an 8-hour shift. This can vary:

  o **3-star hotels:** May push for 16-18 rooms due to simpler room designs and less elaborate cleaning.

  o **4-star hotels:** Typically 14-16 rooms.

  o **5-star hotels/Luxury properties:** Often 10-14 rooms, due to larger rooms, suites, higher cleaning standards, and amenities. Suites might count as 1.5 to 2 standard rooms in terms of cleaning time.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Note: Number of rooms that can be cleaned in hotel is calculated in the Productivity standard of basic planning activity.

- **Example 1: 4-Star Hotel (200 Rooms)**
  - Average Occupancy: 75% (150 occupied rooms)
  - Assume 50% of occupied rooms are check-outs (75 check-out, 75 stay-over)
  - Rooms per GRA: 15 standard rooms
  - Weightage for check-out: 1.2
  - Effective rooms to clean: (75×1.2)+75=90+75=165 rooms
  - GRAs needed daily: 165/15=11 GRAs

To account for weekly offs (one off per 6 working days), absenteeism, and leave, a buffer is essential. A common approach is to add a percentage (e.g., 15-20%) for relief staff. Reliever can also be calculated on basis of a formula that total employee, divided by 6.

  - Total GRAs (FTE): 11×1.20 (for relief) ≈13.2, so 14 GRAs

2. Public Area Attendants (PAs)

These staff members are responsible for lobbies, corridors, restaurants, banquets, restrooms, swimming pools, gymnasiums, and outdoor areas.

- **Calculation Basis:** This is often based on the total square footage of public areas, frequency of cleaning, and the hotel's operational hours. It can also be a ratio to guest rooms.
- **Standard Rule (Approximate):**
  - **3-star hotels:** 1 PA per 80-100 rooms.
  - **4-star hotels:** 1 PA per 60-80 rooms.
  - **5-star hotels:** 1 PA per 40-60 rooms, often with specialized staff for specific areas (e.g., pool attendant, landscaper).

NOTE: However, these numbers may vary from hotel to hotel based on different public area.

- **Example 2: 4-Star Hotel (200 Rooms)**
  - **PAs needed daily:** 200 rooms/70 rooms/PA≈2.85, so 3 PAs per shift.
  - **Assuming 3 shifts (morning, evening, night for continuous cleaning):** 3×3=9 PAs.
  - **Total PAs (FTE with relief):** 9×1.20≈10.8, so 11 PAs.

3. Linen and Laundry Staff

This includes staff for linen room management, sorting, washing, drying, ironing, and folding.

- **Calculation Basis:** Based on the volume of linen processed daily (kg), type of linen, and machinery capacity. If laundry is outsourced, fewer staff are needed.

- **Approximate Guideline:**
  - **Small to Mid-sized (in-house laundry):** 1 laundry attendant per 40-60 rooms.
  - **Larger Hotels (in-house laundry):** May have dedicated washmen, ironers, and sorters.
- **Example 3: 4-Star Hotel (200 Rooms, In-house Laundry)**
  - **Laundry attendants:** 200 rooms/50 rooms/attendant=4 attendants.
  - **Total Laundry Staff (FTE with relief):** 4×1.20≈4.8, so 5 Laundry Attendants. (This would include a laundry supervisor if volume warrants it).

4. Supervisors and Management

- **Executive Housekeeper:** 1 per property (typically for properties 100+ rooms).
- **Assistant Housekeepers:** 1-2 depending on the size and complexity (e.g., 1 for morning, 1 for evening shift in larger hotels).
- **Floor Supervisors:** Responsible for a set number of rooms or floors.
  - **Standard Rule:** 1 Floor Supervisor per 30-60 rooms for the morning shift. Fewer for evening/night shifts.
- **Public Area Supervisors:** 1 per shift for larger properties.
- **Linen/Uniform Room Supervisors:** 1 per shift for in-house laundries.
- **Desk Attendants/Control Desk:** 1 per shift (maintains records, handles calls).
- **Example:** 4-Star Hotel (200 Rooms)
  - **Executive Housekeeper:** 1
  - **Assistant Housekeeper:** 1 (or 2 for a 24-hour operation)
  - **Floor Supervisors:** Assume 200 rooms, 4 floors with 50 rooms each. 1 supervisor for every 40-50 rooms in morning. So, 4 supervisors for morning. 1-2 for evening/night. Total 6-7 supervisors.
  - **Public Area Supervisor:** 1-2 (depending on shifts/area size)
  - **Linen Room Supervisor:** 1 (if in-house laundry)
  - **Desk Attendant:** 1-2

Consolidate Example: 200-Room, 4-Star Hotel in India

POSITION	BASIS OF CALCULATION	DAILY REQUIREMENT (APPROX.)	RELIEVERS (APPROX FOR OFFS)
EXECUTIVE HOUSEKEEPER	Overall management	1	1
ASSISTANT HOUSEKEEPER	Shift management	1-2	2
FLOOR SUPERVISORS	1 per 40-50 rooms (morning); fewer for other shifts	4 (morning), 2 (evening)	7
ROOM ATTENDANTS (GRAS)	15 rooms per GRA (considering mix of check-out/stay-over)	14	16
PUBLIC AREA ATTENDANTS	1 per 60-80 rooms (across shifts)	9 (3 per shift)	11
LINEN ROOM/LAUNDRY STAFF	Based on volume, in-house laundry	4	5

HOUSEMEN	Assisting GRAs, moving furniture, heavy cleaning, supplies	1 per 60-80 rooms	3
DESK ATTENDANT	Housekeeping control desk	1	1
TAILOR/UPHOLSTERER	As needed (may be shared or contract)	1	1
HORTICULTURIST/GARDENERS	For landscaped areas (if applicable)	1-2	2
TOTAL HOUSEKEEPING STAFF			

Note: This is a simplified example. Actual staffing will require detailed workload analysis, time studies, and consideration of specific hotel amenities and services (e.g., spa, banqueting facilities, extensive F&B outlets, turndown service, special cleaning requirements).

1.10.3 JOB ALLOCATION

Job allocation within a hotel's housekeeping department is a critical operational function that directly impacts efficiency, guest satisfaction, and the overall cleanliness standards of the property. It involves systematically assigning specific tasks, areas, and responsibilities to individual staff members for a given shift. Effective job allocation ensures that all areas of the hotel are maintained to the required standards, workloads are distributed fairly, and resources are utilized optimally.

➤ Principles of Effective Job Allocation

Several core principles guide successful job allocation in housekeeping:

1. Equity and Fairness: Workloads should be distributed equitably among staff members, considering their experience, skills, and physical capabilities.

2. Efficiency: Assignments should minimize travel time, unnecessary movement, and duplication of effort. Clustering rooms or areas is a common strategy.

3. Skill Matching: Assigning tasks that align with an employee's specific skills or training (e.g., a specialist for carpet cleaning, an experienced GRA for VIP rooms).

4. Guest Satisfaction: Prioritizing tasks that directly impact guest comfort and arrival experiences, such as cleaning check-out rooms promptly.

5. Flexibility: The allocation plan should be adaptable to unforeseen circumstances like sudden guest check-outs, spills, or special requests.

6. Clear Communication: All staff must clearly understand their assigned duties, areas, and performance expectations.

➤ Key Roles and Their Allocation Methods

The housekeeping department comprises various roles, each with distinct

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

allocation methods:

1. Room Attendants (GRAs - Guest Room Attendants)

This is the most common and detailed aspect of job allocation. GRAs are responsible for cleaning guest rooms. Their assignments are typically managed through a Daily Work Report (DWR) or a Room Assignment Sheet.

Factors for Room Allocation:

- **Room Status:**
  - o **Vacant Clean (VC):** Already cleaned and ready for occupation.
  - o **Vacant Dirty (VD):** Awaiting cleaning, usually a check-out. These are top priority.
  - o **Occupied Dirty (OD) / Stay-over:** Guest is staying; requires a refresh clean.
  - o **Out of Order (OOO) / Out of Service (OOS):** Rooms that are unavailable due to maintenance or renovation; may require specific checks.

- **Room Type:** Suites, interconnected rooms, and accessible rooms often require more time and attention than standard rooms. A common practice is to assign a suite as equivalent to 1.5 or 2 standard rooms in workload.
- **Guest Status:** VIP rooms, long-stay guests, or rooms with special requests often require experienced GRAs and possibly supervisor double-checks.
- **Proximity:** Rooms assigned to a single GRA should ideally be clustered on the same floor or adjacent sections to minimize walking time.
- **Experience & Speed:** Supervisors may assign more rooms to faster, more experienced GRAs and fewer to new or slower staff.
- **Time of Day:** Early check-outs or VIP arrivals might be prioritized for immediate cleaning.

Example: Daily Room Assignment Sheet for a GRA (Mid-Scale Hotel)

FLOOR	ROOM NO.	ROOM TYPE	STATUS (START OF SHIFT)	CLEANING PRIORITY	SPECIAL NOTES	EXPECTED COMPLETION TIME
4	401	Standard	VD (Check-out)	High	Ensure mini-bar is checked	10:30 AM
4	402	Standard	OD (Stay-over)	Medium	Replenish extra towels	11:00 AM
4	403	Standard	VD (Check-out)	High	Quick turnover expected	11:45 AM
4	404	Suite	VD (Check-out)	High (VIP Arrival)	Check amenities, supervisor to inspect	01:00 PM
4	405	Standard	OD (Stay-over)	Medium	Guest note: 'Do not disturb before 11 AM'	01:30 PM
4	406	Standard	OD (Stay-over)	Low		02:00 PM
4	407	Standard	VD (Check-out)	High		02:45 PM
4	408	Standard	OD (Stay-over)	Low		03:15 PM
					Total Equivalent Rooms: 8.5 (7 standard + 1 suite counted as 1.5)	

This GRA would be expected to clean approximately 8-9 equivalent rooms within their shift, depending on the hotel's productivity standards.

2. Public Area Attendants (PAs)

PAs are responsible for maintaining the cleanliness of all non-guest room areas. Their allocation is usually zone-based.

> Allocation Factors:
> • Hotel Layout: Assigning specific floors, wings, or zones (e.g., 'lobby area,' 'banquethalls,' 'pool deck').
> • Usage Patterns: Areas with high footfall (e.g., main lobby, restrooms near restaurants) require more frequent cleaning.
> • Shift Timings: Different tasks are allocated per shift (e.g., deep cleaning at night,continuous touch-ups during the day).

ATTENDANT NAME	ASSIGNED ZONE	DAILY TASKS CHECKLIST
X	Main Lobby & Front Desk	Dust all surfaces, polish glass, vacuum carpets, clean restrooms every 2 hours, empty bins, maintain entry.
Y	Restaurant & Kitchen Corridor	Sweep/mop floors, clean all dining tables, sanitize kitchen entry, clean staff restrooms, empty bins.
Z	Meeting Rooms & Business Centre	Vacuum/mop floors, dust furniture, sanitize equipment, set up for meetings (if required).

3. Linen Room / Laundry Staff

Their allocation depends on the in-house laundry capacity and volume of linen.
   • **Specific Duties:** Sorting, washing, drying, ironing, folding, distributing clean linen to floors, collecting soiled linen.
   • **Machine Operation:** Assigning staff to specific machines (washer, dryer, calender).

4. Supervisors and Management

   • **Floor Supervisors:** Each supervisor is typically assigned oversight of a specific number of floors or GRAs (e.g., 1 supervisor for every 10-12 GRAs). Their role involves inspection, addressing issues, and supporting their team.
   • **Public Area Supervisors:** Oversee the public area team and ensure standards are met across all zones.
   • **Linen Room Supervisor:** Manages the linen inventory and laundry operations.
   • **Executive Housekeeper/Assistant Executive Housekeeper:** Overall planning, scheduling, training, and strategic management of the department.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

The Role of Technology

Many modern hotels utilize Housekeeping Management Systems (HMS). These software solutions automate job allocation, track room status in real-time, generate performance reports, and allow for instant communication between front desk, housekeeping, and maintenance, significantly enhancing efficiency and accuracy in job allocation.

In conclusion, effective job allocation in hotel housekeeping is a meticulous process that balances workload, maintains high standards of cleanliness, and leverages the strengths of individual team members. It is a fundamental component of a well-run housekeeping operation, directly contributing to guest satisfaction and the hotel's success.

> **Check Back Questions:**
> 1.What is staffing Guide?
> 2.Define following terms:
> i.Workforce Planning   ii.Recruitment
> iii.Selection & Interview   iv.Orientation
> 3.How to calculate the requirement of room boys in hotel?

1.11 LET US SUM UP

An efficient and customer-focused hospitality operation is built on the planning and organization of the housekeeping department. It starts with careful planning, in which each team member's position is clearly defined by establishing a disciplined division of work and delineating primary responsibilities. A Frequency Schedule helps organize how frequently these jobs should be completed depending on usage, occupancy, and requirements, while the creation of an Area Inventory List (AIL) helps record every physical place and work that needs attention. Job descriptions, performance standards, and Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) are designed to ensure that tasks are performed consistently and professionally. Efficiency and guest pleasure are ensured by productivity standards, which also aid in finding the ideal balance between speed and quality.

Effective resource and staff management is crucial in addition to operations. We discussed the significance of maintaining accurate inventory control, classifying recycled and non-recycled items, setting appropriate par levels, and adhering to proper purchasing specifications. Finally, the role of supervision, leadership, and

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

coordination was emphasized, highlighting the necessity of teamwork, clear communication and proactive management. Tools like staffing guides, strength assessment and regular training equip the team to function as a unified team of the department. When all these things are planned and synchronized effectively, the housekeeping department not only ensures hygiene and comfort but also plays a crucial role in providing a memorable guest experience and contributing to the success of the hotel.

1.12 Review Questions

1.12.1 Match The Following

1. Prepare Division of work Document	a. Work Schedule
2. What items in the area need to be cleaned or maintained?	b. Performance Standards (Task Lists, SOPs)
3. How frequently should each item be cleaned or maintained?	c. Area Inventory List
4. What procedures must be followed to clean or maintain the major items?	d. Frequency Schedule
5. How much time should it take for an employee to complete each task as per performance standards?	e. Division of work Documents
6. What quantity of equipment and supplies is required to meet performance and productivity standards?	f. Inventory Levels (Par Stock, Supply Requirement)
7. Who will do the Work	g. Productivity standard

1.12.2 FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1.To save downtime, for example, general cleaning for certain guestrooms should be done concurrently with major repairs planned by the _____department (Front office/ engineering).

2.An essential aspect of developing performance standards is achieving consensus on how cleaning and related _____should be performed. (Task/Breaks).

3.Productivity standards establish the standard for the _____of work that housekeeping employees must accomplish (Quality/Amount).

4.To effectively manage inventory, the executive housekeeper needs to determine the _____ for each inventory item. (par level/floor level).

5.Beyond just cleaning, housekeeping orchestrates a symphony of activities that ensures every corner, from the grand lobby to the most private_____, radiates comfort, hygiene, and luxury (Staff Locker/guest room).

1.12.3 TRUE or FALSE

1.The majority of executive housekeepers will gladly acknowledge that they rarely have all the resources they would like.

2.Cleaning supplies and guest amenities are recyclable inventories.

3.Linens and cleaning equipment are recyclable inventories.

4.Broom is a mechanical equipment

5.Shampoo is an example of Guest amenities

1.12.4 SHORT QUESTIONS:

1. Prepare a Sample Task List Format – Room Attendant
2. What is the need of SOP?
3. What are the factors which influences productivity standard?
4. Define Work Schedule.
5. Why Duty Rosters are Essential

1.12.5 LONG QUESTIONS:

1. Discuss about the guest room entry steps in housekeeping department of a hotel.
2. What is the formula for Recycled Inventory Par Level? Explain with examples.
3. What is the Benefits of Effective Inventory Management?
4. Discuss about the Purchase specifications for housekeeping inventories of Guest Supplies.
5. Define Four step training in housekeeping department.

1.13 ACTIVITIES:

Activity 1

Develop SOP for the following:
1. Bed Making
2. Entering a Guest room
3. Servicing a departure room
4. Any other as instructed by your mentor/faculty.

Activity 2

Plan & Design following training types of training
1. Refresher Training
2. Remedial Training
3. Orientation Training

Activity 3

Visit a star hotel in your city/town, understand their discarding process and prepare a detailed flow chart of discarding process. Also find out the end use of the discarded materials, i.e., it is Reused, recycled, etc.

1.14 CASELET

Here are some case study suggestions based on the topics discussed in this Unit. These are designed to be adaptable and can be expanded with more specific details (hotel size, location, specific challenges) to make them more engaging.

CASELET 1:

THE GRAND OPENING CHALLENGE - PLANNING & BASIC ACTIVITIES

Scenario: The "JD group of Hotel," a brand-new, opulent establishment with 50 rooms, is getting ready for its big launch in three months. Setting up the entire housekeeping department from scratch is a difficult undertaking for Ms. Priyanka, the recently hired Executive Housekeeper. She needs to make sure everything is prepared for a flawless visitor experience because she has a small beginning workforce.

Questions for Discussion/Analysis:

1. Describe Ms. Priyanka's detailed plan for establishing the housekeeping division.
2. Which five planning questions should she or her general manager ask herself first?
3. What obstacles would the short schedule present for her, and how might they be lessened with careful planning?

CASELET 2:

THE "DUSTY CORNER" DILEMMA - AREA INVENTORY & FREQUENCY SCHEDULE

Scenario: The old 100-room hotel known as the "JD Heritage Inn" has been the subject of frequent complaints lately over cleanliness, particularly "dusty corners" and "unpolished fixtures" in the public spaces and guest rooms. Mr. Divy, the housekeeping manager, has been entrusted by the Executive Housekeeper to determine the underlying problem and put remedies in place.

Questions for Discussion/Analysis:

1. Outline the steps Mr. Divy should take to update the Heritage Inn's standard guest room's Area Inventory List, paying particular attention to areas that are prone to dust accumulation.
2. Provide particular cleaning activities and their optimal frequencies (daily, weekly, or monthly) for these regions based on typical "dusty corner" problems.
3. Create a section of a guest room "Frequency Schedule" that includes additional duties to handle the grievances.

--------------------END OF UNIT 1--------------------

Unit-2

INTRODUCTION TO INTERIOR DECORATION

Unit Overview

This unit will equip the students to understand that Interior decoration is the art and practice of enhancing the aesthetic and functional qualities of indoor spaces. It will enable them to have an insight on selecting and arranging elements like furniture, colours, textures, lighting, and accessories to create a cohesive, comfortable, and visually appealing environment.

The module will also focus on Room layouts and renovation which are critical components of interior decoration, focusing on optimizing the spatial arrangement and structural/aesthetic updates of a space to enhance functionality, comfort, and style.

The leaner will be able to analyse the strategic planning and execution of tasks required to prepare a new hotel for operation, with a focus on cleanliness, maintenance, and aesthetic readiness of how the room division department plays a pivotal role in ensuring the property is guest-ready, functional, and aligned with design goals.

Learning Objectives

S. No.	Sub Unit	Learning topics	Key learning Objectives / At the end of the sub-unit, the learners will be able to:
1	2.1 Role of Interiors in guest satisfaction	• Introduction • Key elements that contribute to guest satisfaction through interior design • Interior design and operational efficiency • Current trends in interior design	1. Explain the concept of Interior design. 2. List the factors that contribute to guest satisfaction through interior design. 3. Recall the concept of interior design and operational efficiency. 4. Discuss the current trends in interior design.
2	2.2 Elements and principles of design.	• Basic Types of Design • Elements of Design • Principles of Design	1. Explain the basic types of designs. 2. List and explain the elements of design. 3. Describe the principles of design.
3	2.3 Selecting colour schemes for different areas of a hotel	• Dimensions of colour • Prang colour scheme • Factors to be considered in planning colour schemes • Selecting colour schemes for different areas in the hotel • Emotional effect of colours	1. Explain the dimension of colours. 2. Draw and explain the Prang colour Scheme. 3. Discuss Primary, secondary, Tertiary, Neutral colours. 4. Explain the various colour schemes. 5. Elaborate on the factors to be considered in planning colour schemes. 6. Comprehend the selecting of colour schemes for different areas in the hotel. 7. Explain the emotional effect of colours.
4	2.4 Lighting in interiors	• Role of lighting in interiors • Types of lighting • Classification of lighting • Based on Source-Natural and Artificial lighting • Incandescent, fluorescent light, LED • Based on Distribution-Direct, Indirect, Semi direct • Based on Function-General, Specific, Safety. • Methods of Lighting-Architectural and Non Architectural. • Suitable lighting for hotel interiors • Factors to be considered when planning a Lighting System.	1. Explain the role of Lighting in interiors. 2. Classify and Explain the different types of lighting. 3. Elaborate on Natural and Artificial Lighting. 4. Explain Incandescent, fluorescent, LED lighting. 5. Explain Direct, Indirect, Semi Direct Lighting. 6. Discuss General, specific and Safety lighting. 7. Explain Methods of Lighting. 8. List and Explain Architectural and Non Architectural lighting. 9. Discuss Suitable lighting for hotel interiors. 10. State the factors involved when planning lighting systems.
5	2.5 Furniture-specific ations and placement	• Factors to be considered while choosing furniture. • Style design and construction of furniture. • Types of furniture • Placement of furniture in guest room • Specification of furniture in guest room	1. State the factors to be considered while choosing furniture. 2. Explain the style design and construction of furniture. 3. Classify the types of furniture. 4. Discuss the placement of furniture in guest rooms. 5. State the specifications of furniture in guest rooms.
6	2.5.3 Room accessories	• Introduction to room accessories • Types of room accessories • Selection and Arrangement of accessories in guest room.	1. Describe Accessories in a guest room. 2. Explain the Types of room accessories. 3. Comprehend selection and arrangement of room accessories.
7	2.5.5 Fabric and upholstery	• Types of Fabrics used for upholstery • Drapery and curtain Fabrics • Bedding and Linen Fabrics • Soft Furnishings • Factors to be considered in the use of various fabrics • Typical upholstered items in guest rooms and upholstery fabrics	1. Describe the types of Fabrics used for upholstery. 2. Recognise the Drapery and curtain fabrics. 3. Explain soft furnishings. 4. State the factors to be considered in the use of fabrics. 5. List the typical upholstered items in guest rooms and upholstery fabrics.
8	2.5.6 Floor and Floor finishes	• Factors determining the floor finishes • Classification of floor finishes • Types of floorings and floor finishes	1. Explain the factors determining floor finishes. 2. Elaborate on the classification of the floor finishes. 3. Discuss the various types of floorings and floor finishes.
9	2.5.8 Wall and wall finishes	• Types of wall finishes • Care and maintenance of wall finishes	1. Explain the types of wall finishes. 2. Discuss the care and maintenance of wall finishes.

S. No.	Sub Unit	Learning topics	Key learning Objectives / At the end of the sub-unit, the learners will be able to:
10	2.5.9 Room layouts	• Key Features of room layouts • Layouts of various types of rooms in hotels.	1. List the key features of room layouts. 2. Draw the layouts of various types of rooms in hotels.
11	2.6 Renovation	• Primary reasons for renovation • Types of hotel renovations • Refurbishment • Process of refurbishment • Redecoration • Process of Redecoration	1. State the Primary reasons for renovation. 2. List the types of hotel renovations. 3. Explain refurbishment and the process involved. 4. Explain redecoration and the process of redecoration.
12	2.7 New property count down	• Key aspects of New property countdown • Timeline for New property countdown	1. State the Key aspects of the new property countdown. 2. Explain the time line for the new property countdown.

2.1 ROLE OF INTERIORS IN GUEST SATISFACTION:

2.1.1 Introduction:

Interior design plays a crucial role in shaping guest experiences and satisfaction in the hospitality industry, influencing factors such as ambiance, comfort, and overall perception of quality. Interior Decoration is an art of planning and supervising the design, execution of architectural interiors and the furnishings. The basic objective of interior decoration is creating a pleasant atmosphere in the room with addition of a complex of furnishings, arts, and crafts. The aim of interior decorating is to make an interior space more aesthetically pleasing and functionally useful for its inhabitants.

A well-designed hotel interior can create a lasting impression and contribute to overall guest satisfaction, leading to increased loyalty and positive word-of-mouth recommendations.

According to industry experts, effective hotel room interior design minimizes maintenance costs, makes guests feel more content, and encourages them to spend more, ultimately improving patronage and revenue generation.

2.1.2 Key elements that contribute to guest satisfaction through interior design:

➢**Ambience and Atmosphere:**

The colour scheme, lighting, textures, and furniture choices create a specific atmosphere that can evoke emotions and set the tone for the guest's stay.

➢**Comfort and Functionality:**

Thoughtful design considerations, such as furniture placement, lighting, acoustics, and temperature control, ensure guest comfort and enhance their overall experience.

➢ **First Impressions:**

The interior design makes a first impression on guests as they enter the property, shaping their perception of the hotel and its offerings.

➢ **Brand Image:**

The design reflects the hotel's brand and target audience, conveying the promise of a memorable stay.

➢ **Perceived Value:**

A well-designed space can increase the perceived value of the hotel, making guests feel they are getting more than they paid for.

➢ **Guest Loyalty:**

When guests have a positive experience due to thoughtful interior design, they are more likely to return and recommend the hotel to others.

2.1.3 Current Trends in Hospitality Interior Design:

The hospitality industry is witnessing a seismic shift in interior design trends , reflecting evolving guest expectations and a deeper understanding of the role of design in enhancing experiences.

➢ **Sustainability and Eco-Friendly Design:** Hotels are increasingly adopting sustainable materials, energy-efficient lighting, and water-saving fixtures to mitigate environmental impact and offer a nature-inspired experience.

➢ **Local Culture and Artisanship:** Reflecting local art, craftsmanship, and design elements that resonate with the location's heritage creates a sense of place and offers guests an authentic, immersive experience.

➢ **Technological Integration:** Smart rooms with voice-controlled systems, personalized lighting, and automated check-in services enhance convenience and personalization.

➢ **Flexible and Multifunctional Spaces:** Areas that serve multiple purposes, such as lobbies doubling as co-working spaces or cafés transforming into event venues, catering to the dynamic nature of modern travel.

➢ **Wellness-Centric Design:** Features like spa-like bathrooms, tranquil meditation areas, and fitness centres equipped with health technology promote physical and mental well-being.

➢ **Bold and Personalized Aesthetics:** Hotels are embracing vibrant colour palettes, eclectic furniture, and bespoke art pieces to create unique, visually captivating spaces that appeal to modern travellers .

➢ **Inclusive Design:** Thoughtful room layouts, accessible amenities, and features that cater to diverse needs ensure that every guest feels welcome and accommodated.

2.1.4 Interior Design and Operational Efficiency in Hotels

Interior design plays a crucial role in enhancing operational efficiency in hotels. A well-planned layout and thoughtful design can optimize guest flow, facilitate seamless operations, and contributeto cost savings.

> **Space Planning:** Intuitive space planning enhances guest comfort and facilitates seamless operations, ensuring optimal flow throughout the hotel.

> **Functional Furniture:** Ergonomic and modular furniture can adapt to changing needs, allowing for efficient use of space.

> **Maintenance Costs:** Effective interior design can minimize wear and tear, reducing maintenance costs in the long run.

By considering operational efficiency in interior design, hotels can create environments that not only enhance the guest experience but also streamline operations and reduce operational costs. As such the benefits would include:

1. Increased guest satisfaction: A well-designed interior can lead to increased guest satisfaction and loyalty.

2. Positive reviews: Guests are more likely to leave positive reviews about their stay.

3. Competitive advantage: A unique and well-designed interior can differentiate a hotel from its competitors.

By prioritizing interior design, hotels can create a memorable and enjoyable experience for their guests, leading to increased satisfaction and loyalty

2.2 ELEMENTS AND PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN

The objective of interior design and decoration is to achieve beauty, expressiveness and functionalism.

Interior design is the art and science of enhancing the interior to achieve a healthier and more aesthetic environment for the user.

An interior designer is someone who plans, researches, coordinates, and manages such projects.

2.2.1 BASIC TYPES OF DESIGN:

Structural Design:

This comprised of the size, form, colour and texture of an object, whether it be the object itself or the drawing of the object worked out on paper.it denotes the structure or construction of objects.

Basic requirements of a good structural design are as follows:

➤ It should be simple.
➤ It should be well proportioned.
➤ In addition to being beautiful, it should be suited to its purpose.
➤ It should be suited to the material from which it is made.

Decorative design:

This is the surface enrichment of structural design. Any lines, colour, or materials that have been applied to structural design for the purpose of adding a richer quality to it constitute its decorative design.

Basic requirements of a decorative design are as follows:

➤ Decoration should be used in moderate.
➤ Decoration should be placed at structural points and it should strengthen the shape of the object.
➤ There should be enough background space to give it an effect of simplicity.
➤ The background should be suited to the patterns that are to be placed against it.

2.2.3 ELEMENTS OF DESIGN:

To create an ambience keeping in mind the expectations of the designer uses certain building blocks, which are fundamental to achieve the desired interiors. These building blocks are common to all designs and are known as elements of design .

The elements of design are:

➤ Line
➤ Form
➤ Texture
➤ Colour
➤ Pattern
➤ Light
➤ Space

(1) Line:

It is an important element and the most basic design element. The types and directions of line such as vertical, horizontal, diagonal, curved and spiral are used by an artist to express an idea or theme, like wise an interior designer must organise and combine the lines to create the required design.

Horizontal lines:		These lines depict rest, reposed, steadiness, or termination. They suggest tranquillity, serenity and relaxation. Horizontal lines in interiors can be seen on the table tops, sofas, beds and wall skirtings.
Vertical lines:		Gives a feeling of activity, life, dignity, formality, discipline and strength and create a feeling of height. In interiors they are found in doors, pillars, columns, straight hanging drapes and give strength and height to the room.
Diagonal lines:		These lines give a feeling of movement, force and action. They also create a feeling of sophistication and refinement. They appear in staircases, certain patterns on walls, floors and furniture.
Curved lines:		These lines indicate grace, flexibility and softening effect. This is seen in tie-back curtains, arches, graceful curves of furniture.
Zigzag lines:		These lines are seen in staircases or incorporated as patterns on the floor, wall etc. They should be used in moderation.

Picture credits: Chicago stairs and Rails, Randy Horsch

(2) Form:

Lines are used to enclose spaces, resulting in forms such as circles, squares, rectangular, triangles, etc. The term form is applied to three dimensional areas and objects, whereas shape may refer to a two dimensional one. Forms can be geometric (sharp, clear shapes) or natural (organic, flowing). The form of furniture and architectural features impacts the style and functionality of a space.

(3) Texture:

It refers to the surface quality or the feel of an object .The roughness , smoothness ,softness and hardness of surface is referred to as texture making up a design. There are two basic categories of texture tactile(feel) and visual(illusionary). The rough texture absorbs more light and smooth surfaces reflect light. The tactile quality of surfaces in the room, such as the roughness of a wall or the smoothness of a sofa. Textures add depth and interest to a space. Mixing different textures (e.g., a velvet couch with a wooden coffee table) adds complexity to the design.

SMOOTH TEXTURE OF THE SOFA   ROUGH TEXTURE OF THE WALL

Picture credits: Fine wood art, Mango Bloom elegant wall designs
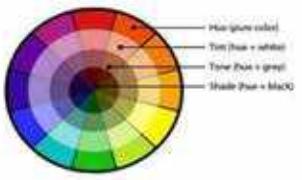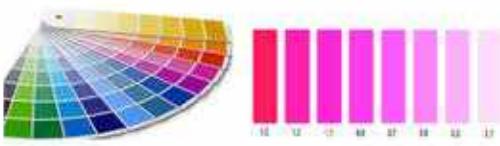
(4) Colour:

Colour plays a crucial role in interior decoration by influencing mood, behaviour, and the overall feel of a space. It can be used to highlight architectural features, create focal points, and define a room's style. Colour choices can also affect productivity, creativity, and well-being, especially in spaces like offices. Understanding the psychology of colour is key to creating harmonious and emotionally appealing environments.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

There are 3 main qualities or characteristics of colour –

- Hue (pure state/name of the colour)
- Intensity (brightness or dullness)
- Value (lightness or darkness)

Different hues create different atmospheres; for example, warm colours (reds, yellows) can make a space feel cosy and energetic, while cool colours (blues, greens) create calm and tranquillity. The use of colour also affects the perceived size of a room—light colours can make a room seem larger, darker colours make it feel cosier.

Hue Tint Tone Shade	
Chroma/Intensity	
Value	

Picture Credits: Colour Theory, Stack over flow, colour in business.

(5) Patterns:

This refers to any sort of surface enrichment and applies to both two dimensional and three dimensional objects. A large room can support more patterns than a small one. Patterns used may be naturalistic, stylized, geometric, or abstract. Repeated elements that create visual interest, such as in fabrics, wallpaper, or flooring. Patterns add rhythm, balance, and emphasis to a design. Using too many patterns can overwhelm a space, so careful consideration is key. Generally patterns should cover just about a quarter of the total surface area.

PATTERNS
Picture credits :Ikat designs

(6) Light:

Light is important element of design. When light strikes an object, it may be reflected, absorbed, or allowed to pass through. Light has a functional as well as an aesthetic effect. Light may be dull, sharp, bright, or diffused. Natural and artificial lighting affect the mood, visibility, influences the perception of space, enhances colours and textures, highlights architectural features and improves functionality of a room. It can also define areas of function and highlight focal points.

NATURAL LIGHTING

ARTIFICIAL LIGHTING

(7) Space:

Space is a significant element of interior design. The organizational of space is basic to architecture and interior decoration. Unless a space is thoughtfully planned, nothing else will seem quite right. Almost any space, if sensitively handled, can be made effective, pleasant to live in and ever dramatic. Proper use of space creates balance and flow, ensuring the room is functional.

2.2.4 PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN:

These are significant guidelines or "rules" used to arrange the elements of design in a harmonious and balanced way. They help create a cohesive and functional space. Understanding and applying these principals are crucial for creating compelling designs.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

The principles of design are:

➢ Proportion and scale
➢ Balance
➢ Emphasis
➢ Rhythm
➢ Harmony

1. Proportion and Scale:

In interior designing the principal of proportion is also called the law of relationships. It states that the relation between parts of the same things or between different things of the same group should be aesthetically satisfying. Proportion refers to the size relationship between objects within a space. Scale refers to the size of an object in relation to the room or the furniture around it. Proper proportion and scale ensure that objects are neither too large nor too small for the space they occupy, which helps maintain balance and functionality.

The principles of scale and proportion ensure that objects placed in a space look like they belong to each other. Be it the size, dimension, shape or colour of the objects, a harmony should be established between them and a proportion has to be maintained.

Example: A high ceiling environment implies that high rise furniture should be preferred over low-rise furniture like ottomans.

2. Balance

Balance refers to equal distribution of objects in a room to create visual balance. It is created by grouping shapes and colours around a centre that there are equal attractions on both sides from the centre.

Types of Balance

➢ Symmetrical/ Formal Balance
➢ Asymmetrical/ Informal Balance
➢ Radial Balance

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Symmetrical / Formal Balance Formed by placing objects of equal weight on each side at equal distance from the centre.	
Asymmetrical / Informal Balance Formed by placing objects on either side which are unmatched but still visually balanced. These balances are lively, more energetic and natural. Informal balance is more creative.	
Radial Balance Objects are placed around a central focal point either outward or inward. They are mostly circular and used in round rooms, dining rooms, swimming pool, atrium, conference room or staircases at times.	

Picture credits: Design your way

3. Emphasis

Emphasis refers to creating a focal point or area of interest in a room. This could be a piece of art, a unique piece of furniture, or a feature wall. The focal point draws the eye and helps create hierarchy in the design, preventing the space from feeling too cluttered. Elements must be used in such a way that the focal point dominates the rest of the décor items and pulls the room together.

There are various techniques to create Emphasis

2.2.5 Techniques for Creating Emphasis:

➢ **Focal Point:** Identify a specific element or area that you want to highlight as the focal point of the room, such as a fireplace, a piece of artwork, or a striking piece of furniture.

➢ **Contrast:** Use contrasting colours, textures, or materials to make the focal point stand out against its surroundings.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

➤ **Scale and Proportion:** Vary the size or scale of elements to draw attention to specific areas. For example, a larger-than-life piece of furniture or a smaller, more intimate grouping can be used to create a focal point.

➤ **Texture and Pattern:** Use contrasting textures or patterns to add visual interest and emphasis to a particular area.

➤ **Colour:** Use bold, contrasting colours to highlight a specific area or element. For example, a vibrant accent wall or a standout piece of furniture.

➤ **Placement:** Strategically place elements to guide the viewer's eye towards a specific focal point.

➤ **Lighting:** Use accent lighting to draw attention to a specific area or element.

➤ **Architectural Elements:** Highlight architectural features like arches, windows, or moldings as focal points.

Picture credits: Abstract clouds art, Mastering illumination, Art station

4. RYTHYM:

Rhythm refers to movement. It is a visual flow that makes the eye move smoothly across the room. It may be rhythmic or organised.

Rhythm may be attained by:

A. Repetition

Repetition of elements of design like colours, line, shape, texture in an organised way.

B. Alternation

This is created by placing two or more elements in alternative platform.

5. HARMONY:

The principle of harmony stresses on the fact that there should be a sense of uniformity or harmony among all the elements used. All the elements used should complement one another. The elements or components must blend to present a unified effect and each must contribute to the theme or the need of the design.

Harmonious effect can be achieved by five aspects of harmony:

- Line and Shape
- Texture
- Shape
- Idea
- Colour

A good understanding of alignment of objects, similarity of colour/ pattern/ texture, proximity (spacing) of objects to be kept in mind will ensure the harmony to be achieved in the interior design.

Check Back Questions:

1. What are the elements of design.
2. List and explain the principles of design.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

2.3 SELECTING COLOUR SCHEMES FOR DIFFERENT AREAS OF A HOTEL

Colour as Science describes is the sensitivity produced in the human eye due to the reflection of light off an object. The controlling factor in determining what colour we see is light. We think of day light as white light. White light is actually composed of Violet, Indigo, Blue, Green, Yellow, Orange, and Red.[VIBGYOR] supplement the above statement, you could see a ray of light that the light ray breaks up into its component colours.

The colours we see around us are either imparted to surfaces by dyes or pigments or the natural colours of the article. The colour of a surface absorbs all the spectral colours, except the colour you see which is reflected back to the eyes. A surface that reflects all the colours appear white and the surfaces which absorbs all the colours appears black.

Colour plays a profound role in interior decoration. It is used to create an illusion of space, luxury, uplift moods, influences the ambience, adds warmth or coolness to the space.

UNDERSTANDING COLOUR:

Colour is formed through the interaction of light, objects, and human perception. White light, like sunlight, is made up of many wavelengths (the visible spectrum).
Each wavelength corresponds to a specific colour. Red has the longest wave length. Violet has the shortest.
When light hits an object, some wavelengths are absorbed by the material, and others are reflected. The reflected wavelengths are what our eyes perceive as the object's colour.

2.3.1 DIMENSIONS OF COLOUR

Known as characteristics or properties of colour maybe called as the dimensions of colour.

They are termed as:
- ✓ Hue
- ✓ Value
- ✓ Intensity or Chroma
- ✓ Temperature

1. HUE

Hue is the name of the colour. It is also the attribute of a colour by which we distinguish colour (Red, blue, green etc.).All primary and secondary colours. Although the words colour and hue are used interchangeably, Colour is a general term and hue is a specific term referring to definite identifiable colours.

2. VALUE

Value describes the lightness or darkness of colour. White has the highest value Black has the lowest value . Value plays a big role in contrast and depth in design. SHADE: shade is a hue that has been darker by adding black.
TINT: Tint is a hue that has been lighter by adding white.

3. INTENSITY/ CHROMA

It refers to brightness or dullness of a colour .Very bright colour is said to be of full intensity. It denotes the strength or weakness of the colour. Colours of full strength are very striking and brilliant. High intensity colours must be used with discretion or can be offensive and thus look gaudy. A colour that is not bright is said to be toned down.

4. TEMPERATURE

Temperature indicates the relative warmth or coolness of colours
Blue, green, violet are cool colours. Cool colours are considered to be calm and restful Red, orange, yellow are warm colours. These colours are generally cheerful and active.
Walls on the north side which gets less of sunlight should have warm colours and south should have cooler darker colours.

2.3.2 PRANG'S COLOUR SYSTEM:

The Prang Colour System, also known as the Prang Colour Wheel, It's based on the principle that three primary colours (red, blue, and yellow) can be mixed to create all other colours. The Prang system is widely used by artists and designers to understand colour relationships and to create various colour.

COLOUR WHEEL PRIMARY COLOURS:

- Red, Yellow and Blue are primary colours.
- They cannot be made by mixing other colours but can be mixed to form other colours.
- Equal distance from each other in colour wheel.

1. PRIMARYCOLOURS
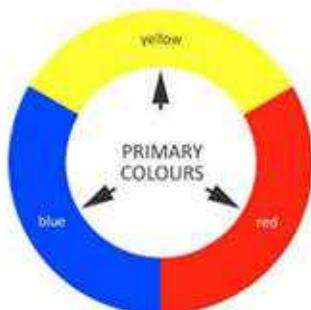
2. SECONDARY/ BINARY COLOURS

- Formed by mixing two primary colours in equal quantities.
- They are also called six standard colours.
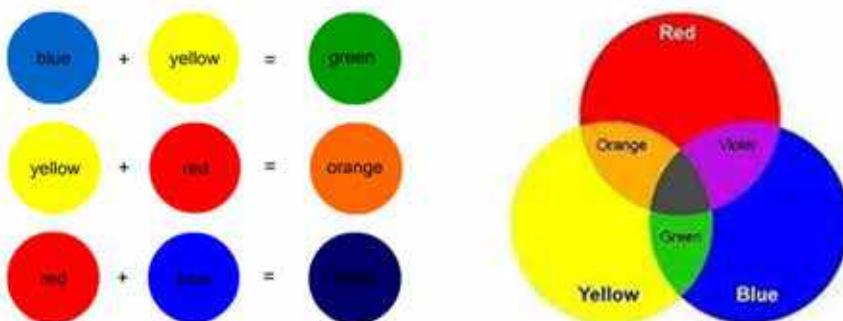
3. TERTIARY/ INTERMEDIATE COLOURS

- It is formed when a Primary and a neighbouring Secondary colour is mixed in equal quantity.
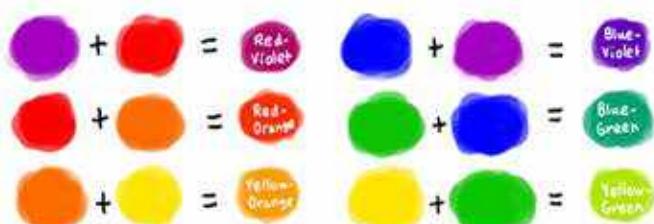
4. NEUTRAL COLOURS:

- These colours are subtle, unsaturated hues that serve as versatile backdrops in interior design.
- They lack strong chromatic intensity, allowing other colours and design elements to stand out.
- These colours are often described as "without colour" because they don't appear on the traditional colour wheel.
  Black white, grey, brown, beige.

2.3.3 COLOUR SCHEMES:

The combination of colours used for interior decoration are know as colour schemes. colours used together in design to create a visually appealing and harmonious look. Colour schemes are based oncolour theory and the colour wheel.

Colour schemes can be classified as
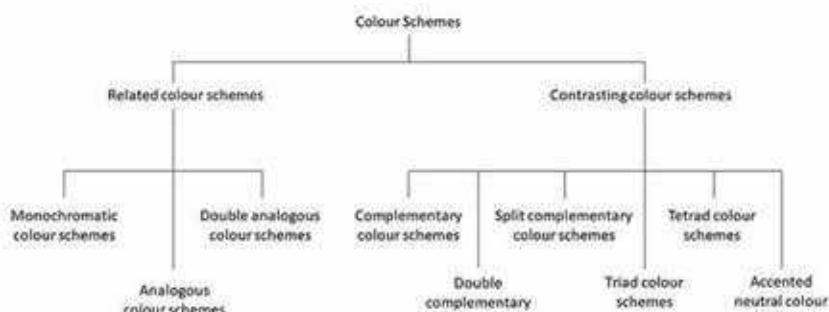
✤ Classification of Colour Schemes

Related colour schemes:

They are considered "related" because they share a common hue and blend well visually.

1. Monochromatic colour scheme:

Monochromatic is a one hue colour scheme. It is made up of variations of tints, tones and shades.. It evolves from a single hue, which can be varied from highlight to low dark and from full saturation to almost neutral. White, grey, black, and brown add variety, as do applied and natural textures and decorative

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

patterns. Thus, even with one basic hue, the possibilities are many. With this scheme, some degree of success is almost assured because unity and harmony are firmly established. Spacious and continuity are emphasized. And the effect is quiet and peaceful. A major danger is monotony. This can be avoided by diversifying values and intensities. Such colour schemes are most effective when pale, medium, and dark values of a colour below full intensity are used along with accents of the colour at full intensity. Example: Light blue, blue, and dark blue.

2. Analogous colour scheme :

This scheme is accomplished by using colours adjacent (next) to each other on the colour wheel. i.e. One primary colour with a secondary and tertiary colour. This scheme can have a minimum of two colours and maximum of three. The hue should differ in their intensities and values. Analogous colour schemes, although basically harmonious, have more variety and interest than monochromatic colour schemes .An analogous colour scheme is always either predominantly warm or predominantly cool. When using three colours, one should dominate and the other two should be used in smaller.

ANALOGOUS

**WARM COLOURS
ANALOGOUS SCHEME**

**COOL COLOURS
ANALOGOUS SCHEME**

3. Double Analogous colour scheme:

Any four adjacent hues on the colour wheel make up a double analogous colour scheme. There should be a harmony of hues used in such a scheme, avoiding too many contrasts – **Example:** Red-Orange – Orange – Yellow-Orange – Yellow
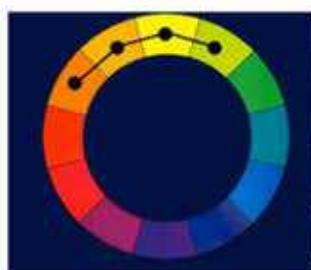
Contrasting colour scheme:

The colours chosen in these harmonies lie opposite or nearly opposite to each other on the colour wheel, and hence usually share no similarities.

1. Complementary colour schemes:

These colour schemes are based on two colours directly opposite each other in the colour wheel .They can be used to give a wide range of possibilities. When complementary colours are used in a colour scheme, one of the two colours should be used in full intensity and limited to small areas while the larger areas in the opposite colour should be subdued intensity. **Eample:** Yellow & violet or Orange & Blue.

2. Double complementary colour schemes:

In this colour scheme two adjacent colours on the colour wheel and their complements used together form a double complementary colour scheme. These schemes combine the harmonious aspects of analogous colours with the contrast found in complementary combinations. The best effect is obtained when there is one outstanding hue used in the largest amount at subdued intensity. **Example:** Red and red orange with green and blue green.

3. Split complementary

In this colour scheme one hue is selected and is combined with the colours that are on either side of its complement. This provides three colours to work with. By varying their intensities and values you can work out interesting combinations. E.g. orange with blue-green and blue-violet.
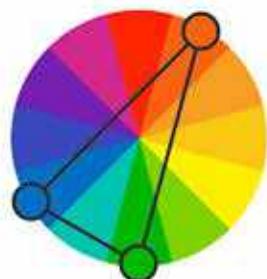
4. Triad colour scheme

This type of scheme combines the three equidistant colours in the colour wheel, which occur at points of an equidistant triangle placed anywhere. Colours should be subdued to attain harmony. Full intensity hues are seldom used, large areas of colours are subdued and only small areas of one or two of the three colours are kept at full intensity.

E.g. yellow, blue, red; yellow-green, blue-purple, red-orange.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

5. Tetrad colour scheme

This type of scheme combines the four equidistant colours in the colour wheel, which occur at points of an equidistant quadrilateral placed anywhere. Such combinations lead to rich varied, yet unified and well-balanced compositions. E.g. Blue & Orange + Green & Red
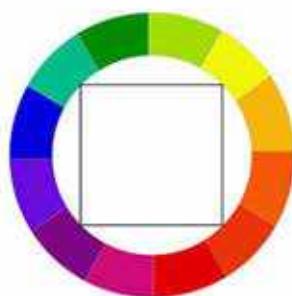
6. Accented Neutral Colour Scheme

Accented neutral colour schemes combine neutral tones (like black, white, grey, beige, or taupe) with a pop of a more saturated or vibrant colour. This scheme creates a sophisticated, clean look with just enough colour to draw attention and add visual interest.

Neutral Colour Scheme

Factors to be considered in planning colour schemes

> The room: size, shape, exposure (amount of natural light coming into the room).
> The mood required to be created
> The style
> Personal preference
> Use of the room
> Furnishings in the room
> Current fashion

Selecting colour schemes for different areas of a hotel

It involves careful balancing aesthetic appeal, guest psychology, and functional needs. Each space has a unique purpose and therefore requires a distinct visual identity while maintaining consistency with the overall brand.

Hotel Area	Primary Objective	Ideal Colour Scheme Types	Example Colours	Design Notes
Lobby & Reception	First impression, grandeur, welcome	Neutrals + Accent/Jewel Tones + Metallic	Cream, taupe, navy, emerald, gold	Use luxurious materials like marble or velvet
Guest Rooms	Relaxation, comfort, personal retreat	Soft neutrals + Spa tones or earth accents	Light grey, beige, soft blue, sage	Use matte finishes, avoid harsh contrasts
Fine Dining Restaurant	Intimacy, indulgence, elegance	Deep tones + warm metallic	Burgundy, espresso, gold, navy	Dim lighting enhances richness of colours
Casual Dining/Café	Friendly, laid-back atmosphere	Earth tones + soft colour pops	Terracotta, olive, mustard	Add character through art
Lounge/Bar	Social energy, relaxed luxury	Dark neutrals + moody accent tones	Charcoal, indigo, bronze, teal	Use layered lighting and plush materials
Spa & Wellness	Serenity, purity, wellness	Pale neutrals + botanical hues	White, soft grey, eucalyptus, sea foam	Minimal design, natural materials
Corridors	Flow, way finding, low stimulation	Soft neutrals with subtle accents	Warm grey, stone, muted taupe	Avoid bold colours; use for signage clarity
Ballroom/Conference	Versatility, sophistication, formal tone	Neutral base + metallic or adaptable accents	Ivory, champagne, silver, slate	Use materials that complement event lighting
Outdoor Areas	Connection to nature, vibrancy	Natural hues + floral or aquatic tones	Sand, olive, terracotta, sky blue	Reflect local landscape and daylight changes
Gym/Fitness Center	Energy, clarity, motivation	Cool tones + clean neutrals	White, graphite, blue, lime green	Keep colour clean and modern

2.3.4 EMOTIONAL EFFECT OF COLOURS

It is significant to consider how colours effect emotions in design, especially in settings like hotels, where colour directly influences mood, perception, and experience. Different colours trigger different psychological and emotional responses, both consciously and subconsciously.

Colours have strong effects upon emotions and is now used in treatment of nervous disorders.

FUN-FACT

Red: Is associated with energy, love, excitement ,aggression, danger, urgency. It is used generally to grab attention (e.g., stop signs, sale signs) and is considered to Stimulate appetite (used in restaurants) In decoration, red gives the impression of splendour, warmth, hospitality, and exhilaration. It is cheerful but not restful, and so must be used discreetly. There are fine reds, such as the Chinese red, which can be used without modification in small quantities, as for example on a chair, in book covers or flowers, or as a note in the drapery colouring. There are also rich reds that are used freely in Italian and Spanish rooms.

Yellow: Yellow is a happy and uplifting colour, . It can also be associated with intellectual thinking: discernment, memory, clear thinking, decision-making and good judgment .Yellow builds self-confidence and encourages optimism. However, a dull yellow can bring on feelings of fear.

It Depicts Happiness, optimism, warmth Anxiety, frustration (in excess)

In interior decoration yellow is indispensable because more than any other colour it gives the effect of light. The modified yellows, such as buff, cream, ivory, beige, ecru, and pale lime yellow, are the most useful wall colours there are because they have the happy faculty of pulling together and harmonizing the colours used in curtains, carpet, and chairs. . Small objects of yellow in the living room supply permanent sunshine in it. It is widely used in Schools, kitchens, attention-grabbing signage

Blue: Is associated with calm, trust, serenity, professionalism, Sadness, coldness (in some contexts). Blue is used in corporate branding, healthcare, finance, encourages productivity and focus. The colour blue is also associated with the night and thus we feel relaxed and calmed. Lighter blues make us feel quiet and away from the rush of the day. These colours can be useful in eliminating insomnia. Like yellow, blue inspires mental control, clarity and creativity. However, too much dark blue can be depressing

Blues are not as friendly with one another as other colours are, and therefore have to be selected with additional care under both daylight and artificial light. Since blue is not an aggressive colour, it does not have to be neutralized as much as some of the other colours. There are pale green-blues that are successful as wall colours for south bedrooms. The pale blue tint known as baby blue is the most anaemic colour that exists.

Orange: Orange signifies enthusiasm, creativity, warmth ,impulsiveness, frustration (if overused)

Orange has shown to have only positive effects on ones emotional state. . Orange opens emotions and is a terrific antidepressant. It is the brightest, most stimulating, and most decorative hue that exists. It possesses the qualities of both red and yellow, and in its pure state, it is so warm that it should be used only in small quantities. It expresses energy, spirit, hope, courage, and cordiality.

One of the most-used colours in decoration is orange in its neutralized forms, some of which are tan, peach, rust, cedar, and copper. These soft warm colours are highly desirable colours for living-room backgrounds, that is, ceilings, walls,

and floor coverings. They radiate hospitality and cheer. They are autumn colours and should be used especially in autumn and winter furnishings.

It is commonly used for promotions, calls to action and entertainment

Green: Green creates feelings of comfort, laziness, relaxation, calmness , harmony, safety, freshness. It helps us balance and soothe our emotions. Some attribute this to its connection with nature and our natural feelings of affiliation with the natural world when experiencing the colour green. Yet, darker and greyer greens can have the opposite effect..

Since it is composed of yellow and blue, one warm and one cool colour, it may be used with cool or warm schemes, as it appears warm if enough yellow is added or cool if more blue is added. There is such a large variety of usable greens that it is possible to find one that is harmonious with any scheme.

It is also used for environmental products, health, finance and for Calming effect in design and hospitals

Purples : Purple depicts luxury, mystery, spirituality .Purples have been used in the care of mental of nervous disorders because they have shown to help balance the mind and transform obsessions and fears. Indigo is often associated with the right side of the brain; stimulating intuition and imagination. Violet is associated with bringing peace and combating shock and fear. Violet has a cleansing effect with emotional disturbances. Also, this colour is related to sensitivity to beauty, high ideals and stimulates creativity, spirituality and compassion, Artificial light turns purple into brown at night so that by deliberately exaggerating this effect it is possible to have one colour scheme by day and a different one by night.

Brown: Brown is the colour of the earth and ultimately home. This colour brings feelings of stability and security. Brown is a warm, grounding, and versatile colour that plays a major role in creating cosy, stable, and inviting spaces. Rooted in nature, brown evokes comfort, safety, and reliability, making it a popular choice in both traditional and modern interior design.

Sometimes brown can also be associated with withholding emotion and retreating from the world. Brown is widely used in restaurants, bedrooms and other areas in the hotel. It is used to create rustic interiors.

Black : Black suggest Power, elegance, sophistication, mystery .As no more powerful contrast is possible than black and white, it should be handled with

care, as it Can be grounding or intimidating depending on use. Black and white floors should be used only in palatial rooms that require ornamental floors because of their size and emptiness. It is used in Luxury brands, fashion, art galleries

While comforting and protective, black is mysterious and associated with silence and sometimes death. Black is considered passive .

White: White is the colour of ultimate purity. White suggest cleanliness. This colour brings feelings of peace and comfort while it dispels shock and despair. White can be used to give you a feeling of freedom and uncluttered openness. It also acts as a perfect backdrop to highlight architectural details, natural light, or vibrant décor elements. Makes rooms feel larger and more open.

Too much white can give feelings of separation and can be cold and isolation.

Check Back Questions:

1. Combination of one primary and one secondary colour results in ----------

2. Adittion of white to any colour is known as…………….

3. Use of single colour in varying shades and tints is -----------

4. ………….. is referred to as brightness or dullness of a colour.

5. ………….. Colour scheme formed by using colours that lie adjacent to each other.

2.4 LIGHTING IN INTERIOR DECORATION

Light is a form of energy without which there can be no vision. It travels in waves and enables us to see by illuminating objects. Lighting plays an important role in the comfort and safety of occupants of the building. Lighting contributes to the décor of a room and should be both decorative as well as functional without causing glare or appearing flat and dull lighting needs.

2.4.1 ROLE OF LIGHTING

1. Function: Certain specialised activities will require specific amounts and possible certain kinds of light, function must be evaluated in terms of both quality and quantity of light. E.g. reading, writing etc. all demand proper illumination. Functional lighting will prevent eye strain and make it possible to carry out the activities in a comfortable and efficient manner.

2. Safety: Improper lighting is a particular hazard in several areas that may

escape notice. E.g. staircases or doorways where there is a step up and step down. Another aspect of safety involves adequate wiring and sufficient outlets for all needs. It is dangerous as well as unattractive to use long extension cords. Electric wires should never be placed under rugs where traffic is more.

3. Beauty: We begin to appreciate light on a decorative medium when we see a room bathed in a pleasing glow of illumination. There is also a close relationship between the type of light and appearance of colours.

2.4.2 TYPES OF LIGHT:
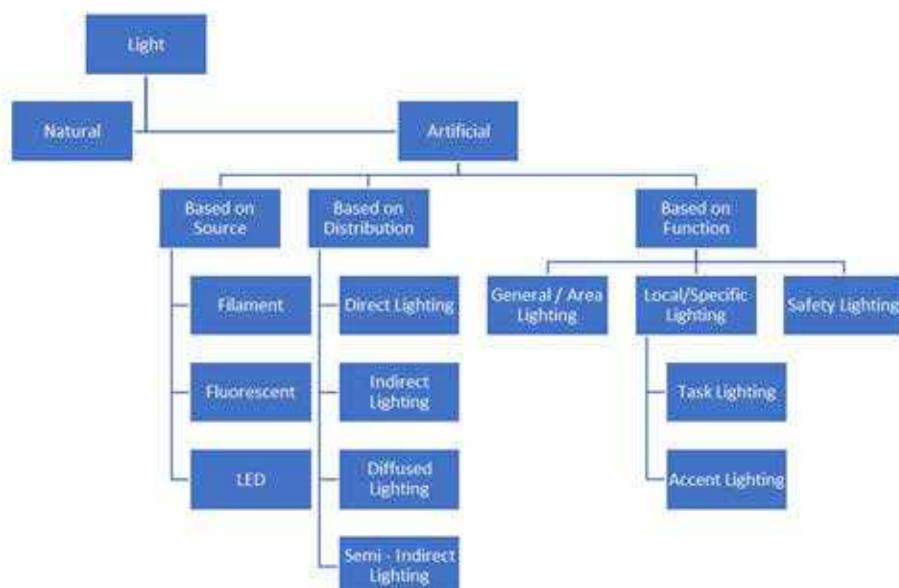
2.4.3 SOURCE BASED CLASSIFICATION:-on the basis of source light can be classified as following.

1. Natural light: The bright day light is a major factor of designing hotel guestroom, especially where large wall area have been decorated with glass.

2. Artificial light: These are the man made light that helps us to see clearly and prevents accidents. They contribute to attractiveness of homes and hotel rooms.

1. Natural Light

Only about 10% of normal daylight enters a room, in spite of this, it is brighter than artificial light. Colours look different in daylight. It varies in intensity and colour throughout the day. Another aspect is that it gives a colder and less variable light and is better for areas where colour matching is important. Most large buildings require artificial lighting even during the day.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Advantages of Daylight

- It costs nothing except the cost of making a few windows.
- It is natural.
- It varies according to the time of the day so it is soothing and possibly causes less fatigue. But it can cause hindrance to the human eye.
- The windows and the changing light add another dimension to the room and the view from there can be refreshing.

Disadvantages of Daylight

- The variation in the strength of daylight can change the atmosphere of the room.
- Brilliant sunshine fades some colours and rots some materials.
- The heat from the sun rays can cause discomfort.
- Daylight does not uniformly illuminate a room.
- A window should be kept clean to get the maximum advantages from daylight.
- Supplementary light is required since daylight is not constant.
- Large windows with a southern or western aspect can make a room unbearable in summer and too cold in winter.

2. Artificial Light

These are the man made light that helps us to see clearly and prevents accidents. They contribute to attractiveness of homes and hotel rooms. The are further classified as :

2.4.4 BASED ON SOURCE

(a) Incandescent/Filament: Here light is produced by heating a metal, generally, steel to that extent to which it glows. They have tungsten filament in a sealed container.

Many gas filled varieties of incandescent bulbs are now available.Among them are GLS (general lighting service) lamps which come in wide variety such as GLS clear, GLS argents and miniature lamps.

Halogen lamps are another sounce on incandescent light. These are filled with halogen-mixed gas.

(b) Fluorescent/Discharge: These are cold source of light. A glass tube with an inside coating of fluorescent is filled with vaporized mercury and argon and when electricity is passed through it, creating light. They come in vide range of colour. They consume less energy compared to incandescent lights.

Depending upon the pressure present inside it they can be classified as follows

Low pressure lamps: These are most widely used tubular fluorescent lamp vapuorised mercury is filled under low pressure.

High pressure lamps:

HPMV: High pressure mercury vapour ,produces bluish, White light.
HPSV: High pressure sodium vapour produces golden, yellow Light.

(c) LED Lights (Light Emitting Diodes)

LEDs are one of the most efficient and versatile lighting technologies available today. They have revolutionized the way we light interiors due to their energy efficiency, long lifespan, and design flexibility.

- They use up to 80–90% less energy than incandescent bulbs,they also have a longer life span, emit very little heat compared to traditional lighting.
- Turn on instantly to full brightness, with no warm-up time.
- Contain no mercury or harmful chemicals; recyclable.
- Come in a range of colour temperatures.

2.4.5 BASED ON DISTRIBUTION:

Lighting based on distribution refers to how light spreads from a fixture to illuminate a space. This is a key concept in interior lighting design, especially in hotels, where different areas require different types of light coverage to achieve functional and aesthetic goals.

Lighting distribution is typically categorized based on the direction in which light is emitted. Here are the main types:

Direct Lighting:

In case of direct lighting the fittings throw the light onto the surface below producing over bright areas and hand shadows resulting in glare. E.g. down lighting-a direct light is hung pointing down to become a downlight used to highlight.

Direct lighting does not require elaborate electric wiring and may be used to throw light on an empty textured wall. This process is called wall washing. It can also be used to spotlight a collection of pictures. Creates high illumination levels and strong shadows.

Task lighting is used in reading lamps, desk lights ,Over dining tables , reception desks and other work related areas.

Indirect Lighting:

Is produced by a light source that is hidden. The light is directed to the ceiling or another surface from which it is reflected back into the room. Indirect lighting creates no shadows when used next to the ceiling, It is soft, diffused lighting with minimal glare. Indirect lighting reflected down from the ceiling tends to raise the ceiling height. E.g. up lighting-canister shapes are used in a variety of locations on the floors, in corners of rooms, at either side of sofa or behind plants. It is widely used in Lobbies, lounges, relaxation areas Spa and wellness zones.

Diffused Lighting:

When light fittings are completely closed or concealed, with maybe globe or ceiling panel .the light is diffused and passes through cover which could be glass ,plastic or any other. This lighting is glare free and produces a flat appearance. Light is distributed equally in all directions. It is used in large public areas like lobbies, restaurants and dining halls.

Semi-Direct Lighting:

In this type of lighting about 60–90% of the light is directed downward, and the rest is diffused upward. It is Balanced brightness with some ambient diffusion. Used guest rooms, conference and banquet halls.

Semi-Indirect lighting: About 60–90% of the light is directed upward, with the remainder shining downward. This type of lighting creates a calm and diffuse light environment with soft shadows. It is used in lounge areas, can also be used in corridors with decorative ceiling features.

2.4.6 BASED ON FUNCTION:

Light may be classified on the basis on its function.

General Lighting /Area lighting or Overall Illumination: Should be provided at various intensities so that by pressing different buttons or dimmers, we can produce bright, dim or medium light. General lighting may be direct, indirect or a combination of both. Provides uniform illumination throughout a space to ensure overall visibility.

Local/Specific Lighting:

• Task Lighting or Local Lighting:

This lighting provides focused light for specific tasks or activities .It enhances visibility in areas where precision is needed. Generally brighter and more concentrated than ambient light and usually adjustable .

Is particularly needed while reading, working, grooming, playing indoor games. It is used as vanity lights in bathrooms, pendant lights over workstations or dining tables, bedside reading, bathroom mirrors and work desks

• Accent Lighting:

Accent Lighting draws attention to specific objects or areas. It adds drama, highlights artwork or architectural elements .It Creates visual interest and focal points. Theses lights are used in the form of spotlights, wall washers, picture lights, LED strip lighting in shelves or niches.It is used to highlight artwork, sculptures, textured walls in lobbies or corridors.

Safety Lighting:

Safety lighting is used for safety purpose in various areas. Safety lighting is a crucial component of interior lighting design, primarily intended to ensure safe movement and emergency response during normal operations and power outages. It doesn't just serve a functional role, it is often legally required in commercial buildings like hotels. They prevents accidents (slips, trips, falls), ensures visibility during emergencies (e.g., fire, power failure),used around swimming pools, guides evacuation routes and complies with building and fire safety codes.

SAFETY LIGHTING

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

2.4.7 METHODS OF LIGHTING

ARCHITECTURAL LIGHTING
NON-ARCHITECTURAL LIGHTING

Architectural Lighting:

Architectural lighting is built into the structure itself—it is permanently installed and becomes part of the architecture. It serves both functional and aesthetic purposes. They are integrated into ceilings, walls, floors, or furniture ,often hidden or subtly designed, provides general, task, they can also be accent lighting, Supports architectural features (e.g., highlighting curves, textures, columns)

Valance		Valance Lighting: the light source is mounted so that some of the light is directed towards the ceiling and comes down over the draperies. Fluorescent tubes are installed behind the valance frames which are painted white to reflect the light. At least 10 inches space between the top of the valance and ceiling is necessary. The frame will conceal both the fixtures and the top of the draperies.
Cornice		Cornice Lighting: Can be used to give general illumination. Fluorescent tubes are placed behind the cornice which is at least 6 inches in depth. It is built at the junction between the ceiling and the wall. It is good for low ceiling rooms because it gives the impression of greater ceiling height.
Cove		Cove Lighting: It implies a rough light arrangement. Usually near the ceiling with light directed upwards. Cove lighting creates an effect of openness and the quality of the light is soft.
Soffit		Soffit Lighting: Is the underside of an architectural member. Often space provides housing for a light source and is mostly used in bathrooms, kitchens, bookshelves, and mirrors.
Recessed		Recessed Lighting: This includes built-in panel fixtures that provide concentrated light. The fixtures can be round, square, or rectangular metal boxes set in a ceiling or wall.
Sky Light		Sky Light: Is the glazed opening in the roof of a house constructed to allow natural light into a space.
Translucent Panel		Translucent Panel: Are set on a surface that reflects light. The light source is concealed under the panel which may be on the floor or ceiling or a free-standing decorative unit. These are used in discotheques, kitchens, bathrooms, or other work areas and provide comfortable glare-free illumination.
Track Lighting		Track Lighting: These are lighting fixtures fitted on the track. This may be used to throw light to highlight the wall or the contents of the wall.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

NON-ARCHITECTURAL LIGHTING

Non-architectural lighting refers to movable, surface-mounted, or decorative fixtures that are not built into the structure. These are typically added during or after interior decoration. Their Characteristics are standing or surface-mounted, easier to install or replace, often used for decoration or focused lighting, offers flexibility in design and layout.

Table Lamps

	Table Lamps Freestanding lights placed on desks, nightstands, or side tables. They provide localized task lighting ,they Come in various styles and sizes. Generally used as bedside reading lamps in guest rooms, desk lamps on writing tables. They are easy to replace or move
	Floor Lamps These are tall, stand-alone lighting units placed on the floor. They provide ambient or task lighting .Can be modern, classic, or sculptural, Preferably used Lounge areas, hotel suites, ideal for filling dark corners; adds height and elegance to spaces
	Chandeliers These are Ornate, decorative hanging lights typically ceiling-mounted. They often have multiple light sources and Serve as a central design feature. Used widely in hotel lobbies, ballrooms or banquet halls. They give a dramatic visual impact and creates a luxurious atmosphere.
	Pendant Lights Pendant lights are suspended from the ceiling by a cord, chain, or rod. They are focused downward lighting (task or decorative).Available in many shapes and finishes. Used over dining tables, bar counters, or reception desks. These lights add interest without taking up floor space

2.4.8 SUITABLE LIGHTING FOR HOTEL INTERIORS:

Lobby and Reception Area:
The lobby and reception area create the first impression the lighting   has to be functional and have an excellent ambiance .This area must be adequately with good general lighting and brighter but concealed lighting at the reception desk, where guests, as well as the staff, have to read and write. Small table lamps can also be used giving pools of soft light and making these areas attractive and welcoming by creating a small focal point in the large lobby area. Chandeliers, Spotlights on artwork or architectural elements, Sculptural fixtures, floor lamps, Cove or indirect wall lighting are generally used in lobbies and reception areas.

Restaurant:
 These are often dimly lit to create an atmosphere but there should be attractive pools of light. Fast food cafeteria and restaurant require a brisk atmosphere for a fast turn over. So the lighting should be bright but not harsh or glaring and adequate enough to see that the table cutlery is clean. A hotel restaurant or a luxury restaurant requires soft lighting for a relaxed atmosphere. Individual lamps on table or candles give adequate task lighting to read the menu and see the food or the skin colour of the customer. Individual table lamps must have shades which protect the eye of the customer from the glare of the bulb. Dimmable ceiling lights, pendant lights over tables, spotlighting artwork or wine racks, chandeliers or theme-based fixtures, bar counter lighting, under-shelf lighting are used.

Guest bedrooms:
Bedroom lights should usually be local light in the place where needed. Lights for reading may be on floor lamps or attached to the wall or ceiling. For applying makeup and grooming, lamps with translucent shades should be on either side of the mirror approximately 36 inches apart. The centre of the shades should be at the height of the face. Strip lighting can be used on the sides and the top of the mirror. Ceiling lights or recessed lighting, Bedside reading lamps, desk lamps, LED strips under furniture, valance lighting, table/floor lamps are the type of lights used. Dimmers and bedside switches have to be installed for guest convenience

Bathroom:

Requires both general and task lighting. The bathroom mirror must be lighted either by soffit or strip lighting. A vapour proof lighting fixture is useful near the tub and the shower so that when the shower curtain is closed there is still general lighting. There should be mirror/vanity lighting (on both sides or backlit), Ceiling-mounted fixtures or recessed lighting, Under-sink lighting or wall niches

Function room (banquet meeting rooms / conference areas):

Since these rooms are used for a variety of purposes like conferences, meetings, dinner, dance etc. they need to have a flexible, decorative and functional lighting. Source of lighting may be concealed like cornice, valance etc. Standard lamps might complement with the décor together with a track or spotlight. Dimmer switches are used which will reduce the light when a subdued light is required.

Stairways, Hallways and Closets:

Hallways and stairways must be well lighted for safety reasons. Recessed lighting may be secured to the risers on the stairs and give a feeling of elegance to the room while adding to the safety of the stairs. Lighting near the baseboards in the hallways create a warm glow and gives a good effect to the area. Closets with automatic switches that activate when the door is opened and deactivate when the door is closed are convenient as well as energy saving.

Cloak Room and Toilet Area:

The lighting should be overall of such a level that one can see that it is clean mirror light and shade should be neutral in order not to distort makeup colour.

Spa and Wellness Area

The lighting in this area should suggest relaxation, serenity, It should be ambient and accent lighting should be used, Soft, indirect lighting with warm tones, use of candles, salt lamps, or dimmable LED strips enhances tranquillity . Focused lighting for treatment tables with dim controls can be incorporated.

Fitness Center :

The lighting should promote energy, visibility, safety
It should be bright , Ambient and task lighting. Bright, cool white light can be used. Even lighting distribution to prevent shadows or dark corners. Accent lighting should be used on mirrors and equipment for depth.

Kitchen:

Good lighting is required. The ceiling fixtures provide general lighting and should furnish at least 150-200 watts of incandescence or 60-80 watts of fluorescent for each 50 sq. ft. of space. Long fluorescent tubes may be attached under the cabinets to light the work surface.

Factors to Consider when Planning a Lighting System

Amount of light required for an area will depend on various factors like

- Location and direction of the light sources.
- Reflected qualities of colour.
- Textures used in the room.
- The number of lamps and fixtures.
- The wattage of bulbs and tubes.

If artificially lighting a room check on heat gains.

- Design and durability.
- Ease of replacement especially if lampshades are used.
- Cleaning-they should be easily cleaned.
- Cost.

Check Back Questions:
1. What are the factors to be considered while planning the lighting in interiors.
2. Explain Architectural and Non Architectural lighting.

2.5 FURNITURE

Specifications and placement
Furniture covers a wide variety of different items, which will be in constant use and yet should retain their overall good appearance.

Therefore furniture needs to be:

- Practical in design, size etc.,
- Comfortable to use,
- Sturdy to withstand considerable wear and tear (maintenance free),
- Easy to clean and maintain.
- Price must be within the means of the establishment.

The following points should be considered when choosing individual pieces:

- Type of guest expected and standard of accommodation,
- Guests' length of stay, atmosphere to be achieved, e.g. modern, 'old world', and degree of comfort, shape and size of article in relation to the human body (the science of ergonomics)
- The durability of the article, versatility and flexible for movement etc.,
- Ease of cleaning, e.g. castors on heavier items, shelves instead of drawers,
- Drawers with wipe-easy surfaces rather than lined, use of shelf-shine protective coatings,
- Standardization – items may be moved from room to room as required.

Style, Design and Construction

The style of any piece of furniture must tone in with the rest, though it will not necessarily be of similar design. Design and size are closely related to comfort, for inappropriate design or size may interface with the proper function or the serviceability of an article. The width of the seat and the shape of the back of the chair are important to its comfort: the height of the table and the chair in relation to each other, the height and depth of the wardrobe and the length and width of the bed are other examples. Ergonomics is important when considering shape and size of pieces of furniture in relation to the body.

The method of construction and materials used will affect price, appearance and durability and the finished article should:

- be free from rough, unfinished edges or surfaces,
- be free from surplus adhesive,
- have the correct type of joints which fit well,
- stand firm on the floor and be rigid in use,
- if a cupboard or wardrobe, be stable and balanced whether empty or full,
- have drawers which run smoothly,
- have doors which fit properly and have stays to prevent them opening too far,
- sliding which runs smoothly,
- efficient locks, catches, hinges etc.,
- handles conveniently placed, comfortable to hold and free from sharp edges,
- castors with no sharp edges.

2.5.1 TYPES OF FURNITURE

There are four types of furniture :

- ➢ Free-standing,
- ➢ Cantilevered,
- ➢ Built-in
- ➢ Fitted.

Free-standing: Chairs, beds, etc. This type of furniture can be rearranged whenever necessary. However it accumulates dust behind above and beneath.

Cantilevered: Cantilevered furniture is fixed on brackets to the wall and hence there are no legs to get in the way of cleaning.

Built-in: wardrobes, cabinets etc. Usually the cost is incorporated into the building cost. If required, it can be installed later, but can work out more expensive. Since built-in furniture have no gaps, cleaning is minimized.
However, once built in, the item cannot be moved, which can be a disadvantage in long-stay rooms like hostels and residential apartments where guest like to rearrange furniture.

Fitted: shelves, cupboards. Though built-in and fitted mean almost the same, fitted furniture are made to fit existing alcoves and niches, thereby saving space. The room appears more spacious and streamlined.

FURNITURE PLACEMENT IN GUEST ROOMS

Furniture placement in hotel guest rooms must optimize functionality, comfort, circulation, and aesthetics. The layout varies based on room type (standard, deluxe, suite), but most follow ergonomic and hospitality design standards.

Bed Placement

In a guest room the bed should be the Focal point, provide comfort and symmetry It is centered on main wall opposite the entry (if possible),Headboard against a solid wall (not a window or bathroom wall) It should have 36" (90 cm) minimum clearance on each side and 48" (120 cm) at the foot of the bed (for circulation and luggage).It should be positioned to provide a view of the window/TV. The bedside tables placed symmetrically on either side (18–24" wide).

Desk and Chair

This is Workspace in the guest room and should be convenient. It should placed against a side wall or under the window (natural light helps), Avoid blocking AC

units or window access. The Clearance behind chair: should be 30" minimum from wall or bed. Power outlets should be easily accessible. The desk often integrated with TV console or minibar cabinet in compact rooms.

Lounge Chair / Accent Chair

It aims for relaxation and is reading nook. Generally placed near the window or in a corner away from bed circulation ,Paired with a small side table or lamp. Minimum clearance: 24–30" around for comfortable use.

Wardrobe / Closet

Meant for Storage and guest clothing Mostly located near entry or bathroom. Often combined with safe, ironing board, luggage shelf Can be Sliding or bi fold doors help save space in smaller rooms.

Luggage Rack

It is for Temporary suitcase storage Generally near wardrobe or at the foot of the bed Can be Foldable and wall-mounted options in compact rooms and Keep 24" minimum clearance for ease of movement.

Minibar / Coffee Station

It should be placed for guest convenience. Positioned in a dedicated corner, near desk or wardrobe, Should not block access to walking paths and must be placed on or in a base cabinet, sometimes integrated with other furniture.

Full-Length Mirror

It gives perception of space, can on the wardrobe door, bathroom entry wall, or adjacent to the desk. Should be at least 60" tall, placed where there's room to stand back.

Nightstands / Bedside Tables

They should be one on each side of the bed and Should include power/USB outlets and lighting controls (especially in modern hotels).Typically 24–28" high to match mattress height.

Picture credits : Shangdian furniture

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

2.5.2 FURNITURE SPECIFICATIONS FOR A HOTEL GUEST ROOM:

Furniture Item	Standard Size (in inches)	Standard Size (in cm)
Bed (King)	76 x 80	193 x 203
Bed (Queen)	60 x 80	152 x 203
Bed (Full/Double)	54 x 75	137 x 191
Bed (Twin)	38 x 75	97 x 191
Nightstand	20 x 16 x 24	51 x 41 x 61
Desk	48 x 24 x 30	122 x 61 x 76
Chair (Desk)	16 x 16 x 18	41 x 41 x 46
Armchair	30 x 30 x 34	76 x 76 x 86
Wardrobe/Closet	36 x 24 x 72	91 x 61 x 183
Dresser	60 x 20 x 30	152 x 51 x 76
Mirror	24 x 48	61 x 122
Table (Coffee)	30 x 30 x 18	76 x 76 x 46
TV Stand	48 x 20 x 30	122 x 51 x 76
Sofa	72 x 30 x 30	183 x 76 x 76
Desk Lamp	12 x 12 x 18	30 x 30 x 46

Check Back Questions:
1. List the factors to be considered while selecting furniture.
2. Explain the placement of furniture in a guest room

2.5.3 ROOM ACCESSORIES:

Accessories lend personality, charm and individuality to a room. The accessories should follow the theme of the room. They must contribute towards the unity of the room and are essential for creating a welcoming, stylish, and brand-aligned atmosphere. While their number and quality can vary depending on the hotel's level (economy, boutique, luxury), most rooms include several elements designed to enhance visual appeal and guest experience.

Some will have specific functions, others will be purely decorative. The functional group may include ashtrays, clocks and lamps, decorative accessories might include pictures, sculpture, mirrors, flower arrangement etc. In the functional category, accessories should first of all be useful. Lamps should provide adequate light where it is needed. Clocks must keep time and have faces that are easy to read. In all cases, the shape, colour and texture should harmonize with the spirit of the room.

Almost any selection, combination or arrangement is acceptable as long it is pleasing to the eye.

KINDS OF ACCESSORIES

	Wall Décor Artwork (pictures/paintings) Very widely used to accessorise the rooms, art adds character and visual interest. It often reflects the hotel's theme or local culture. Landscapes, seascapes, street scenes, flower prints and still life pictures are all popular choices for traditional rooms. *Examples:* Abstract prints in modern hotels, traditional paintings in heritage hotels.
	Mirrors Mirrors enhance room brightness and make spaces feel larger. In some areas such as bedrooms and dressing rooms, mirrors are essential. In other rooms, they are more decorative than functional. Good mirrors, best-grade made from plate glass. Copper back renders durability and prevents discolouration. In modern decorations, mirrors are often used without frames. Traditional styles usually have a frame of wood or metal in a characteristic design. Mirrors should be selected with respect to wall area and furniture. *Examples:* Ornate gold-framed mirrors in classic hotels, minimalist circular mirrors in contemporary rooms.
	Wall Hangings/ Wall Sculptures or Installations Wall hangings can be made of a number of materials or types. Printed fabric, carpets, macrame, needlework etc. have all served as wall hangings. Wall hangings are often used to fill large, plain, empty areas. They can also be the focal point of a room. **Examples:** Metal wall art, 3D wood panels, or mosaic installations.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

	Table top & Surface Décor **Vases** Vases are available in different types made of various material and are often used filled with fresh or faux flowers to add life and colour.
	Sculptures or Figurines These add sophistication and a curated feel. Sculptures can be various materials-stones, wood, metal, ivory, pottery, plastic or glass and of various shapes and sizes.
	Candles or Candle Holders Candles and candle holders are used selectively in hotel guest rooms, primarily in boutique, luxury, or spa-oriented hotels. Their use contributes more to ambience, mood, and aesthetic appeal than to practical lighting. They Create a Warm and Relaxing atmosphere. Candles help soften the room's lighting, making it feel more cosy.
	Greenery and Natural Elements Plants and greenery are increasingly popular in hotel guest rooms due to their ability to enhance ambiance, improve air quality, and contribute to a calming, welcoming environment. Whether real or artificial, greenery can elevate the guest experience and align with wellness, sustainability, or biophilic design trends. They add natural texture, colour, and vibrancy to the space. Greenery helps reduce stress, boost mood, and create a sense of calm.

Accessories Selection and Arrangement

➢ Accessories should be not only beautiful but reflect the theme, concept, and positioning of the hotel.

➢ Accessories should be placed at important points in the room so that the eye is led to a focal point of interest.

➢ They should fit proportionally within the space and need to be related to the furniture or the furniture groupings.

➢ They can be are more interesting if they are not all placed in a straight line.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

➤ Groups of accessories are more interesting if the shapes and the heights are varied and displayed well.

➤ Accessories should complement, not compete with, the overall design.

➤ They should be durable, non-fragile, and easy to clean. Choose materials that resist stains, dust, or corrosion.

➤ Avoid items with intricate details that are hard to sanitize or prone to breakage.

➤ Choose accessories that are timeless and long-lasting, reducing the need for frequent updates.

➤ Avoid sharp edges, fragile materials, or items that can tip over easily. Ensure accessories are safe for children (in family rooms).

➤ Consider ergonomic placement and accessibility for all guests, including those with mobility needs.

> ### Check Back Questions:
> 1. What are the factors to be considered while selecting accessories.
> 2. What are functional and decorative accessories.

2.5.5 FABRICS AND UPHOLSTERY

In hotel guest rooms, fabrics and upholstery are selected for both aesthetics and functionality—balancing comfort, durability, maintenance, and design appeal.

1. Upholstery Fabrics

These are used on furniture such as chairs, sofas, headboards, and ottomans.
Polyester Blends: Highly durable and resistant to stains and fading, often blended with other fibers for added strength.
Nylon: Extremely strong and resistant to wear and abrasion, often used in high-traffic areas.
Olefin (Polypropylene): Moisture and stain resistant, making it ideal for humid climates.
Acrylic: Used to mimic the feel of wool, and resists sunlight and mildew.
Velvet (often synthetic blends): Adds luxury to headboards or accent chairs, though it may require more care.

2. Drapery & Curtain Fabrics

These help in controlling light and maintaining privacy.
Blackout Fabrics: Often made from polyester or coated blends; essential in hotels for blocking light entirely.

Sheers: Light, translucent fabrics (e.g., voile or organza) used under blackout curtains to diffuse light softly.

Dim out Curtains: Not fully blackout, but reduce significant amounts of light; often used as a layering element.

3. Bedding & Linen Fabrics

Comfort and hygiene are key factors here.

Cotton (or Cotton Blends): Preferred for sheets, pillowcases, and duvet covers due to breathability and softness.
Percale or Sateen Weaves: Used for sheets depending on desired texture and luxury level.
Down or Down-Alternative Upholstery: For duvets and pillows; synthetic options offer hypoallergenic benefits.

4. Soft Furnishings

Used for decorative and comfort-enhancing purposes.

Throw Pillows & Blankets: Often made with velvet, chenille, faux suede, or microfiber for visual contrast and texture.
Bed Skirts & Decorative Throws: Polyester blends or cotton-poly blends for easy maintenance and colourfastness.

5. Carpet & Rug Materials

Soft flooring materials in rooms or suites.

Nylon: Most common for hotel carpets due to high durability.
Wool: Luxurious and sustainable but more expensive and harder to maintain.
Solution-Dyed Fibers: Excellent for stain and fade resistance.

FACTORS TO BE CONSIDERED

- Durability
- Fire Retardancy
- Stain Resistance
- Easy Maintenance

Typical Upholstered Items in a Guest Room
Bed Headboards

Materials: Faux leather, vinyl, velvet, or polyester fabric.
Design Focus: Statement piece; padded for comfort and often wall-mounted.
Functional Needs: Easy to clean, resistant to wear from guest use and cleaning chemicals.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Chairs & Armchairs

Types: Lounge chairs, desk chairs, occasional chairs.
Materials: Commercial-grade woven polyester, wool blends, or leatherette.
Design Focus: Must balance comfort (cushioning) with structure (form retention).
Functional Needs: Flame retardancy and stain resistance; cushions with firm density for longevity.

Sofas or Sleeper Sofas

Materials: High-rub-count upholstery fabric like solution-dyed acrylics, nylon blends, or microfiber.
Design Focus: Neutral colour palette with texture; integrated into room theme.
Functional Needs: Durable under weight and frequent use; convertible units need flexible fabrics.

Benches or Ottomans

Location: Often at the foot of the bed or entry area.
Materials: Vinyl, leatherette, or high-performance fabrics.
Design Focus: Simple, elegant with tufting or stitching details.
Functional Needs: Withstand luggage placement, frequent sitting; often easy-clean finishes.

Desk or Vanity Chairs

Materials: Faux leather, vinyl, or tightly woven polyester.
Design Focus: Clean, ergonomic form; often pairs with task lighting.
Functional Needs: High abrasion resistance, minimal seams (to reduce dirt accumulation).

Common Upholstery Fabrics Used

Fabric Type	Features	Common Uses
Polyester	Durable, wrinkle-resistant, fade-resistant	Sofas, headboards
Acrylic	UV-resistant, wool-like feel	Accent chairs, pillows
Nylon	Extremely abrasion-resistant, flexible	Desk chairs, benches
Faux Leather / Vinyl	Easy to clean, water-resistant	Headboards, benches
Velvet (Synthetic)	Luxurious look, soft texture	Accent furniture in upscale hotels
Microfiber	Stain-resistant, soft, tightly woven	Sofas, chairs in high-traffic rooms

2.5.6 FLOOR AND FLOOR FINISHES

Flooring is the general term for a permanent covering of a floor, or for the work of installing such a floor covering. Floor covering is a term to generically describe any finish material applied over a floor structure to provide a walking surface. Both terms are used interchangeably but floor covering refers more to loose-laid materials. Flooring and floor finishes used in hotels, should be area-specific requirements, material types, functionality, design influence, maintenance, and sustainability.

Floor surfaces cover a large area of the room and are subject to constant wear. They are expensive and replace less frequently than other furnishings. Improperly laid floors or damaged floors can cause accidents and damage to the equipment. Floor surfaces must be comfortable and quiet besides contributing to the décor of the room. The traffic in the area and utility of the room must also be considered.

FACTORS DETERMINING THE FLOOR FINISH

➢ **Appearance:** Colour, pattern and texture of the floor surfaces should be compatible with the size, décor and activity of the room. Pale colours provide a cool appearance of warmth. Patterned surfaces add interest to the room.

➢ **Comfort:** Foot fatigue should be reduced by use of soft resilient surfaces. Floor surfaces should not be noisy or slippery.

➢ **Durability:** Grit, dragging of furniture and placement of equipment or circulation of heavy traffic should not damage the floor surface. They should also not be affected by the cleaning reagents and food spillages.

➢ **Life Expectancy:** Since floor surfaces are not changed frequently, they are expected to last forlonger time.

➢ **Safety:** Safety to the guests and occupants must be considered. Fire resistance, slip resistance and accident proof surfaces must be selected.

➢ **Ease of Cleaning:** Ease of maintenance and cleaning costs must be considered while selecting them.

➢ **Cost:** The cost of the floor surface, cost of laying and maintenance should be considered before selection.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

2.5.7 TYPES OF FLOORINGS AND FINISH

```
                        ┌──────────────┐
                        │ Flooring and │
                        │   Finishes   │
                        └──────────────┘
                               │
        ┌────────────┐  ┌──────────────┐  ┌──────────────────┐
        │Hard Flooring│─│  Semi Hard   │─│ Soft Flooring and│
        │and Finishes │ │ Flooring and │ │     Finishes     │
        └────────────┘  │   Finishes   │  └──────────────────┘
              │         └──────────────┘
    ┌──────────────┐  ┌──────────────┐
    │ Non-resilient│  │   Resilient  │
    └──────────────┘  └──────────────┘
```

Floorings are classified according to their hardness ,porosity and material they are made from. Hence they are categorised as:

1. Hard flooring and finishes
2. Semi-hard flooring and finishes
3. Soft flooring and finishes

1. HARD FLOORING AND FINISHES

Hard flooring are non-flexible, solid floor surfaces that provide durability, a clean aesthetic, and easy maintenance ,they are cold to feel, vermin-proof, impervious to dry rot(except wood) ,fire retardant—making them ideal for many areas in a hotel. They are commonly used in lobbies, corridors, restaurants, bathrooms, spas, and guest rooms

Hard floorings can be classified as: Non-resilient and Resilient

A. NON-RESILIENT:

Non-resilient hard flooring refers to flooring materials that are rigid, inflexible, and do not compress under pressure. These surfaces are durable, long-lasting, and typically resistant to water, stains, and wear, making them ideal for high-traffic and high-impact areas in hotels such as lobbies, corridors, bathrooms, restaurants, and back-of-house spaces. Stone, concrete, ceramic and resin floorings fall under this category .

STONE FLOOR SURFACES:

Stone are naturally these are Marble (luxury), granite (durable), slate (textured), travertine (rustic). Are   used in guest rooms and guest bathrooms, spa areas, luxury hotel lobbies. The have unique patterns and natural aesthetics. Excellent heat conductivity   (great with under floor heating). Requires sealing to resist staining. Susceptible to acid etching (especially marble). High cost and

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

maintenance requirements. Marble flooring is a premium non-resilient hard flooring option widely used in luxury and upscale hotel interiors. Known for its natural elegance, unique veining, and timeless appeal, marble flooring creates a high-end ambiance in spaces like hotel lobbies, suites, bathrooms, and ballrooms.

MARBLE

Marble is a metamorphic rock composed mainly of calcite ($CaCO_3$), formed from limestone subjected to intense heat and pressure. Each slab is naturally unique, offering a distinct pattern and colour tone, which enhances a hotel's visual identity. They have Aesthetic Value and are Luxurious, refined appearance; natural patterns and veining. Marble is available in white, beige, grey, green, black, pink. There are various finishing options polished (glossy), honed (matte), brushed and tumbled. Cool underfoot and excellent with under floor heating. Can be water-jet cut into patterns, borders, mosaics, or medallions.

It is used in hotel lobbies, suites, bathroom, corridors, ballrooms and spas. It has Luxurious Visual Impact and enhances brand perception and guest experience in premium properties. With proper care, can last for decades in moderate to heavy traffic areas. Marble is absorbent and prone to staining (wine, oil, acids). Requires regular sealing. It is Sensitive to acidic substances (like lemon juice or cleaning chemicals).

SLATE

Slate is a fine-grained metamorphic rock formed from sedimentary shale. It naturally splits into thin, flat layers, which gives slate tiles their distinct cleft surface texture. Each tile has a unique variation in tone, texture, and veining, making it a popular choice for creating a natural, organic look. Slate flooring is a type of natural stone flooring prized for its rich texture, earthy colours, and durability. It is a non-resilient hard flooring material ideal for hotels that aim to project a natural, rustic, contemporary, or earthy aesthetic, such as boutique hotels, resorts, mountain lodges, and eco-conscious properties Must be sealed to prevent staining and moisture damage.

QUARTZITE

Quartzite is a natural metamorphic rock formed from pure quartz sandstone, transformed under extreme heat and pressure. The result is a very hard, dense stone that resembles marble in appearance but performs more like granite in durability. Quartzite flooring is a high-end, natural stone flooring option valued for its exceptional durability, sparkling crystalline appearance, and resistance to heat, scratches, and water. It is ideal for luxury hotels, resorts, and high-traffic public areas where a natural yet elegant finish is desired. Premium pricing for both material and installation. Must be sealed regularly to protect against water and oil stains Requires diamond blades and skilled labour for installation.

GRANITE/LIMESTONE/SANDSTONE FLOORING

Granite is an igneous rock, formed from cooled magma, and is one of the hardest and most durable natural stones available. It has a crystalline appearance with speckles of mica, quartz, and feldspar.

Sandstone is a sedimentary rock composed of sand-sized minerals or rock grains. It offers a natural, earthy appearance and a slightly textured surface.

Limestone is another sedimentary rock, primarily composed of calcium carbonate. It has a smooth, matte appearance and is typically used for its subtle elegance and soft colour palette.

Granite, sandstone, and limestone flooring—three types of natural stone flooring commonly used in hotels. Each has its own aesthetic, durability, and maintenance needs, making them suitable for different areas and types of hotel environments.

VITREOUS/CERAMIC/PORCELAIN FLOORING

Vitreous and ceramic tiles are among the most widely used flooring materials in hotels due to their versatility, cost-effectiveness, durability, and design flexibility. These materials are ideal for both front-of-house and back-of-house applications, and they come in a wide range of colours, textures, sizes, and finishes.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

CERAMIC TILES

Ceramic tiles are made by shaping natural clay, sand, and other natural materials into tiles and firing them in a kiln at high temperatures. They can be:
Glazed (with a protective glass-like coating)
Unglazed (more porous, slip-resistant, and matte)
Ceramic tiles are among the most widely used and versatile flooring and wall finish materials in hotel interiors due to their affordability, variety, ease of maintenance, and aesthetic flexibility. They are ideal for guest bathrooms, corridors, public restrooms, lobbies, back-of-house (BOH) areas, and even some guest room floors (especially in budget or midscale hotels).

VITREOUS TILES

A subcategory of ceramic tiles with low water absorption. More dense and durable than regular ceramic. Suitable for moderate to heavy traffic and wet areas like bathrooms or spas. Often glazed for stain and moisture resistance.

PORCELAIN TILES

Porcelain tiles are a type of highly vitrified ceramic tile, known for their exceptional strength, low water absorption, and luxurious finishes. They are widely used in modern hotel design for their aesthetic versatility, durability, and low maintenance, making them ideal for both front-of-house and back-of-house areas.
Made from refined clay, fired at high temperatures, denser than ceramic. Used in hotel lobbies, bathrooms, corridors, exterior walkways. Can mimic marble, wood, metal, or concrete. They are water and stain-resistant. Extremely hard and wear-resistant. Available in anti-slip finishes. Easy to mop, requires grout cleaning.

QUARRY TILES

Quarry tiles are unglazed, natural clay tiles fired at high temperatures to create a dense, durable, and slip-resistant surface. While not as decorative as porcelain or ceramic tiles, they are highly valued in back-of-house and high-wear areas in hotels due to their toughness, low maintenance, and anti-slip properties. Not suitable for guest rooms or lounge areas

TERRACOTTA TILES

Terracotta" means "baked earth" in Italian. Terracotta tiles are traditional, warm-toned, unglazed ceramic tiles made from natural red or brown clay, shaped and kiln-fired at relatively low temperatures. Known for their earthy aesthetic, they offer a rustic, handcrafted look and are popular in boutique hotels,

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

aesthetic, they offer a rustic, handcrafted look and are popular in boutique hotels, heritage properties, resorts, and Mediterranean-style interiors. They are Porous and unglazed and have to be sealed.

MOSAIC TILES

They are small, individual pieces (often under 100 mm²) made of ceramic, porcelain, glass, metal, natural stone, or a mix, mounted together to form patterns or images. In hotels, mosaic tiles are used primarily for decorative purposes, adding texture, colour, and visual interest to walls, floors, and feature areas.

GRANOLITHIC TILES

Granolithic tiles, also known as granolith tiles, are precast concrete-based flooring units composed of a mix of cement and graded aggregates such as granite chips, marble dust, or other durable stone particles. These tiles are valued for their durability, abrasion resistance, and cost-effectiveness, making them suitable for high-traffic areas in hotels, especially in service zones and some public back-of-house areas.

CONCRETE FLOORING

It is made from a mixture of cement, aggregates (sand and gravel), and water. Can be poured on-site or installed as precast panels. May be left raw, polished, stained, coloured, or epoxy-coated depending on design needs. Once considered purely utilitarian, modern concrete floors can be highly polished, stained, textured, or patterned, making them a durable, low-maintenance, and versatile choice for various hotel areas — from service corridors to upscale lobbies with industrial or minimalist design themes.

RESIN FLOORING

Resin flooring is a seamless, durable, and chemical-resistant flooring system made by applying synthetic resins (like epoxy, polyurethane, or methyl methacrylate) over a prepared concrete or screed substrate. It forms a smooth, hygienic, and hard-wearing surface, ideal for service areas, kitchens, spas, wellness zones, and even modern guest spaces in hotels. liquid-applied system that cures into a tough, joint-free surface. Can be glossy, matte, textured, or decorative .

B. RESILIENT:

Resilient hard flooring refers to a resilient category of flooring materials that are firm yet flexible, offering a balance between durability, comfort underfoot, and sound absorption. These floors are commonly used in hotels where there's a need for aesthetic appeal, ease of cleaning, and reduced noise, such as in guest rooms, corridors, gyms, and back-of-house areas.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

They differ from rigid hard floors (like stone or ceramic) by having a slightly softer, flexible base, making them more comfortable and quieter underfoot.
Wood, Asphalt and bitumastic finishes are classified as resilient hard finishes.

WOOD

Wood flooring is popular in hotels for its elegance, warmth, and durability, often found in guest rooms, suites, lobbies, corridors, and dining areas. It is the oldest material used for resilient flooring.
Soft wood like pine and fir have a high degree of resilience ,whereas hard wood like oak, teak, maple have low resilience.

Solid Hardwood Flooring
This is made from a single piece of wood, typically 18–20 mm thick. It is highly durable, can be sanded and refinished multiple times, adds natural warmth and value. However it is sensitive to moisture and humidity changes and may expand or contract. Mostly used Oak, maple, walnut, cherry, mahogany.

WOOD PARQUET

Wood parquet flooring is a classic and elegant choice that adds timeless beauty to any space. It consists of small, solid wood pieces arranged in geometric patterns, such as herringbone, chevron, or basket weave. This flooring style has seen a resurgence in popularity due to its sophisticated design and durability. Parquet flooring offers a beautiful and distinctive appearance. The use of real wood blocks arranged in various mosaic patterns creates a visually stunning effect that can be a focal point in any room. Parquet flooring is more challenging to maintain compared to other types of wood flooring. The intricate patterns can make cleaning and upkeep more time-consuming and demanding. Types of Parquet Patterns

> - Herringbone: Planks are laid in a zigzag pattern, creating a V-shaped design.
> - Chevron: Similar to herringbone but with planks cut at an angle, forming a continuous zigzag.
> - Basket weave: Rectangular tiles arranged in a pattern that resembles a woven basket.
> - Finger block: Small, square blocks arranged in a grid pattern, often used in traditional designs.
> - Versailles: A more intricate pattern featuring a combination of squares and

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

PLYWOOD

Plywood can be used as a flooring material, offering a cost-effective and versatile option for various interior spaces. Plywood is generally more budget-friendly compared to solid hardwood or engineered wood flooring. It can be stained, painted, or sealed in various finishes to match different interior styles, from modern to rustic. Using plywood can be more eco-friendly than solid wood, as it utilizes smaller, fast-growing trees and less wood overall.

Plywood is softer than hardwood and can be prone to scratches, dents, and wear over time, especially in high-traffic areas. Unless treated with high-quality sealants, plywood can absorb moisture, leading to swelling, warping, or delamination. While plywood can be finished to look appealing, it may not offer the same refined appearance as solid hardwood flooring.

ASPHALT TILES

These are made from a mixture of asphalt and mineral fillers, combined with pigments to achieve various colours and patterns. Asphalt tiles were among the most economical flooring options available, making them popular for budget-conscious projects. They are highly resistant to moisture, mold, mildew, and alkali, which makes them suitable for damp environments like basements and utility rooms.

BITUMASTIC FLOORING

This flooring is composed of a blend of bitumen (asphalt), limestone aggregates, and fine sand or gravel. This mixture is applied while hot, typically at temperatures around 220°C, allowing it to be spread evenly over a prepared substrate. Once cooled, it forms a solid, seamless surface Bitumastic flooring is highly resistant to wear, chemicals, and temperature variations, ensuring a long service life even under heavy traffic conditions.

2. SEMI-HARD FLOORING FINISHES

They are durable but less permanent than hard floor finishes these finishes provide a protective layer to the flooring material, enhancing its resistance to wear and tear while maintaining a desirable appearance.

LINOLEUM

Linoleum flooring is a natural, eco-friendly used in modern interiors due to its durability, aesthetic versatility, and sustainability. Made from renewable materials like linseed oil, pine rosin, wood flour, and jute, linoleum is biodegradable and free from harmful chemicals, making it a healthier choice for indoor environments . Available in a wide range of colours, patterns, and textures, linoleum can mimic the appearance of more expensive materials like wood or stone . Not fully waterproof;

prolonged exposure to standing water can cause warping or swelling. Regular sealing is necessary to maintain water resistance

CORK

Cork flooring is a sustainable and comfortable option that has gained popularity for its natural aesthetics and eco-friendly properties. Harvested from the bark of cork oak trees without harming the tree, cork is a renewable resource that regenerates every 9–12 years, making it a sustainable choice for flooring Cork is biodegradable and produced with minimal waste, contributing to a healthier environment . Its unique cellular structure provides a cushioned surface, reducing fatigue and joint strain, making it ideal for areas where you stand for extended periods . Cork offers thermal and acoustic insulation, helping to maintain room temperature and reduce noise transmission . While water-resistant, cork is not fully waterproof. Prolonged exposure to moisture can cause swelling or warping. Regular sealing is necessary to protect against water damage .

RUBBER

Rubber floors are usually made by a combination of natural and synthetic rubber. They may be laid in sheets or tile form. They may be coloured and mottled with inlaid patterns. The floor is hard wearing, resilient, quiet and waterproof. It is non-slip and maybe grease resistant. Damage may occur due to alkalis, acids and spirits. They are not affected by mould, bacteria and pest infestation. It is commonly used in kitchens, bathrooms, health clubs, near swimming pools etc.

PLASTIC

Plastic flooring encompasses various synthetic materials designed for durability, ease of maintenance, and cost-effectiveness. Common types include vinyl, PVC, WPC (Wood Plastic Composite), and polypropylene.

Plastic flooring, especially vinyl and WPC, offers excellent resistance to moisture, making it suitable for areas like kitchens, bathrooms, and basements. They are highly durable, resistant to scratches, stains, and dents, ensuring longevity even in high-traffic areas. These floors are easy to clean and maintain, requiring only regular sweeping and occasional mopping with mild detergent. Plastic flooring comes in a wide range of colours, patterns, and textures, including options that mimic natural materials like wood and stone. damaged sections of plastic flooring may be difficult to repair, often requiring replacement of the entire plank or tile. Prolonged exposure to direct sunlight can cause some plastic flooring to fade over time.

3. SOFT FLOORING AND FINISHES

These are resilient floorings and include all types of carpets, rugs , dhurries and

mats Soft flooring encompasses materials that provide cushioning, warmth, and sound insulation. Floor coverings or soft floors are used for variety in colour, texture and design. They are warm, durable, quiet, slip resistant and economical. Various types of colourings may be used in different areas depending upon the cost of maintenance, cost of installation, attractiveness and use. These flooring types are particularly beneficial in areas where comfort and noise reduction are priorities.

CARPETS

Carpet flooring offers warmth, comfort, and aesthetic appeal to various spaces. Understanding the different types, materials, and finishes can help you choose the best option for your needs.

Carpets: Carpets are used extensively in hotels and institutional establishment. The type of carpet selected will depend upon the suitability and traffic in the area. They may be used in bedrooms, lounges, TV rooms, restaurants, office and corridors. A good quality carpet should be able to withstand spillages, cigarette ash and grit. They must also be resilient to heavy furniture.

Carpet Construction: Carpets consist of three layers: a pile, a background and an underlay. The pile is held into the backing with knots and adhesives. The underlay acts as a shock absorber between the backing and the subfloor. It makes the carpet softer and provides insulation. Underlay may be made of felt, rubber, foam or jute with polypropylene backing.

Backing: Natural materials like jute, hemp, glue and starch are used with resin, synthetic rubber and polypropylene to form the backing. A secondary backing may be added to improve resilience.

Pile: The carpet pile absorbs most of the wear. It should be strong and resilient, shrink- proof, moth proof and flameproof. The carpet pile is frequently made of

CONSTUCTION OF CARPETS

Primary backing
Adhesive
Secondary backing
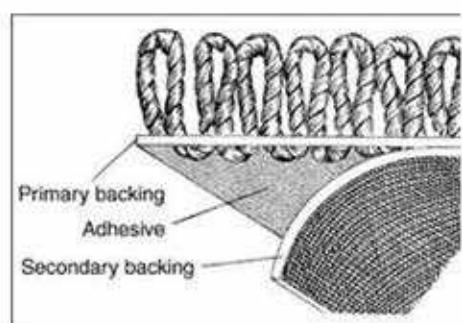
Wool: Woollen carpets are warm, soft, resilient and do not attract dirt. However, they are difficult to maintain and quite expensive. They may be blended with 20% nylon.

Acrylic: This is close to wool in appearance, wears well, is warm and resilient but soils easily. This is not easy to clean and not fire resistant.

Polyester: This is often blended with nylon. This is waterproof, easy to clean, soft and hard wearing.

Viscose Rayon: This is inexpensive and not hard wearing and is sometimes used in blended carpets along with nylon.

Maintaining clean carpets enhances the aesthetic appeal and longevity. Vacuum high-traffic areas at daily or least twice a week; less frequented zones can be cleaned once a week. Carpet shampooing is an effective method for deep cleaning carpets, removing embedded dirt, stains, and allergens.

> **Check Back Questions:**
> 1.Explain the classification of floor finishes.
> 2.What are the factors to be considered while selecting floor coverings?

2.5.8 WALL AND WALL FINISHES

Walls in hotels are critical for both aesthetic appeal and functionality, contributing to the overall guest experience.

Types of Wall Finishes:

A. PAINTS: Commonly used due to its cost-effectiveness and variety of colours. It requires regular cleaning to prevent dust accumulation and may need repainting to maintain freshness.

Types of Paint Finishes-paints are categorized according to their shine. Paints without shine are called matt or flat, while paints with shine are called eggshell, satin and glossy.

1. Matte (Flat) Finish- Non-reflective, smooth surface. Ceilings, low-traffic areas like bedrooms and living rooms. It hides wall imperfections well; provides a rich, velvety look generally difficult to clean; not suitable for high-moisture areas

2. Eggshell Finish- Soft, low sheen resembling an eggshell. More durable and washable than matte; conceals minor imperfections May show some wall flaws; less durable than satin

3. Satin Finish- Soft, velvety sheen. Can be used for kitchens, bathrooms. It is easy to clean; resists moisture and stains can highlight surface imperfections; requires careful application

4. Semi-Gloss Finish- Moderate shine; reflective. Best for Bathrooms, kitchens, trim, doors. Highly durable, moisture-resistant; easy to clean. Emphasizes wall imperfections; requires smooth surface preparation.

5. Gloss (High-Gloss) Finish- High shine; mirror-like effect. Used for Cabinets, doors, furniture. Extremely durable; easy to clean; enhances architectural details. Highlights every imperfection; requires meticulous surface preparation

TYPES OF PAINTS

Depending on their binders ,paints are classified as water based and solvent based.

Water-Based Paints - Water-based paints, also known as latex or acrylic paints, are widely used for both interior and exterior applications due to their numerous advantages. Significantly lower odour compared to oil-based paints, making them more pleasant to work with, especially in enclosed spaces.

Types of Water-Based Paints

Distemper paint: It is a traditional, cost-effective, water-based paint widely used for interior walls and ceilings. It is particularly popular in rental properties, temporary living spaces, and regions with dry climates due to its affordability and ease of application.

Types of Distemper Paint

1. Acrylic Distemper: A water-based paint offering a smooth matte finish. It is more durable and dries quickly, making it suitable for home exteriors. These paints contains acrylic resins. They are best suited for exterior walls, high-moisture areas like bathrooms and kitchens. They have Superior durability, moisture resistance, faster drying times, and better adhesion, even in challenging conditions. May require primer for porous surfaces

2.Synthetic Distemper: Also water-based, this type provides a uniform matte finish and becomes harder over time, enhancing durability. It is easy to clean and maintain.

3.UNO Acrylic Distemper: A budget-friendly option for interior walls, offering a smooth matte finish and relatively stain-resistant properties. It is easy to clean with water.

Emulsion paints: Emulsion paints are water-based paints that have become a popular choice for interior and exterior wall applications due to their durability, aesthetic appeal, and ease of maintenance. Emulsion paints are primarily composed of synthetic resins like acrylic or vinyl, pigments, additives, and water. These components give emulsion paints their characteristic smooth finish, quick drying time, and resistance to stains and moisture. They are washable, allowing for easy cleaning of walls without damaging the paint finish. Certain emulsion paints are designed to be moisture-resistant, making them ideal for high-humidity areas like kitchens and bathrooms. : They come in various finishes, including

matte, silk, and gloss, offering flexibility to achieve the desired look. They dry faster than oil-based paints, reducing waiting times between coats and allowing for quicker project completion. Emulsion paints require proper surface preparation, including priming and putty application, to ensure optimal adhesion and finish.

Silicate paint : Silicate paint is a specialized, eco-friendly mineral-based coating known for its exceptional durability, breathability, and resistance to environmental factors. Unlike traditional paints that form a film on the surface, silicate paints chemically bond with mineral substrates, becoming an integral part of the material. Silicate paints primarily consist of Potassium or Sodium Silicate Also known as water glass, this serves as the binder. Mineral Pigments inorganic colorants that provide colour stability and UV resistance. And Water which acts as a solvent during application .Upon application, silicate paints undergo a chemical reaction with the substrate, forming a microcrystalline structure that enhances adhesion and durability. Offers long-lasting protection, often exceeding 30 years without significant degradation. free from solvents, plasticizers, and preservatives, making it suitable for allergy sufferers and environmentally conscious projects.

LIME WASH

Lime wash is an ancient, eco-friendly wall finish made from slaked lime (calcium hydroxide), water, and natural pigments. It has been used for centuries to coat interior and exterior walls, offering a unique aesthetic and several functional benefits. Lime wash enhances the underlying texture of surfaces like brick, stone, or plaster, creating a soft, matte finish with subtle variations in tone. The application technique results in a chalky, nuanced texture that adds a romantic and old-world feel to spaces. Lime wash develops a unique patina over time, with subtle colour changes that mimic the natural aging of historic structures.

Lime wash typically contains minimal to no volatile organic compounds, reducing indoor air pollution and promoting better indoor air quality. The high pH of lime wash inhibits the growth of mold, mildew, and bacteria, making it suitable for damp environments. When properly applied, lime wash can last for many years, developing a weathered look that adds character to surfaces.

CEMENT PAINT

Cement paint is a durable, cost-effective, and weather-resistant coating primarily used for exterior surfaces like concrete, masonry, and brick walls. It is especially suitable for areas exposed to moisture and harsh environmental conditions. Cement paint is typically formulated by mixing, White or colored cement which

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

acts as the primary binder. Pigments provide colour and additives which enhance properties like adhesion, waterproofing, and workability This mixture is available in powder form and is mixed with water before application.

Resistant to weathering, UV rays, and abrasion. Offers protection against moisture, making it suitable for damp areas. Allows moisture vapour to escape, reducing the risk of peeling and damp. Generally more affordable than other exterior paints. Can be applied directly to surfaces without the need for a primer.

SOLVENT-BASED PAINTS

Solvent-based paints, also known as oil-based or alkyd paints, use organic solvents like mineral spirits or turpentine to dissolve resins and pigments. These paints are renowned for their durability, smooth finish, and versatility across various surfaces. . The solvent acts as a carrier, allowing the paint to be applied smoothly. Once applied, the solvent evaporates, leaving behind a hard, durable coating. Offers a tough, long-lasting finish resistant to wear, moisture, and chemicals. Provides excellent flow and leveling, resulting in a smooth, glossy finish. Performs well in various weather conditions, making it suitable for both indoor and outdoor applications.

TYPES OF SOLVENT BASED PAINTS

ALKYD PAINTS

These paints are a type of solvent-based paint known for their durability, smooth finish, and versatility. They are commonly used in both interior and exterior applications, particularly for surfaces that require a hard, glossy finish. Alkyd paints are made using synthetic resins derived from polyols and fatty acids, typically from vegetable oils. These resins are combined with solvents like mineral spirits or turpentine to create a paint that offers a durable and glossy finish. Despite often being referred to as "oil-based," alkyd paints do not contain natural oils but are chemically modified to mimic the properties of oil paints. Alkyd paints form a tough, resilient film that withstands physical and chemical stress, making them ideal for demanding applications They provide a smooth, glossy finish that enhances the appearance of surfaces.

ENAMEL PAINT

Enamel paint is a solvent-based, made by adding pigments like white lead or zinc white to a vehicle comprising a varnish. colouring pigments are added to obtain the desired colour. Provides a coating that dries to a hard, glossy finish, making it ideal for surfaces exposed to wear and tear. It is available in two main types .These paints are a type of durable, and provides a hard, protective shell on various surfaces. They are widely used for both interior and exterior applications due to their resilience and aesthetic appeal.

CELLULOSE PAINTS

This paint is made of celluloid sheets and amyl acetate substitutes. Nitro cotton is used to make a superior quality paint . It dries quickly and has an added advantage of hardness, flexibility and smoothness. It withstands rough weather.

BITUMINOUS PAINTS

These paints are alkali-resistant and are chiefly used for painting exterior , brickwork and plastered surfaces. They are used for waterproofing.

B. WALLPAPER

Wallpaper evolved as an inexpensive substitute for tapestries . Wallpaper is a powerful tool in interior decoration, offering a transformative way to elevate spaces. wallpaper offers decorative patterns but is prone to damage in high-traffic areas. It requires careful cleaning to avoid peeling or fading. It creates a visual impact and can serve as the focal point of a room, adding colour, texture, and pattern that paint alone might not achieve. They effectively mask wall flaws such as cracks or uneven surfaces, providing a smoother appearance. Wallpapers come in various patterns from floral and geometric patterns to textures like grass cloth and metallic finishes, wallpapers offer endless design possibilities.

TYPES OF WALLPAPERS

SURFACE-PRINTED WALLPAPER

Surface-printed wallpaper is a traditional and distinctive printing technique that imparts a rich, textured appearance to wall coverings. Developed in the 1830s, it was initially used to mechanize the labour-intensive process of hand-block printing. Today, this method continues to be valued for its artisanal qualities and unique aesthetic. Surface printing involves engraving a design onto a roller, which is then inked and pressed onto paper. Unlike methods that use drying stages between colour applications, surface printing applies multiple colours in a single pass, resulting in a wet-on-wet process. This technique often leads to slight ink bleeding and a soft, painterly effect, reminiscent of hand-blocked designs s one of the oldest automated printing methods still in use, surface printing carries a legacy of traditional craftsmanship.

EMBOSSED WALLPAPER

The design is pressed into the paper making it to stand out. Embossed wallpaper is crafted by pressing a pattern into the material, creating a three-dimensional effect. This technique can be applied to various substrates, including vinyl, non-woven fabric, and paper, resulting in designs that range from subtle textures to bold, sculptural motifs. Common patterns include floral, damask, geometric,

and faux finishes like stone or brick, which enhance the visual interest of a space. The raised patterns create a dynamic surface that catches light and shadow, adding dimension to walls. Enhance the ambiance of hotels, restaurants, and offices with durable and stylish wall coverings.

ANAGLYPTA

Two layers of paper and cotton fibre are bonded to produce anaglypta . Anaglypta is a renowned brand specializing in high-quality, paintable textured wallpapers that add depth and character to interiors. Originating from the Greek words ana (raised) and glypta (carved), Anaglypta wallpapers are designed to be painted over, allowing for customization in colour to suit various decor styles. They are generally available in white.

SUPAGLYPTA

This strong deeply moulded cotton based paper is good for covering badly cracked walls. Supaglypta wallpapers come in white and can be painted with any colour of your choice, offering flexibility to match your interior style. Renowned for their durability and intricate designs, Supaglypta wallpapers are crafted using a unique process that combines an embossed textile layer with a layer of high-quality, pure paper, resulting in a tough and enduring wall covering. These wallpapers are ideal for high-traffic areas and are designed to be painted over, allowing for customization to match any décor.

LINCRUSTA

Lincrusta is crafted from a gelled paste of linseed oil and wood flour, applied onto a paper base and embossed with steel rollers to create high-relief patterns. The material continues to harden over time, enhancing its durability. It is supplied in a neutral cream colour, allowing for customization through painting. Lincrusta is particularly valued for its ability to replicate the appearance of expensive materials like leather, plaster, and wood at a more accessible price point.

FLOCK

Flock wallpaper is produced through a process where short, fine fibers are applied to a surface coated with adhesive. These fibers are often charged to ensure they stand upright, creating a velvety texture that is both visually striking and pleasant to the touch. Historically, flocking was used to mimic the appearance of velvet wall hangings, offering a cost-effective alternative to the luxurious fabric.

INGRAINED

Ingrained wallpaper, also known as wood-chip wallpaper, is a durable and textured wall covering made from layers of paper interspersed with wood fibers.

and faux finishes like stone or brick, which enhance the visual interest of a space. dents. The surface texture can help conceal imperfections in the underlying wall. It can be painted over multiple times, allowing for easy updates to wall colours. Some variants come with a moisture barrier, making them suitable for areas prone to humidity. Once painted over several times, ingrain wallpaper can become difficult to remove.

PAPER-BACKED HESSIAN

Paper-backed hessian refers to a natural jute fabric bonded to a paper backing, enhancing its durability and versatility. Paper-backed hessian combines the rustic charm of jute with the added stability of a paper backing. This construction makes it easier to handle, cut, and apply, especially in environments where durability and ease of use are paramount. Provides a textured, natural look. Its breathability and biodegradability make it an eco-friendly choice.

JAPANESE GRASSCLOTH

Japanese grass cloth wallpaper is a luxurious, natural-textured wall covering crafted from materials like jute, hemp, and reed. Renowned for its tactile richness and organic aesthetic, it brings a serene, nature-inspired ambiance to interiors. The weaving process results in a distinctive texture that varies in thickness and pattern, offering a unique, artisanal quality to each roll. This material is often used in accent walls or low-traffic areas due to its delicate nature. Natural grass cloth is not washable and can be challenging to clean. Light dusting or vacuuming with a soft brush is recommended.

C. FABRIC WALL COVERINGS

Fabric wall coverings involve applying textiles such as silk, velvet, linen, or cotton directly to walls. These can be installed using various methods, including:
Upholstered Walls: Fabric is stretched over padded panels, creating a soft, cushioned surface.
Stretch Fabric Systems: A frame is mounted on the wall, and fabric is stretched and clipped into place.
Adhesive-backed Fabrics: Textiles with a self-adhesive backing are applied directly to the wall.
Fabric absorbs sound, reducing echo and creating a quieter environment, making it ideal for media rooms, offices, and bedrooms. Materials like velvet and silk add a touch of elegance and sophistication to any space . The layers of fabric can provide additional insulation, helping to maintain room temperature.

D. TILES

Tiles are a versatile and durable choice for wall coverings, offering a blend of functionality and aesthetic appeal. Tiles are resistant to wear and tear, making

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

them ideal for high-traffic areas. They are easy to clean and maintain, requiring minimal upkeep compared to other wall coverings. Tiles, especially ceramic and porcelain, are water-resistant, making them suitable for bathrooms and kitchen. Available in various colours, patterns, and textures, tiles can complement any interior style. Feature walls with textured or patterned tiles can serve as focal points.

E. WOOD

Provides a luxurious look but require specific cleaning agents to avoid damage to the finish. Wood adds a natural, inviting feel to interiors, enhancing the overall ambiance. Certain wood panels, like slatted or acoustic designs, can improve sound quality within a room. Using reclaimed or responsibly sourced wood contributes to eco-friendly design practices. Wood panels suit various styles, from traditional to contemporary, and can be customized with stains or finishes.

Wood Panelling Styles

Shiplap: Horizontal planks with a slight gap, offering a clean and timeless look.
Tongue and Groove: Interlocking boards that create a seamless appearance, suitable for both walls and ceilings.
Bead board: Narrow, vertical panels with a beaded edge, often used in coastal or cottage-style interiors.
Reclaimed Wood: Salvaged wood from old structures, adding character and history to a space.
3D Textured Panels: Panels with raised patterns, such as waves or geometric designs, creating visual interest.

F. STONE OR MARBLE

Stone and marble wall coverings are timeless choices that add sophistication, durability, and natural beauty to both interiors and exteriors. Natural stone is highly durable, resistant to weathering, and can last for decades with minimal maintenance. Offers a rich, textured look with a variety of colours and patterns, suitable for both rustic and modern designs. Acts as a natural insulator, helping to regulate indoor temperatures and reduce energy costs. Requires minimal upkeep; periodic cleaning is usually sufficient to maintain its appearance. Enhances curb appeal and can boost property value due to its luxurious and timeless appeal. Protects against weather elements. Creates focal points in living rooms, dining areas, or entryways, also adds a rustic or elegant touch depending on the stone type. Common in luxury hotels for their elegance but need specialized cleaning to avoid scratches or staining.

Care and Maintenance:

Regular cleaning of walls is essential to remove dust, smudges, and stains,

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

maintaining a hygienic and visually appealing environment. Different finishes require specific cleaning techniques and products. For example, painted walls can be wiped with a damp cloth and mild detergent, while wallpaper may need dry cleaning or minimal moisture to prevent damage.

Housekeeping staff must be trained to identify the type of wall finish and use appropriate cleaning methods to avoid deterioration.

Periodic inspections are recommended to check for wear, damage, or the need for repainting or replacement, especially in high-traffic areas like corridors and lobbies.

2.5.9 ROOM LAYOUTS

Hotel room layout refers to the design and arrangement of a guest room a hotel . This includes the placement of furniture, fixtures, and amenities to create a functional and comfortable environment for guests.

Hotel room layouts are typically rectangular, featuring a main room with a bed, a bathroom, and often a closet or storage area. The layout prioritizes functionality and space efficiency, with elements like desks or armchairs sometimes added to create areas for work or relaxation. The goal is to maximize comfort, flow, and functionality while also considering accessibility, safety, and ease of maintenance.

Key Consideration in Hotel Room Layout:

> **Functionality:** The arrangement of furniture and amenities should allow guests to move easily and comfortably, while keeping essential items within reach.
> **Space:** The layout should maximize space while still providing a sense of privacy and comfort.
> **Accessibility:** Accessible rooms are designed to accommodate individuals with disabilities or limited mobility, including features like wider doorways, roll-in showers, and accessible bathroom fixtures.
> **Safety:** Features like smoke detectors, fire alarms, and emergency exits are crucial for guest safety.
> **Flow:** The layout should facilitate easy movement and minimize clutter, creating a welcoming and organized atmosphere.
> **Amenities:** Standard amenities like a bed, desk, chair, and TV are typically included in all rooms.

Key Features of a Standard Hotel Room Layout:

Entry Door: The entry point to the room, leading into the main space.
Bathroom: A separate, private space with a door.
Main Room: The primary living space, often containing the bed, a dresser or TV, and a desk.
Window or Balcony: Often located behind the bed, providing natural light and potentially views.
Bed: The primary focal point of the room, with varying sizes and styles depending on the room type.
Furniture: Dresser, TV, chairs, and potentially a sofa or other seating, depending on

the room size and type.

Storage: Closets or other storage solutions to keep personal belongings organized.

Different Room Types and Their Variations:

> **Single Room:** Features a single bed.
> **Twin/Double Room:** Typically has two twin beds or a double bed.
> **Queen/King Room:** Features a queen or king-size bed.
> **Triple/Quad Room:** Designed for larger groups, often with multiple beds.
> **Suite:** More spacious rooms with a separate living area.
> **Deluxe Room:** Offers upgraded furnishings, better views, and additional amenities.
> **Studio Room:** Includes a kitchenette.
> **Rooms with a View:** Rooms that offer specific views, such as city or ocean views.

The specific layout of a hotel room will depend on the hotel's brand, the size of the room, and the target market. However, the fundamental elements of the standard rectangular layout remain consistent, prioritizing functionality and guest comfort.

LAYOUTS OF ROOMS

DOUBLE ROOM LAYOUT

TWIN ROOM LAYOUT

SUITE ROOM LAYOUT

2.6 RENOVATION

Renovation freshens up the entire look of the interior space. It provides a means to update and modernise the systems that provide a safe, comfortable and convenient interior environment. Renovations are essential for maintaining competitiveness, enhancing guest satisfaction, and ensuring long-term profitability.

The primary reasons why hotels undertake renovation projects:

1. Enhancing Guest Experience

Renovations allow hotels to upgrade amenities, decor, and technology, leading to improved comfort and convenience for guests. Modernized facilities contribute to a memorable and enjoyable stay, which can result in positive reviews and repeat visits.

2. Increasing Occupancy Rates

Updated and appealing accommodations attract more guests. Renovated hotels often experience a surge in demand, leading to higher occupancy rates and maximizing revenue potential.

3. Gaining Competitive Advantage

In a competitive hospitality market, renovations help hotels stand out by offering modern amenities, stylish designs, and improved guest experiences. This differentiation attracts more discerning travelers seeking quality and value.

4. Driving Revenue Growth

Strategic renovations can justify higher room rates, increase bookings, and boost sales of upgraded amenities and services. Investing in renovations can lead to significant financial returns over time.

5. Improving Operational Efficiency

Renovations provide an opportunity to address operational inefficiencies and infrastructure upgrades. Implementing energy-efficient systems and optimizing

space utilization can reduce maintenance costs and enhance staff productivity.

6. Attracting New Markets

Modernized facilities with state-of-the-art meeting rooms and tech-savvy amenities appeal to new market segments, such as business travelers and millennials. Renovations enable hotels to cater to evolving guest preferences and expand their customer base.

7. Increasing Property Value

Upgraded amenities, modern designs, and improved revenue-generating capabilities make a hotel more attractive to investors and lenders. Renovations can lead to a higher property valuation, benefiting owners and stakeholders

8. Ensuring Safety and Compliance

Renovations provide an opportunity to update safety features, such as fire suppression systems, emergency exits, and accessibility accommodations, ensuring compliance with current regulations and enhancing guest safety.

9. Addressing Wear and Tear

Over time, hotels experience general wear and tear, such as faded carpets, chipping paint, and out dated fixtures. Renovations address these issues, maintaining a clean and inviting environment for guests.

10. Boosting Employee Morale

Updated facilities and well-designed workspaces can improve employee morale and productivity. A positive work environment contributes to better customer service and overall hotel performance.

2.6.1 TYPES OF HOTEL RENOVATIONS

There are three categories that renovation projects come under
  - ➤ Minor renovations
  - ➤ Major renovations
  - ➤ Restoration

1. Minor Renovation(5-7 year cycle)

Minor renovation is done to replace or renew the non-durable furnishings and finishes. Refurbishment or replacement of less durable equipment and finishes without altering the physical layout. Repairs, painting, and replacement of carpets, furniture, and wall coverings.

2. Major Renovation (12–15year cycle)

Major renovation is to replace or renew all furnishings and finishes . It includes Overhauling the hotel's infrastructure, such as reconfiguring guest rooms, updating plumbing and electrical systems, or redesigning communal areas like

the reception or restaurant. It is done to enhance functionality, improve guest experience, and comply with updated standards.

3. Restoration (25-50 year cycle)

Restoration typically allows for a complete gutting of a space and replacing of all systems that are technically and functionally obsolete ,while restoring furnishings and systems that can still be used, given the current need of the facility. It may for instance, include interior demolition of the entire guest room floors.

2.6.2 REFURBISHMENT

Refurbishing refers to the process of renovating or upgrading guest rooms, public areas, or facilities to maintain is a comprehensive process aimed at enhancing a hotel's functionality, aesthetics, and guest experience. It involves several stages, each crucial for ensuring the project's success. It includes replacing furniture, fittings and soft furnishings that are worn out. Refurnishing also can be partial or complete. If it is partial it may not involve carpets or may not involve all furniture, e.g. – only beds may be replaced or only certain items of furniture replaced. Refurbishing always includes new curtains, bedspreads, upholstery etc. A full planning is to be made before refurbishing or refurbishing an area. It is done in the slackest season. The frequency of refurbishment depends on the budget of the establishment and the amount of wear the interior is subjected to. Some of the luxury class hotels budget for refurbishment over a period of seven to ten years, while others would like to replace and update their furniture regularly, but are unable to do so due to high costs.

Process of Refurbishment:

Before embarking on a hotel refurbishment, conducting a thorough evaluation is essential to ensure the project's success and alignment with business objectives.

Evaluation – A physical inspection should be carried out to ascertain if the project is really necessary. A worksheet should then be prepared in detail. This is normally done in conjunction with the chief engineer or the head of the maintenance department.

Availability of time – When considering the work and the costs involved, the expected completion date must be planned. Work should be carried out during a period of low occupancy or at the most convenient time.

Budget – how much money is available for the project? There may have to be a compromise between what actually needs to be done and what can be afforded, adhering to the budget.

Theme – If the original theme of the establishment or area is to be changed, the suitability of newly chosen theme should be researched and a feasibility study and market research carried out. The project should be financially viable.

Design – The project should be ergonomically sound, possibly using work-studies and all the practicalities of hygiene, cleanliness and comfort considered.

Décor – Suitable fabrics, finishes and colours should be chosen. The fabrics and finishes should be hard wearing, fire resistant, vandal-proof, and easy to clean and give the right kind of atmosphere.

Staffing – The project work may be carried out by direct labour or contractors, and a cost comparison made. If refurbishment takes place, there should be necessary staff to maintain the new image. Consideration must also be given to new uniforms, recruitment and training.

Equipment – The equipment to do the work concerned may need to be purchased or hired and availability checked.

Raw materials – Sufficient supplies should be ordered and facilities made for re-ordering. The best possible purchase price should be obtained allowing sufficient, secure storage space.

Inconvenience – Provision should be made for the inconvenience to the guests, staff, suppliers, etc while the project work is in progress. Temporary arrangements may need to be done.

Procedures – All the correct company and statutory procedures should be adhered to, like –
Planning permission
Fire regulations
Health and safety aspects
Licensing laws
Company policies

Control – All aspects of controls should also be finalized –
Financial control
Purchasing
Insurance
Contracts
Inspection
Records kept

For housekeeping record keeping is perhaps the most important aspect of control. Housekeeper should keep the documents in the form of a room history card so that she has details of all work carried out, for the purpose of future planning.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Take over from the contractors-This stage entails the hand over of the completed renovation project by the contactor to the housekeeping department. A detailed snag list is prepared by the housekeeping supervisor, the contractors rectify the snags pointed out.

REDECORATION

Redecorating guest rooms involves creating a warm and inviting space that caters to the needs of visitors. This can include updating furniture, fixtures, and soft furnishings, focusing on a soothing colour palette, and adding personal touches like artwork or plants. The rooms are put off for the required amount of time. This work is planned for the slack season of the year. This is done either floor by floor or part of a floor at a time depending on the shape and number of rooms on the floor. It is always planned in such a way to cause as little inconvenience possible to the guest. Redecoration is also carried out in the public areas. The restaurant area is closed and the lobby work is done only at night; cleaning away everything by morning. Several nights may be required to complete the work. Basically, the work includes repainting, repolishing of furniture if required, and rearrangement and after this, a full maintenance work and general cleaning are carried out. Many hotels using tidy and skilled craftsmen manage the work without removing the carpet but dust sheets are placed over it for protection. It is also done annually in order to maintain the standard of the rooms.

TO PREPARE A ROOM FOR REDECORATION:

Remove linen from the room and bathroom and send to the laundry including bedspreads and blankets.

Remove all supplies and store in the maids' service room. Some hotels also store them in a drawer in the room but often the workmen fiddle with it.

Remove the curtains and draperies and send them for cleaning. Save the hooks in an envelope marked with the room number and is placed in the maids' service room.

If sufficient space is available in the service room, place the lamps there too covered with dust sheets.

Generally, unless the floor is taken off, the furniture is not removed from the room but stacked in the middle with dust sheets placed over them.

Now the redecoration takes place. Next maintenance does the complete checking and prepares the Snag List. This can be prepared by the Executive H.K. or the maintenance supervisor. After the maintenance work has been done, the H.K. prepares the room again to be let out.

TO PREPARE A ROOM FOR REDECORATION:

1. Remove all dust sheets and send them to the laundry.
2. The bathroom walls, all fixtures and fittings as well as the floor are scrubbed.
3. Vacuum the room.
4. Scrub the balcony and terrace. Clean the furniture present there.
5. Clean the windows thoroughly including the frame.
6. Polish or clean all the furniture in the room.
7. Replace curtains.
8. Replace bed and bath linen.
9. Arrange all furniture correctly.
10. Replace supplies.
11. Replace lamps, cleaning the shades if necessary.
12. Switch on the mini-fridge after cleaning it.
13. Shampoo the carpet and dry it.
14. Any preventive maintenance should be done during this time.
15. The room is then fit for letting out again.

Check Back Questions:

1. What is Renovation? Explain the types of renovations?
2. Explain Refurbishing and Redecoration.

2.7 NEW PROPERTY COUNTDOWN

The "New Property Countdown" refers to a structured timeline and checklist for preparing a new hotel property for opening, This process is critical for ensuring that the housekeeping department is ready to deliver a seamless guest experience from day one. Preparing the housekeeping department for a new hotel property involves meticulous planning and coordination.

Key Aspects of the New Property Countdown

The countdown process begins 2–3 years before the hotel's opening, though the executive housekeeper's active involvement typically starts about one year prior. The goal is to align housekeeping operations with the hotel's overall design and operational strategy, including redecoration efforts to ensure guest rooms meet aesthetic and functional standards.

New Property Countdown Timeline

The countdown ideally begins 2–3 years before the hotel opens, though the executive housekeeper's active role typically starts about one year prior. The process is divided into phases with specific tasks to align housekeeping with the hotel's design, operational goals, and guest expectations.

1. 2–3 Years Before Opening: Planning Phase

Consultant Involvement: A housekeeping consultant may work with top management, architects, and interior designers to plan the housekeeping department's layout. This includes ensuring logical traffic flow, adequate space for staff operations, and strategic placement of facilities like linen rooms, laundry areas, and electronic room status boards.

Redecoration Input: Decisions on room design are made, such as selecting durable, easy-to-clean materials (e.g., non-iron linens, stain-resistant fabrics) and furniture that balances aesthetics and functionality. For example, choosing neutral colour palettes with local cultural accents or eco-friendly materials like bamboo flooring to align with modern trends.

Key Tasks:

Finalize space allocation for housekeeping operations.

Plan room layouts to optimize cleaning efficiency and guest comfort.

Select fixtures and fittings (e.g., high-end bathroom tiles, energy-efficient lighting) that support both design and maintenance.

2. 12–18 Months Before Opening: Pre-Opening Preparations

Executive Housekeeper Appointment: The executive housekeeper is hired and begins collaborating with the general manager and other departments to refine plans.

Redecoration Focus: The housekeeper provides input on room decor to ensure it's practical for maintenance. For instance, choosing washable wall coverings or furniture with minimal dust traps.

Key Tasks:

Develop standard operating procedures (SOPs) for cleaning and room setup.

Plan staffing needs based on the number of rooms and expected occupancy.

Coordinate with suppliers for housekeeping equipment (e.g., vacuum cleaners, cleaning chemicals) and room amenities (e.g., linens, toiletries).

Ensure redecoration aligns with brand standards, such as incorporating local art or smart technology like voice-controlled lighting.

3. 6–12 Months Before Opening: Operational Setup

Staff Recruitment and Training: Begin hiring supervisors and room attendants, followed by training on cleaning standards, safety protocols, and brand-specific expectations.

Redecoration Completion: Finalize room decor, including installing furniture, artwork, and fixtures. Test lighting, HVAC, and smart systems to ensure functionality.

Key Tasks:

Procure and test housekeeping supplies and equipment.

Conduct mock room setups to train staff on arranging decor (e.g., bed making, towel folding, placement of amenities).

Inspect redecorated rooms for quality and maintenance feasibility.

4. 3–6 Months Before Opening: Pre-Opening Drills

Operational Readiness: Conduct trial runs of housekeeping operations, such as cleaning and turning down rooms, to identify gaps.

Redecoration Final Touches: Add personalized elements like welcome cards or local-themed decor (e.g., hand woven textiles or botanical prints) to enhance guest experience.

Key Tasks:

Finalize inventory for linens, uniforms, and cleaning supplies.

Train staff on handling guest requests, including special setups for romantic or themed stays.

Ensure all rooms are fully furnished and cleaned to opening standards.

5. 1–3 Months Before Opening: Final Preparations

Soft Opening Prep: Prepare for a soft opening by fully equipping rooms and public areas. Conduct thorough inspections to ensure every room meets cleanliness and design standards.

Redecoration Checks: Verify that decor elements (e.g., mirrors, artwork, curtains) are securely installed and visually appealing.

Key Tasks:

Stock rooms with amenities (e.g., toiletries, minibar items).

Perform deep cleaning and final touch-ups on decor.

Coordinate with other departments (e.g., front office, maintenance) for a cohesive opening.

6. Opening Day and Beyond

Launch Operations: Housekeeping staff execute daily cleaning, turndown services, and guest requests. Monitor feedback to refine processes.

Redecoration Maintenance: Regularly inspect decor for wear and tear, ensuring it remains fresh and functional.

Key Tasks:

Maintain high cleanliness standards.

Update decor periodically based on guest feedback and trends (e.g., adding sustainable elements or smart tech).

Practical Tips:

Budgeting: Prioritize high-impact redecoration (e.g., bedding, lighting) within

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

budget constraints.

Supplier Coordination: Work with reliable vendors to ensure timely delivery of decor and equipment.

Guest Feedback: Use pre-opening trials to gather input on room design and adjust accordingly.

SUMMARY

Interior decoration in hotels is a multidisciplinary approach that combines design, comfort, branding, and practical considerations to enhance the overall guest experience and operational efficiency.

It is a critical component of hotel housekeeping, aimed at enhancing the aesthetic appeal and functionality of guestrooms and public areas. Emphasis is placed on balancing aesthetics with practicality, ensuring spaces are visually appealing, comfortable, and easy to maintain. It emphasises to design guestrooms to optimize space, comfort, and functionality. This includes selecting appropriate furniture, lighting, and colour schemes to create a pleasant environment. It highlights the importance of colour palettes and lighting to set the mood and enhance the guest experience. Neutral, soothing tones and layered lighting (ambient, task, and accent) are recommended. The selection of durable, high-quality textiles (e.g., curtains, upholstery) and furnishings that complement the overall design theme is of utmost importance.

Regular Maintaining and updating interior decor to keep spaces modern and appealing is essential. This includes regular renovation and refreshing of guestrooms to meet changing trends and guest preferences. It addresses the importance of aligning interior decoration with the hotel's target market and operational needs, such as durability and ease of maintenance in high-traffic areas. Interior decoration is closely tied to housekeeping tasks, such as cleaning and maintaining decorative elements like carpets, curtains, and furniture to ensure they remain in pristine condition.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQ)

1. Illusion of height is obtained by
a. curved line   b. Diagonal line
c. Vertical line   d. Horizontal line

2. The principal which refers to unity is
a. Harmony   b. Emphasis
d. Proportion   c. Balance

3.The lighting that can result in high amount of glare is
a. semi direct lighting   b. direct lighting
c. indirect lighting   d. diffused lighting

4. A good structural design should be
a. well proportioned   b. simple and attractive
d. Both a and b   d. decorative

FILL IN THE BLANKS QUESTIONS

1. Heavy pieces of furniture should have ………..for mobility.
2. Face of a carpet is also called…………….
3. The process of restoring a property to its exact original design is called………
4. …………is a type of wall paper made using linseed oil and fillers that are bonded to backing paper.
5. Floorings can be classified as Hard Flooring. Semi-hard flooring and…………

TRUE AND FALSE QUESTIONS

1.Light requirement is based on the activity.
2.Tapesty is a type of flooring.
3.All colours have same reflective property.
4.Lines tend to divide space and create movement.
5.Rhythm through repetition tends to create a monotonous effect.
6.Bonsai is a functional accessory.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1. What are Terrazzo floorings.
2. What is value and intensity of colour.
3. What are resilient type of flooring.
4. Write a short note on care and maintaining of furniture.
5. What is emphasis? Explain with examples.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Explain the principles and elements of design in interior decoration.
2.List and explain activities that an executive housekeeper has to undertake three months prior to opening of a new property.
3 .Draw and explain the layout of a twin room in a five star hotel.
4. With the help of a colour wheel explain the various colour schemes.
5. How often should a refurbishment program be carried out in a five star

OPEN BOOK QUESTIONS

1. How do the principles of design (balance, harmony, rhythm, proportion, and emphasis) apply to the layout of a guest room? Provide examples for the same.

2. Discuss the different types of lighting (ambient, task, accent, and decorative) used in hotel interiors. How do these lighting types contribute to the overall guest experience in various hotel areas (e.g., lobby, guest room, restaurant).

ACTIVITY

1. Students will be divided in to small groups and visit different star –grade hotels and observe the interiors of the hotel and correlate the various aspects of interior decoration like colour schemes used, furniture, flooring used, wall finishes, lighting ,accessories in different areas of the hotel.

2. Students in small groups will visit a hotel to be pre opened shortly and list the activities undertaken by the executive house keeper.

--------------------END OF UNIT 2--------------------

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Unit-3

STORE MANAGEMENT & CONTRACT MANAGEMENT

Unit Overview

This unit provides a comprehensive understanding of essential back-end operations in the hospitality industry, focusing on store management, pest control, and contract services. It begins with the process flow of material management, covering the steps from indenting to purchasing, storage, and issuing, supported by effective record-keeping. Key principles and types of purchasing, along with the purchase cycle, are discussed in detail to ensure cost-effective and timely procurement. Store management is further extended to include the issuing of linen, laundry, and guest room supplies.

The unit also addresses pest control management, emphasizing the identification of common pests, recognizing infestation-prone areas within a hotel, and implementing preventive and curative treatments to maintain hygiene standards. Finally, the section on outsourcing and contract services highlights the growing need for outsourcing various hotel operations such as housekeeping, security, and maintenance. It outlines different types of outsourced jobs, guidelines for hiring on contract, pricing considerations, essential contract clauses, and the significance of Annual Maintenance Contracts (AMC). Overall, this unit equips learners with practical knowledge to manage resources efficiently, maintain service quality, and handle external service providers professionally.

Learning Objectives

SUB UNIT	LEARNING TOPICS	KEY LEARNING OUTCOMES / At the end of the sub- unit the learners will be able to
3.1 Store Management	• Indenting • Purchasing • Purchase principles • Types of purchasing • Purchase cycle • Purchase related documents • Housekeeping store layout • Process of issuing linen, laundry, and guest room supplies • Record keeping	1. Define indenting 2. Define purchasing 3. Explain the Purchase Principles 4. Outline the Types of purchasing 5. Explain the Purchase cycle 6. Describe the Store management 7. Explain the process of issuing linen, laundry, guest room supplies. 8. Implement proper Record keeping while purchasing and Issuing from stores
3.2 Pest Control Management	• Identification of Pests • Areas of Infestation • Prevention & Treatment	1. Identify the pests 2. Identify the areas of infestation in the hotel 3. Prevention & Treatment of Pests
3.3 Outsourcing/ Contract Services/Vendor Management	• Need for Outsourcing • Types of Outsourced Jobs • Steps in Hiring Contract Services • Guidelines for Vendor Management • Pricing & Contract Clauses • Annual Maintenance Contracts (AMC)	1. Describe the Need of contract services 2. Explain the types of outsourced jobs 3. Describe the Steps/guidelines involved when hiring on contract 4. Discuss the Pricing & Contract clauses 5. Explain the usage of Annual Maintenance Contract

3.1 STORE MANAGEMENT

In the hospitality industry, smooth functioning of day-to-day operations heavily relies on the timely availability of supplies, equipment, and resources. This process begins with understanding guest needs and ends with ensuring the correct items are issued and recorded properly. The hotel's purchase and store management system play a vital role in maintaining quality, minimizing wastage, and ensuring cost control.

The journey begins with an indent—a formal request for required items, which triggers the purchase process. This is governed by sound purchase principles and can involve various types of purchasing such as centralized, local, or emergency purchases. Once the items are procured following a purchase cycle, they are received and stored systematically to maintain quality and hygiene standards.

Proper storage ensures inventory safety, shelf-life maintenance, and organized access. This is followed by the issue process, where items such as linen, laundry supplies, and guest room amenities are distributed to the respective departments based on need and usage cycles.

At every stage, accurate record keeping is crucial. It ensures accountability, helps monitor usage trends, prevents pilferage, and supports internal audits. Overall, this chain of activities forms the backbone of effective materials management in hotel operations and directly impacts guest satisfaction and financial efficiency.

3.1.1. Indent

A formal request raised by different departments to the purchasing department for required items.

The purpose of indent is to ensure availability of supplies like linen, cleaning agents, toiletries, etc. It includes item name, quantity, urgency, department name, and date.

Advantages of Indenting in Hotel Store Management

Indenting is the formal process by which various hotel departments (like housekeeping, F&B, maintenance) request supplies from the central store. It ensures that the right items are requested, tracked, approved, and issued systematically. Here are the key advantages of indenting:

1. Efficient Inventory Control

- Prevents overstocking or understocking.
- Helps monitor what items are being used, how frequently, and by which department.

2. Improved Budget Management
- Departments can plan their purchases in advance.
- Prevents unnecessary purchases and keeps track of expenses.

3. Clear Communication Between Departments
- Ensures that requests are officially recorded and communicated to the store.
- Reduces dependency on verbal or informal requests.

4. Accountability & Transparency
- Each indent form has signatures and timestamps, making it easy to trace who requested what and when.
- Helps in auditing and verification.

5. Standardization of Operations
- Indenting follows a standard format, making processes more systematic and professional.
- Reduces confusion and errors during issuing of items.

6. Better Forecasting and Reordering
- Helps the store team analyze consumption trends.
- Supports planning for bulk purchases or seasonal demands.

7. Reduces Wastage
- Only required quantities are issued based on verified indent requests.
- Avoids hoarding or misuse of items by departments.

8. Supports Recordkeeping & Documentation
- Acts as a written record for internal control and compliance.
- Useful for future references, stock audits, and financial reviews.

A typical indent form is shown below:

HOTEL NAME

Housekeeping Department

INDENT FORM

Indent No.	HK/IND/2025/___	Date:	___/___/2025
Requested By:	Housekeeping Supervisor	Approved By:	Executive Housekeeper

Item Details

S. No.	Item Name	Item Code	Unit	Quantity Required	Purpose/Remarks
1	Bath Towels	HK-001	Dozen	5	For guest room replacement
2	Floor Cleaner (Liquid)	HK-023	Litres	10	Daily floor cleaning

Remarks (if any):

Requested by: Approved by:

(Signature)_____   (Signature)_____

Name:_____   Name:_____

Designation:_____   Designation:_____

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

3.1.2. Purchasing

Purchasing in hotel management refers to the process of acquiring goods and services required for the smooth functioning of the hotel. These goods include food and beverages, housekeeping supplies, linen, engineering equipment, furniture, and more. Effective purchasing in hotel management ensures:

• Guest satisfaction through consistent service and quality.
• Cost-efficiency for hotel operations.
• Smooth inter-departmental functioning.
• Compliance with health, safety, and legal norms.

3.1.2.1 Purchase Principles

To achieve the above objectives the purchase department follows few principles which could be listed as follows:

Principle of Right Quality

• The quality of materials purchased should match the standards required by the hotel (e.g., 3-star, 5-star).
• **Example:** A 5-star hotel would require high-quality linen (e.g., 300+ thread count), while a budget hotel may accept standard quality.
• Regular quality checks, supplier audits, and sample approvals are essential.

Principle of Right Quantity

• Purchase the exact amount needed based on usage, occupancy rate, and storage capacity.
• Over-purchasing leads to wastage, especially in perishable goods like fruits, vegetables, and dairy.
• Under-purchasing may cause service disruption or guest dissatisfaction.
• Tools used:
• Daily requisition forms
• Par stock levels
• Inventory control systems

Principle of Right Price

• Price should be reasonable, based on market rate and negotiated terms.
• Comparison of quotes (minimum three quotations) before final selection.
• Always consider the cost-to-quality ratio.

• **Example:** Buying high-quality bulk rice for the restaurant at wholesale rates rather than MRP.

Principle of Right Source

• Select reliable and approved suppliers who can deliver consistent quality on time.
• Criteria for selection: Reputation, delivery capacity, financial stability, and hygiene certifications.
• Maintain a list of Approved Vendors.
• **Tip:** Develop long-term relationships with trusted suppliers for better rates and priority service.

Principle of Right Time

• Goods should be purchased and delivered exactly when required.
• Helps in maintaining freshness (especially for F&B).
• Avoids overstocking and understocking.
• **Method:**
• Use of Just-in-Time (JIT) purchasing technique for perishables.
• Weekly/monthly procurement schedules based on demand forecast.

Principle of Right Place

• Goods must be delivered to the correct receiving location (usually the receiving bay or stores department).
• Ensures efficient handling and reduces internal logistics costs.
• **Example:** Vegetables delivered directly to the main kitchen or the F&B store.

Principle of Right Method

• Use standardized procedures for procurement to avoid confusion and maintain records.
• Follow the hotel's Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) for purchases.
• **Steps:**
• Indent raised by user department
• Approval from the purchasing manager
• Vendor selection and order placement
• Delivery and inspection
• Storage and documentation

Principle of Cost Control

• Aim to minimize total cost without compromising quality or guest experience.
• Includes cost of purchasing, transportation, storage, and handling.

• Regular cost audits and supplier evaluation reports help in controlling unnecessary expenses.

Principle of Ethics and Transparency

• All procurement activities should be fair, transparent, and free of bias.
• Avoid favouritism, bribery, or any form of conflict of interest.
• Maintain documentation for every transaction.

Principle of Legal Compliance

• Ensure that goods comply with health, safety, hygiene, and taxation laws.
• Purchase from licensed vendors only.
• Necessary documentation: Purchase orders, delivery notes, tax invoices, FSSAI license (for food items), etc.

Principle of Sustainability and Eco-friendliness

• Choose vendors who provide sustainable products and eco-friendly packaging.
• Helps the hotel fulfill its corporate social responsibility (CSR) goals and attract eco-conscious guests.
• Example: Buying biodegradable cleaning supplies or organic produce.

Principle of Technology Integration

• Use of Property Management Systems (PMS), ERP systems, or e-procurement platforms for efficient purchase management.
• Automates inventory levels, reorder points, and generates reports for better decision-making.

3.1.2.2. Types Of Purchasing:

According to the type of organisation department and the type of product the purchasing would be done in any of the following forms:

1. Centralized Purchasing

A system where a central purchase department handles all procurement for the entire hotel or for a group of hotels (in a hotel chain). In Centralized Purchasing-

One department manages purchasing for all units or departments (e.g., F&B, Housekeeping, Maintenance).

Common in large hotels or hotel chains.

Advantages:

- Bulk purchasing leads to better discounts.
- Standardization of quality and processes.
- Better inventory control and record-keeping.
- Stronger negotiation power with vendors.

Disadvantages:

- Slower process in case of urgent requirements.
- Less flexibility for individual departments.
- Risk of communication gaps.

Figure: Types of purchases

Example:

In a 5-star hotel chain like Taj Hotels, the central corporate office may handle purchasing of linen, toiletries, and furniture for all its properties.

2. Decentralized Purchasing

Each individual department or hotel unit is responsible for managing its own purchasing needs.
This Type of purchasing is generally used in standalone hotels, small properties, or for specialized departments (e.g., Spa, Bakery).

Advantages:
- Faster decision-making.
- Departments can choose items suited to their specific needs.
- Useful for unique or region-specific items.

Disadvantages:
- Lack of standardization.
- Higher costs due to smaller purchase quantities.
- Difficult to monitor and control expenses across departments.

Example:

A small boutique hotel may allow its kitchen and housekeeping departments to independently source items from local markets.

3. Local Purchase

Purchasing of goods from nearby local vendors, usually for urgent or perishable requirements. This type of purchase is often unplanned or made in emergency situations. It is commonly observed in purchase of F&B supplies like vegetables, fruits, dairy, etc.

Advantages:
• Quick response to urgent needs.
• Fresher items (especially for food ingredients).
• Helps build local vendor relationships.

Disadvantages:
• Usually at a higher cost.
• Inconsistent quality and lack of long-term reliability.
• Difficult to maintain proper documentation and records.

Example:
If the hotel's main vegetable supplier fails to deliver, the chef may buy vegetables from the local market to meet the day's menu requirements.

4. Rate Contract Purchasing

An agreement between the hotel and a supplier where prices are fixed for certain items for a specific period (e.g., monthly, quarterly).
It is often used for frequently consumed items like toiletries, cleaning agents, or linen.
Contract includes price, delivery terms, quality standards, and duration.

Advantages:
• Price stability over a period.
• Simplifies the purchasing process—no need to get quotes every time.
• Ensures a consistent supply of goods.

Disadvantages:
• If market prices fall, the hotel may still be bound to higher contract rates.
• Limited flexibility to switch suppliers during the contract period.

Example:
A hotel may sign a 6-month rate contract with a toiletries supplier for shampoo, soap, and lotion, at a fixed rate.

Type Of Purchase	Best For	Speed	Cost Efficiency	Control
Centralized	Large hotels/hotel chains	Medium	Bulk rates / highly efficient	High (bulk rates)
Decentralized	Small or independent hotels	High	Medium	Medium
Local	Emergencies, perishables	Very high	Low	Low
Rate contract	Frequently used items (F&B;, laundry)	High	Highly efficient	High (stable rates)

Table: Comparison of Types of Purchases

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

3.1.2.3 Purchase Cycle:

The purchase cycle is the complete process that a business follows to acquire goods or services, from identifying the need to final payment and record-keeping. In the hotel industry, especially in departments like housekeeping, the purchase cycle ensures that the required items (such as linen, cleaning supplies, toiletries, etc.) are procured in a timely, cost-effective, and quality-assured manner. The purchase cycle, also known as the procurement cycle, outlines the steps a business or organization takes to acquire goods or services. It's a systematic process designed to ensure efficiency, cost-effectiveness, and timely acquisition of necessary resources. Department Heads (e.g., Executive Chef, Housekeeping Supervisor, Maintenance Manager) and Storekeepers (who monitor stock levels) are involved in the process. An efficient Purchase Cycle in Hotels:

Image: Steps in Purchase Cycle

✓ Ensures uninterrupted hotel operations.
✓ Controls cost and avoid wastage.
✓ Maintains consistency in quality and service.
✓ Helps in budgeting and cost forecasting.
✓ Ensures compliance with legal and audit norms.

The steps involved in the purchase cycle are:

---

1. Identifying Need: This is the initial stage where a department or individual within the organization recognizes a requirement for goods or services. This need can arise from various factors, such as:
- Depletion of existing stock
- New projects or initiatives
- Maintenance or repair requirements
- Anticipated future demand

Process: The identification of need typically involves:
- ➤ **Assessment:** Evaluating the necessity and urgency of the requirement.
- ➤ **Specification:** Defining the specific characteristics, quantity, and quality of the required goods or services. This might involve creating a detailed specification document.
- ➤ **Authorization:** Obtaining necessary approvals from relevant authorities within the organization to proceed with the purchase.

2. Raising Indent: Once the need is identified and approved, the requesting department formally communicates this requirement to the purchasing department by raising a purchase requisition, often referred to as an "indent."

Process:
- ➤ **Documentation:** The indent is usually a standardized internal document (either physical or electronic) that includes details such as:
- ➤ Description of the required items or services
- ➤ Quantity required
- ➤ Desired delivery date
- ➤ Department or cost center requesting the purchase
- ➤ Any specific instructions or requirements
- ➤ **Submission:** The completed indent is submitted to the purchasing department for further processing.

---

3. Vendor Selection: The purchasing department is now responsible for identifying and selecting suitable vendors who can supply the required goods or services.
Process: This stage often involves:
> **Vendor Identification:** Identifying potential suppliers through various means, such as:
> Existing vendor database
> Market research
> Trade directories and publications
> Online searches
> Referrals
> **Vendor Evaluation:** Assessing the capabilities, reliability, reputation, financial stability, and past performance of potential vendors.
> **Request for Information (RFI):** If necessary, sending out RFIs to gather more detailed information about vendors' offerings and capabilities.
> **Request for Quotation (RFQ) or Request for Proposal (RFP):** Soliciting price quotations (RFQ for standard goods) or detailed proposals (RFP for complex services or projects) from shortlisted vendors.

4. Negotiation & Order Placement: After evaluating the quotations or proposals, the purchasing department engages in negotiations with the selected vendor(s) to finalize the terms and conditions of the purchase. Once an agreement is reached, a purchase order (PO) is issued.
Process:
> **Negotiation:** Discussing aspects such as:
> Price
> Payment terms
> Delivery schedule
> Quality standards
> Warranty and service conditions
> Legal terms
> **Order Placement:** Formalizing the purchase agreement by issuing a purchase order to the chosen vendor.
The PO is a legally binding document that outlines:
 • Details of the goods or services being ordered
 • Quantity
 • Agreed-upon price
 • Delivery date and location
 • Payment terms
 • Other relevant terms and conditions

5. Receiving and Inspection: This stage involves the physical receipt of the ordered goods from the vendor and their inspection to ensure they match the specifications outlined in the purchase order.
Process:
> **Receipt:** The receiving department verifies the delivery against the purchase order and delivery documents.
> **Inspection:** The received goods are inspected for:
> **Quantity:** Ensuring the correct number of items has been received.
> **Quality:** Checking for any damage, defects, or deviations from the specified quality standards.
> **Specifications:** Verifying that the goods meet the required technical or functional specifications.
> **Documentation:** A receiving report is typically prepared to document the goods received and the outcome of the inspection. Discrepancies or damages are noted and reported.

6. Payment & Record Keeping: This final stage involves processing the vendor's invoice for payment and maintaining accurate records of the entire purchase transaction.
Process:
> **Invoice Verification:** The accounts payable department matches the vendor's invoice with the purchase order and the receiving report to ensure accuracy in terms of quantity, price, and other details. This is often referred to as the "three-way match."
> **Payment Processing:** Once the invoice is verified, payment is made to the vendor according to the agreed-upon payment terms. This can involve various methods like checks, electronic fund transfers, etc.
Record Keeping: Maintaining comprehensive records of all documents related to the purchase, including:
 ✓ Purchase requisitions
 ✓ Vendor quotations
 ✓ Purchase orders
 ✓ Receiving reports
 ✓ Invoices

✓ Payment Records
✓ Vendor Performance Evaluations

3.1.2.4. Purchase Related Documents

DO YOU KNOW?

In the housekeeping department of a hotel, several purchase-related documents need to be properly maintained to ensure smooth operations, accountability, and audit readiness. These documents help in tracking requisitions, approvals, deliveries, and usage. Below is a list of essential documents:

1. Indent Form / Requisition Slip	6. Invoice/Bill
2. Purchase Requisition Form	7. Stock Register / Inventory Log
3. Purchase Order (PO)	8. Issue Slip / Material Issue Note
4. Goods Received Note (GRN)	9. Vendor List
5. Delivery Challan	10. Purchase Register

1.Indent Form / Requisition Slip: Raised by the housekeeping department to request items from the store or to initiate a purchase. It includes item details, quantity, purpose, and authorization.

Housekeeping Indent Form

Indent No.	HK/IND/2025/___		Date: ___ / ___ / 2025
Department: Housekeeping	Requested By: _____		

S. No.	Item Name	Unit	Quantity Required	Purpose/Remarks
1	Bath Towels	Dozen	5	Guest room use
2	Room Freshener	Bottles	10	Daily replenishment

Approved by:
(Signature) _____
Name: _____
Designation: _____

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

2. Purchase Requisition Form:
Formal request sent to the purchase department from housekeeping when new stock or non-routine items are needed.

Purchase Requisition Form
HOTEL NAME
Purchase Requisition Form

| PR No.: HK/PR/2025/___ | Date: ____/____/2025 |
| Requested by: Housekeeping Supervisor | Required by Date: ____/____/2025 |

S. No.	Item Description	Quantity	Justification
1	Pillow Covers	100 pcs	Shortage in guest rooms
2	Mop Heads	20	Old stock worn out

Approved by:

(Signature) _____

Department Head: _____

Purchase Manager: _____

3. Purchase Order (PO):
Issued by the purchase department to the vendor. It contains item details, price, quantity, terms, and delivery date. A copy is shared with housekeeping for reference.

Purchase Order (PO)

HOTEL NAME

Purchase Order

PO No.: HK/PO/2025/___	Date: ____/____/2025
Vendor Name:	
Delivery Address: Hotel Stores Dept.	

S. No.	Item Name	Qty	Unit Price	Total Amount
1	Room Freshener	10	100	1,000
2	Laundry Bags	200	5	1,000

Terms:
• Delivery by: ____
• Payment Terms: Net 30
• Approved by: _____

Figure: Purchase Order

4. Goods Received Note (GRN):
Prepared when items are received. It confirms the quantity and quality of items received. It is cross-verified with the PO and invoice.

Goods Received Note (GRN)
HOTEL NAME
Goods Received Note

GRN No.: HK/GRN/2025/___	Date: ___ / ___ / 2025
PO Ref No.:	

S. No.	Item Name	Qty Ordered	Qty Received	Remarks
1	Mop Heads	20	20	In good condition

Checked by (Stores):   Verified by (Housekeeping):

(Signature) _____   (Signature) _____

5. Delivery Challan: It is a Document sent by the vendor along with the goods. Verified and signed upon receipt of items by the receiving department.

Delivery Challan
Vendor Name: XYZ Supplies
Delivery Challan

Challan No.: XYZ/DC/2025/___	Date: ____ / ____ /2025
Delivered To: Hotel Housekeeping Dept.	

S. No.	Item Description	Quantity
1	Glass Cleaner	24
2	Garbage Bags	500

Receiver's Signature: _____

Figure: Delivery Challan

6. Invoice/Bill: It is Sent by the supplier for payment. Must match the PO and GRN before processing payment.

Figure: Invoice Bill

Invoice/Bill
Vendor Invoice

Invoice No.: INV/2025/___	Date: ____ / ____ / 2025
Billed To: Hotel Purchase Dept.	

Item Name	Qty	Rate	Total
Disinfectant	10	150	1500
Air Freshener	6	80	480

Total: 1,980
GST: 356.40
Grand Total: 2,336.40

7. Stock Register / Inventory Log: Records daily issue and receipt of items in housekeeping. It helps in stock control and monitoring usage patterns.

Stock Register Format						
HOTEL NAME						
Housekeeping Stock Register						
Date	Item Name	Opening Stock	Received	Issued	Closing Stock	Remarks
01/06/2025	Floor Cleaner	15 L	10 L	8 L	17 L	OK

8. Issue Slip / Material Issue Note: Used when items are issued from the store to housekeeping staff. Signed by both issuing and receiving personnel.

Material Issue Slip
HOTEL NAME
Material Issue Note

Issue No.: HK/MI/2025/___	Date: ___/___/2025
Issued To: Room Attendant XYZ	

S. No.	Item Name	Quantity	Remarks
1	Toilet Cleaner	2 L	Daily Duty Use

Issued by: _____   Received by: _____

9. Vendor List: Approved list of suppliers with contact details, pricing, and supply history.

Approved Vendor List Format				
HOTEL NAME				
Approved Vendor List – Housekeeping Supplies				
Vendor Name	Item Supplied	Contact Person	Phone No.	Approved Rate Validity
ABC Traders	Cleaning Supplies	Mr. Sharma	9876543210	Until Dec 2025
XYZ Distributors	Linen & Laundry Bags	Ms. Patel	9123456780	Until Mar 2026

10. Purchase Register: Maintains a record of all purchases made, including dates, vendors, item details, and costs.

Purchase Register						
HOTEL NAME						
Housekeeping Purchase Register						
Date	PO No.	Item Name	Quantity	Vendor	Amount	Invoice No.
02/06/2025	HK/PO/132	Air Freshener	12	ABC Traders	960	INV/236

3.1.3. HOUSEKEEPING STORES LAYOUT

A well-designed housekeeping store aims to ensure efficiency, security, and accessibility in managing inventory and supplies. It is typically divided into specific zones to support organization and smooth daily operations. Below is an outline of the key functional areas within a housekeeping store:

Figure: Areas within a housekeeping store

Figure: Housekeeping Store

Figure: Floor Pantry

1. CLEANING SUPPLIES SECTION

Location: This area is kept separate from other storage zones to prevent cross-contamination and ensure safe handling.

Key Features:

✓ Shelving units with clearly labelled containers for storing chemicals and cleaning agents.

✓ A designated cabinet or zone for hazardous substances, if required.

Purpose: To safely store cleaning products and tools in an organized manner for easy access by housekeeping staff.

2. EQUIPMENT STORAGE AREA

Location: Usually situated adjacent to the cleaning supplies section or in a separate space designed for bulky equipment.

Key Features:

✓ Floor space for vacuum cleaners, polishers, scrubbers, and laundry carts.

✓ Electrical outlets may be provided for recharging battery-operated equipment.

Purpose: To store, maintain, and access cleaning machinery and tools in a secure and orderly manner.

3. LINEN STORAGE ROOM

Location: Ideally positioned close to the laundry or within a centralized housekeeping area.

Key Features:

✓ Shelves or racks designated for storing clean linen separately from soiled items.

✓ May include a space for sorting and preparing linen bundles.

Purpose: To manage inventory of linen such as bedsheets, towels, and staff uniforms, ensuring proper rotation and storage.

4. GUEST SUPPLIES STORAGE

Location: Placed conveniently to facilitate quick restocking of guest room amenities.

Key Features:
✓ Shelving units to organize toiletries, tissues, slippers, stationery, and minibar items.
✓ Labelled storage areas for categorizing different supplies.

Purpose: To provide organized storage of guest amenities, enabling staff to restock rooms efficiently.

5. FLOOR PANTRIES / MAID'S SERVICE ROOMS

Location: Located on each guest floor, ideally near service elevators for easy access.

Key Features:
✓ Equipped with a water supply, sink, and essential storage for cleaning materials, linen, and guest supplies.
✓ Dedicated space for floor-specific housekeeping operations.

Purpose: To serve as a convenient base for room attendants, improving speed and efficiency during daily service rounds.

General considerations while designing housekeeping stores:

➢ **Security:** The housekeeping store should remain locked when not in use to prevent unauthorized access and inventory loss.

➢ **Organization:** Proper labelling, categorization, and shelving systems ensure quick retrieval and minimize errors.

➢ **Cleanliness:** Routine cleaning and inspection help maintain hygiene and reduce the risk of pests.

➢ **Accessibility:** A clutter-free layout with wide aisles allows easy movement for staff and equipment.

➢ **Safety:** Clear signage, proper chemical storage, and adherence to safety protocols are essential to prevent accidents.

3.1.4. PROCESS OF ISSUING LINEN, LAUNDRY, AND GUEST ROOM SUPPLIES

Efficient issuing of supplies from the housekeeping store ensures smooth operations, maintains inventory control, and supports consistent guest service quality. The process typically follows these steps:

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

1. Requisition/Request Raised

• Housekeeping staff (floor supervisors, linen room attendants, etc.) identify the need for linen, laundry items, or guest room supplies.
• A Requisition Slip or Indent Form is filled, specifying the item names, quantities required, and purpose.
• The form is signed by the requester and authorized by the Executive Housekeeper or Supervisor.

2. Verification of Stock

• The storekeeper checks current stock levels in the inventory or stock register.
• The request is compared against issued quantities from previous days to monitor overuse or wastage.

3. Approval & Authorization

• If the requisition is within the allowable limits, the storekeeper proceeds.
• For larger or unusual quantities, approval may be sought from the housekeeping manager or purchase.

4. Issuing of Items

• Items are retrieved from their respective storage areas.
• Linen Room: Bed sheets, pillow covers, towels, etc.
• Laundry Supplies: Uniforms, bags, laundry tags.
• Guest Supplies Section: Toiletries, tea kits, slippers, tissues, etc.
• The requested items are counted, inspected, and handed over to the staff. department.

5. Documentation

The issue is recorded in the Material Issue Register or entered into a digital inventory system. Details include:

• Date
• Requisition number
• Item name
• Quantity issued
• Recipient name/signature
• Issuer (storekeeper) signature

6. Acknowledgement

• The receiving staff signs the register or digital tablet confirming they have received the correct items.
• A duplicate copy of the issue slip may be sent to the accounts or housekeeping control room for verification.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

7. Regular Returns & Replenishment (Laundry & Linen)

• Used linen is returned to laundry and after cleaning, fresh linen is reissued.
• Damaged or discarded linen is logged in a damage/discard register and reported for replenishment through purchase.

To conduct the above processes smoothly and efficiently few documents/ formats need to be maintained either manually or digitally using PMS. These could be:

1. Linen & Laundry Issue Register

Date	Item Name	Opening Balance	Quantity Issued	Balance	Issued To	Signature
17/06/2025	Bedsheets (Single)	200	50	150	Floor Supervisor	[Sign]

2. Guest Room supplies issue sheet

Date	Item	Unit	Qty Required	Qty Issued	Issued To	Room Nos.	Remarks
17/06/2025	Shampoo (30ml)	Nos	50	50	HK Attendant 1	101-110	OK

3. Housekeeping requisition slip

To: Store Department
From: Housekeeping
Date: 17/06/2025

Sr. No	Item Description	Unit	Quantity Required	Purpose
1	Bath Towels	Nos	40	Guest Rooms

Approved by: Executive Housekeeper
Received by: Housekeeping Supervisor
Store In-charge Signature:

4. Monthly linen stock report

Item	Opening Stock	Received	Issued	Damaged/Discarded	Closing Stock
Bed Sheets (King)	300	50	100	10	240
Pillow Covers	500	0	200	20	280

5. Damaged or discard register

To record damaged or unusable items that need to be discarded or repaired.

S.No.	Date	Item Name	Qty.	Unit	Reason	Reported By	Approved By	Final Method	Remarks

Tips:

- Maintain registers physically or digitally.
- Review regularly by the housekeeping supervisor or executive.
- Use NCR (non-carbon required) copies if approvals and physical signatures are needed.
- Align formats with hotel audit or finance department requirements.

Check Back Questions:

Q1. Why is it important to follow the "Right Source" principle in hotel purchasing, especially for perishable items? What could be the long-term consequences of ignoring this principle?

Q2. In what ways does the proper design of a housekeeping store contribute to guest satisfaction, even though guests never directly see it?

CASELET: The Executive Housekeeper at a 5-star hotel notices a sudden shortage of high-thread-count bedsheets on a busy weekend. The floor supervisor submits a requisition slip requesting 100 bedsheets. However, the storekeeper finds only 20 bedsheets available in the linen storage.
Questions:
a) What type of purchase method should the hotel use to solve this issue quickly?
b) What process should be followed before issuing the available bedsheets?

3.2 PEST CONTROL MANAGEMENT

Effective pest control is paramount in the hospitality industry. A pest infestation can severely damage:

- A hotel's reputation
- Lead to negative guest experiences
- Financial losses and
- Even regulatory action

A comprehensive pest control management plan involves: -

- Accurate pest identification
- Diligent monitoring of infestation areas
- Robust preventative measures and
- Timely & effective treatment

Here's a detailed breakdown of these critical aspects:

3.2.1. Identifying Common Hotel Pests

Recognizing the specific type of pest is the first crucial step in effective control. Different pests require different management strategies. Common culprits in hotel environments include:

1. INSECTS

Source: https://www.orkin.com

Bed Bugs (*Cimex lectularius*): Small, reddish-brown, oval-shaped insects that feed on human blood. They are notoriously difficult to eliminate and are a primary concern for hotels.
• Signs: Live or dead bed bugs, shed skins (exoskeletons), tiny dark fecal spots, and itchy red welts on guests' skin.

Source: https://www.orionpest.com

Cockroaches (various species, e.g., German Cockroach, American Cockroach, Oriental Cockroach): Vary in size and color, but generally are flat, oval-shaped insects with long antennae.
• Signs: Live or dead cockroaches, droppings, egg casings, musty odors, and smear marks along walls or in corners.

Ants (various species, e.g., Pharaoh Ants, Carpenter Ants, Odorous House Ants): Social insects that enter buildings for food and water.
• Signs: Visible ant trails, nests, and contaminated food items.

Source: *https://www.businessinsider.com*	**Flies (various species, e.g., House Flies, Fruit Flies, Drain Flies):** Common nuisance pests that can transmit diseases. • Signs: Adult flies, maggots (larvae), pupae, and spotting (fly specks) on surfaces. Fruit flies are often found around fermenting matter, while drain flies congregate near drains.
Source: *https://storedgrain.com.au*	**Stored Product Pests (e.g., Indian Meal Moths, Weevils, Flour Beetles):** Infest dried food products like grains, cereals, nuts, and spices. • Signs: Adult insects in or around food storage areas, larvae (caterpillars or grubs) in food packages, webbing in food products (moths), and damaged packaging. **Fleas:** Small, wingless, dark-brown insects that feed on the blood of mammals and birds. Often brought in by guests with pets or by rodents. • Signs: Adult fleas jumping, flea dirt (small, dark specks of dried blood) on pet bedding or carpets, and itchy bites, usually around the ankles. **Mosquitoes:** Flying insects that breed in standing water and whose females bite to consume blood. • Signs: Adult mosquitoes, buzzing sounds, and itchy bites. Larvae may be visible in standing water.
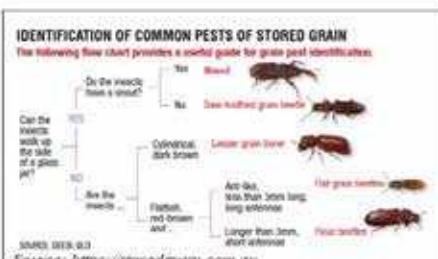
2. RODENTS

Mice (e.g., House Mouse): Small, slender rodents with large ears and long, thin tails. • Signs: Droppings (small, spindle-shaped), gnaw marks, nests, tracks, musky odors, scratching or scurrying sounds.	*Source: https://takecaretermite.com*
Rats (e.g., Norway Rat, Roof Rat): Larger than mice, with coarser fur and thicker or longer tails. • Signs: Larger droppings, gnaw marks, burrows, grease marks, tracks, runways, and sounds. **Birds (e.g., Pigeons, Sparrows, Starlings):** Can become pests when they roost or nest in hotel buildings. • Signs: Roosting, droppings, feathers, nesting materials, noise, secondary infestations of bird mites.	*Source: https://www.britannica.com/animal/bandicoot-rat*

3. OTHER PESTS

Spiders: While many are harmless and beneficial, some can bite, and their webs can be unsightly. **Silverfish:** Small, wingless insects with a silvery appearance that feed on paper, glue, and fabrics. **Termites:** Wood-destroying insects that can cause significant structural damage, critical for building integrity.	

3.2.2. Areas Of Infestation in The Hotel

Pests can be found in virtually any area of a hotel, but certain locations are more prone to infestations due to factors like food availability, moisture, harbourage, and high traffic.

Guest Rooms:

• **Beds and Bedding:** Prime location for bed bugs (mattress seams, box springs, headboards, bed frames).

• **Furniture:** Sofas, chairs, nightstands, dressers (bed bugs, cockroaches, spiders).

• **Luggage Racks:** Common transfer point for bed bugs.

• **Closets:** Can harbor various insects.

• **Bathrooms:** Cockroaches (around pipes, drains, toilets), silverfish, drain flies.

• **Mini-bars & Coffee Stations:** Ants, cockroaches, fruit flies if not kept clean.

• **Behind Wall Hangings & Mirrors:** Bed bugs, spiders.

• **Carpet Edges & Underneath Loose Wallpaper:** Bed bugs, carpet beetles.

FUN FACTS

- COCKROACHES are FAST RUNNERS They can run up to 3 miles per hour, making them difficult to catch.
- Cockroaches are ATTRACTED TO BEER, likely due to the sugar and hops.
- RATS are susceptible to peer pressure, similar to humans.
- RATS despite popular belief, rats don't particularly like cheese.
- SPIDERS have blue blood due to the presence of hemocyanin, a copper-based protein, instead of iron-based haemoglobin found in humans.
- SPIDER SILK is incredibly strong, with some types being stronger than steel of the same thickness.
- BED BUGS can consume up to seven times their body weight in blood during a single feeding.

Food and Beverage Areas:

- **Kitchens (Main & Satellite):** High risk for cockroaches, rodents, flies, ants, and stored product pests due to food preparation, storage, and waste.
- **Specific spots:** Drains, under appliances, behind equipment, in cracks and crevices, food storage areas (pantries, refrigerators, freezers), dishwashing areas.
- **Restaurants & Dining Rooms:** Flies, ants, cockroaches (especially around serving stations, under tables, and near spillage areas).
- **Bars:** Fruit flies, flies, ants, cockroaches (around drink dispensers, spillage areas, under counters).
- **Room Service Areas:** Cockroaches, ants, flies.
- **Vending Machine Areas:** Ants, cockroaches.

Back-of-House & Service Areas:

- **Laundry Rooms:** Bed bugs (can travel on linens), cockroaches, ants (due to moisture and warmth).
- **Linen Closets:** Bed bugs, silverfish.
- **Storage Rooms:** Rodents, cockroaches, stored product pests, spiders.
- **Loading Docks & Delivery Areas:** Entry point for rodents, cockroaches, flies, and other pests arriving with shipments.
- **Waste Disposal Areas (Dumpsters & Trash Chutes):** Major attractant for flies, rodents, cockroaches, and ants.
- **Employee Locker Rooms & Break Rooms:** Cockroaches, ants, bed bugs (can be brought in on employee belongings).
- **Mechanical & Electrical Rooms:** Rodents (seeking warmth and shelter), cockroaches.
- **Pool & Spa Areas:** Mosquitoes (standing water), flies, ants, cockroaches (in changing rooms and around drains).

Exterior & Grounds:

- **Landscaping:** Rodents (burrowing), ants, mosquitoes (breeding in standing water), termites.
- **Building Perimeter:** Entry points for rodents, ants, cockroaches. Check for cracks in foundations, gaps around pipes and utility lines.
- **Outdoor Dining Areas:** Flies, ants, mosquitoes, wasps.
- **Roof Voids & Attics:** Rodents, birds, insects.
- **Parking Garages:** Rodents, cockroaches.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Common Areas:

- Lobbies & Reception Areas: Flies, ants, occasional cockroaches or bed bugs (brought in by guests).
- Hallways: Can serve as pathways for pests moving between rooms.
- Elevators & Stairwells: Can harbor various pests.
- Fitness Centers: Ants, cockroaches (in locker rooms or near water sources).
- Business Centers: Occasional insects.

3.2.3. Prevention & Treatment

A proactive and integrated approach is key to successful pest management in hotels. This involves combining preventative measures with effective and

A. Prevention (Proactive Measures)

Prevention is the most cost-effective and sustainable long-term strategy.

1. Exclusion & Sealing:

a. Inspect and Seal Entry Points:

- ✓ Regularly inspect the building exterior and interior for cracks, crevices, gaps around pipes, vents, windows, and doors.
- ✓ Use caulk, weather stripping, screens, and door sweeps to seal these openings.

b. Maintain Building Structure:

- ✓ Repair damaged screens, windows, and doors promptly.
- ✓ Ensure proper drainage away from the building foundation.

c. Screen Vents & Openings:

- ✓ Install screens on vents, chimneys, and other openings to prevent entry by birds and larger insects.

2. Sanitation & Housekeeping:

a. Rigorous Cleaning Schedules:

- ✓ Implement and enforce strict cleaning protocols for all areas, especially guest rooms, kitchens, dining areas, and waste disposal zones.
- ✓ Proper Waste Management:
- ✓ Use sealed, pest-proof trash containers.
- ✓ Empty trash frequently (multiple times a day in high-traffic/food areas).
- ✓ Keep dumpster areas clean, well-maintained, and located away from building entrances. Ensure lids are always closed.
- ✓ Clean trash chutes regularly.

b. Food Storage:

✓ Store all food items in sealed, pest-proof containers.
✓ Practice First-In, First-Out (FIFO) stock rotation.
✓ Regularly inspect food storage areas for signs of pests.
✓ Clean up spills immediately and thoroughly.

c. Drain Maintenance:

✓ Regularly clean drains to prevent buildup of organic matter that attracts flies and cockroaches.
✓ Use drain cleaners or bio-enzymatic products.

d. Declutter:

✓ Minimize clutter in storage rooms, service areas, and back-of-house to reduce harbourage sites.

e. Linen Management:

✓ Inspect incoming laundry for bed bugs.
✓ Wash linens at high temperatures.
✓ Store clean linens in sealed bags or containers.

3. Inspection & Monitoring:

a. Regular Inspections:

✓ Conduct routine inspections (daily, weekly, monthly depending on the area and risk) by trained staff or a professional pest control service.
✓ Focus on high-risk areas.

b. Staff Training:

✓ Train all hotel staff (especially housekeeping, maintenance, and kitchen staff) to identify common pests and signs of infestation and to report them immediately.

c. Monitoring Devices:

✓ Use sticky traps, pheromone traps, and rodent bait stations (non-toxic monitoring blocks initially) in strategic locations to detect pest activity early.

✓ Keep detailed records of trap findings.

d. Guest Feedback:

✓ Take all guest complaints about pests seriously and investigate them promptly and thoroughly.

e.Incoming Goods Inspection:

✓ Inspect deliveries (food, linens, furniture) for pests before bringing them into the hotel.

4. Habitat Modification:

a. Moisture Control:

✓ Repair leaks in pipes, roofs, and HVAC systems promptly.
✓ Ensure good ventilation to reduce humidity, especially in kitchens, laundry rooms, and bathrooms.

b. Landscaping Management:

✓ Keep vegetation trimmed away from the building.
✓ Avoid dense ground cover near the foundation. Eliminate standing water sources (e.g., in clogged gutters, empty containers, decorative ponds without proper circulation) to reduce mosquito breeding sites.

c. Lighting:

✓ Use sodium vapor or yellow bug lights for exterior lighting where appropriate, as these are less attractive to some flying insects.

5. Supplier & Vendor Management:

✓ Work with reputable suppliers who have their own pest control programs in place.
✓ Establish protocols for incoming goods to minimize the risk of introducing

B. Treatment (Reactive Measures)

When prevention fails and pests are detected, prompt and effective treatment is necessary. An Integrated Pest Management (IPM) approach is highly recommended. IPM emphasizes using the least hazardous methods first and resorting to chemical treatments only when necessary and in a targeted manner.

1. Non-Chemical Control Methods:

a. Trapping:

✓ **Snap Traps & Glue Boards:** For rodents (place along walls and in concealed areas).
✓ **Insect Light Traps (ILTs):** For flying insects (ensure they are placed away from food prep areas to avoid attracting insects towards them and ensure they are not "zapper" types over sensitive areas).

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

✓ **Pheromone Traps:** To monitor and trap specific insects like stored product pests or cockroaches.

b. Physical Removal:

✓ Vacuuming (especially for bed bugs, cockroaches – ensure a HEPA filter and proper disposal of the vacuum bag).

✓ **Heat Treatment (Thermal Remediation):** Highly effective for bed bugs. Involves raising the temperature of an infested room or item to lethal levels for the pests. Requires specialized equipment and professional application.

✓ **Steam Treatment:** Can be used for bed bugs and other surface pests on furniture and fabrics.

✓ **Freezing (Cryonite):** Uses carbon dioxide snow to freeze and kill pests like bed bugs on contact.

c. Biological Control (Limited application in hotels):

✓ Introducing natural predators or parasites.

✓ More common in agricultural settings but can have niche applications (e.g., mosquito dunks with Bti).

"THE UNWELCOME GUESTS IN SUITE 206"

It started with a whisper—just a few quiet complaints from guests in different rooms. "Tiny flying bugs in the bathroom," one said. "Only at night," noted another. The front desk staff filed the reports, but the maintenance team brushed them off as coincidences. After all, a hotel can't be entirely bug-proof... right?

Weeks passed, and the whispers grew louder. A family in Suite 206 demanded a refund after their children screamed at "a cloud of tiny bugs" coming from the sink. The hotel's reputation was now at risk.

Finally, the management called in a professional pest control company. Within hours, the culprit was found: **drain flies**, breeding in the dark, damp tunnels of the bathroom plumbing. The experts pointed to the root causes—**organic buildup in neglected drains, lack of bio-enzymatic cleaners, and poor ventilation** that created the perfect breeding ground.

Shaken but determined, the hotel sprang into action. Drains were scrubbed clean, bio-enzymatic treatments scheduled weekly, and ventilation systems upgraded. The flying nuisances vanished, but the lesson remained:

"EVEN THE SMALLEST PROBLEMS CAN GROW WINGS—IF YOU CHOOSE TO IGNORE THEM"

---

2. Chemical Control Methods:

a. General Principles:

✓ **Least Hazardous First:** Always opt for the least toxic chemical option that will be effective.

✓ **Targeted Application:** Apply chemicals directly to cracks, crevices, voids, and known pest harbourage areas rather than broad, indiscriminate spraying.

✓ **Rotation of Chemicals:** Rotate chemical classes to prevent pests from developing resistance.

✓ **Follow Label Instructions:** Strictly adhere to all product label instructions regarding application rates, safety precautions, and re-entry times.

✓ **Professional Application:** Most chemical treatments in a hotel setting should be performed by a licensed and experienced pest control professional.

b. Types of Chemical Treatments:

<u>Insecticides:</u>

✓ **Residual Sprays:** Applied to surfaces to kill insects that come into contact with them over time.

✓ **Non-Residual (Contact) Sprays:** Kill insects on direct contact but have no lasting effect.

✓ **Dusts:** Applied to voids, cracks, and crevices where insects hide (e.g., boric acid, diatomaceous earth, insecticide dusts). Effective for cockroaches and bed bugs in certain situations.

✓ **Baits (Gels, Granules, Stations):** Attract pests to a toxic food source. Highly effective for ants, cockroaches, and rodents as pests carry the bait back to their nests/colonies.

✓ **Insect Growth Regulators (IGRs):** Disrupt the development and reproduction of insects. Often used in conjunction with other insecticides.

✓ **Aerosols/Fogging (ULV - Ultra Low Volume):** Can be used for quick knockdown of flying insects or to treat inaccessible voids, but generally not a standalone long-term solution and requires careful application to avoid contamination.

<u>Rodenticides:</u>

✓ **Anticoagulants:** Interfere with blood clotting. Require careful placement in tamper-resistant bait stations to prevent access by non-target animals and children.

✓ **Non-Anticoagulants:** Other types of rodent poisons.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

__Pesticides for other pests:__ Specific products for birds (repellents, deterrents), spiders, etc.

3. Integrated Pest Management (IPM) Program:

This is the gold standard for hotel pest control. An IPM program combines all the above strategies:

- ✓ **Inspection & Monitoring:** Ongoing.
- ✓ **Identification:** Accurate pest ID.
- ✓ **Establishing Thresholds:** Determining at what pest level action is needed (in hotels, thresholds are typically very low).
- ✓ **Implementing Control Measures:** Prioritizing non-chemical methods, followed by targeted and judicious use of chemicals when necessary.
- ✓ **Evaluation:** Regularly assessing the effectiveness of the program and making adjustments as needed.
- ✓ **Documentation:** Keeping detailed records of inspections, monitoring results, treatments applied, and corrective actions taken. This is crucial for due diligence and regulatory compliance.

4. Working with Professional Pest Control Services:

- ✓ **Selection:** Choose a reputable, licensed, and insured pest control company with specific experience in the hospitality industry.
- ✓ **Partnership:** Establish a collaborative relationship. The hotel staff and the pest control provider must work together.
- ✓ **Clear Communication:** Ensure clear communication channels for reporting pest sightings and discussing treatment plans.
- ✓ **Service Agreements:** Have a clear service agreement outlining the scope of services, frequency of visits, pests covered, responsibilities, and record-keeping.
- ✓ **Regular Reviews:** Periodically review the effectiveness of the pest control program with your

By implementing these detailed SOP's on pest identification, areas of infestation, prevention, and treatment, hotels can create a robust pest control management plan that protects their guests, reputation, and bottom line. Consistency, diligence, and a proactive mindset are essential for long-term success.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Check Back Questions:

Q1. If a guest finds bed bugs in their room, what immediate actions should the hotel take to manage the issue both practically and reputationally?

Q2. How would you design a pest inspection schedule for a hotel with multiple high-risk zones like kitchens, guest rooms, and waste areas?

CASELETS: A guest staying in a suite of a luxury hotel reported waking up with itchy bites. Housekeeping inspected the mattress seams and found signs of bed bug infestation—fecal spots and shed exoskeletons. As an executive housekeeper what steps would you take to deal with the situation and make sure that the guest satisfaction is not affected?

3.3. OUTSOURCING, CONTRACT SERVICES, AND VENDOR MANAGEMENT

> Contract is an agreement between two parties negotiating a business deal. Def. (Indian Contract Act 1872).
>
> <div align="center">Whereas</div>
>
> Outsourcing is a business decision to move internal work to an external provider.

3.3.1. The Driving Force: Why Organizations Outsource

The decision to outsource is driven by a variety of strategic needs aimed at improving business performance and fostering growth. Key motivators include:

> ➢ **Cost Reduction:** Outsourcing can significantly lower operational costs by eliminating the need for in-house infrastructure, technology, and employee-related expenses such as salaries, benefits, and training.
> ➢ **Access to Specialized Expertise:** Companies can tap into a global pool of talent and expertise that may not be available or economically viable to maintain internally. This is particularly beneficial for specialized functions like - façade cleaning, gardeners, tailors, plumbing services etc
> ➢ **Increased Efficiency and Focus on Core Business:** By delegating non-core activities, organizations can free up internal resources to concentrate on strategic initiatives and the primary drivers of their business.
> ➢ **Scalability and Flexibility:** Outsourcing allows companies to easily scale their

operations up or down in response to market demands without the complexities of hiring and laying off employees.

➢**Risk Mitigation:** Service providers are often better equipped to manage risks associated with their areas of expertise, including compliance with regulations and implementation of the latest security measures.

➢**Innovation and Access to Technology:** Reputable vendors invest in the latest technologies and methodologies, providing their clients with access to cutting-edge solutions without the upfront investment.

3.3.2. Use Of Contract Services

Contract services may be opted in hotels for following areas:

- ✓ Hotel public area cleaning
- ✓ Linen – hotel and banquet
- ✓ Equipment and furniture
- ✓ Laundry-complete or part
- ✓ Flower arrangement /décor
- ✓ Pest control
- ✓ Horticulture
- ✓ Waste management
- ✓ Chandeliers cleaning
- ✓ High rise cleaning
- ✓ Carpet care and maintenance
- ✓ IT Hardware (Desktop, UPS etc.)

3.3.3. Guidelines For Hiring Contract Services in Hotel and Hospitality Industry

Following proper guidelines and precautions while hiring contract services is extremely important because it directly mitigates significant risks and protects the hotel's reputation, finances, legal standing, and the well-being of its guests and staff.

Following considerations are necessary while hiring contract services:

1. Define the Scope of Work Clearly

- ✓ Specify the tasks to be outsourced (e.g., housekeeping, laundry, landscaping, pest control, security, etc.).
- ✓ Mention frequency (daily, weekly, monthly) and timing of service.
- ✓ Include performance standards or desired outcomes.
- ✓ Example: "Public area cleaning must be completed between 10 PM to 6 AM and should meet 5-star cleanliness standards."

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

2. Invite Multiple Tenders / Quotations
- ✓ Get at least three quotations to compare price, quality, and terms.
- ✓ Evaluate not just the lowest price but also:
  - ○ Experience
  - ○ Workforce strength
  - ○ Clientele
  - ○ Technology used

3. Assess Contractor's Competence
- ✓ Visit other properties serviced by the contractor.
- ✓ Take reference checks from existing clients.
- ✓ Evaluate their staff's training level, appearance, and etiquette.

4. Verify Legal Compliance
- ✓ Contractor should be registered under the Contract Labour (Regulation and Abolition) Act, 1970.
- ✓ Ensure compliance with:
  - ○ ESI (Employee State Insurance)
  - ○ EPF (Employee Provident Fund)
  - ○ GST registration
  - ○ Minimum Wages Act

5. Staff Identity and Security Measures
- ✓ Contractor should provide:
  - ○ Identity cards
  - ○ Uniforms with badges
  - ○ Biometric access or gate passes
  - ○ Conduct background verification of outsourced staff.
  - ○ Provide lockers, meals, and restrooms for contract workers.

6. Define Contract Duration and Exit Terms
- ✓ Clearly mention:
  - ○ Start and end date
  - ○ Renewal terms
  - ○ Notice period for termination (usually 30–60 days)
  - ○ Termination clauses for breach of service or misconduct

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

7. Set Quality Assurance Mechanisms
  ✓ Include Service Level Agreements (SLAs) specifying:
    ○ Work standards
    ○ Response time to complaints
    ○ Penalty for non-performance
    ○ Conduct routine inspections and keep checklists/logbooks.

8. Determine Pricing and Payment Terms
  ✓ Choose the suitable pricing model:
    ○ Fixed cost, cost-plus, performance-based, or unit pricing
  ✓ Payment terms (monthly/quarterly)
  ✓ Penalty clauses for delays or damages

9. Include Clear Contract Clauses
  ✓ Scope of work
  ✓ Manpower requirement and duties
  ✓ Liability clause for accidents or damage
  ✓ Force Majeure clause
  ✓ Dispute resolution method

10. Documentation and Recordkeeping
  ✓ Maintain copies of:
    ○ The contract
    ○ Identity proofs
    ○ Attendance and payment records
    ○ License and registration certificates

11. Continuous Monitoring and Feedback
  ✓ Assign a supervisor or housekeeping executive to monitor the contractor's work.
  ✓ Keep a feedback mechanism open for guests and in-house departments.
  ✓ Schedule monthly review meetings with the contractor.

Here is a detailed breakdown of the critical reasons why this diligence is essential:

1. Protects Guest Experience and Brand Reputation:
  • **Direct Impact:** Contractors are often an extension of the hotel's brand. A poorly trained security guard, an ineffective pest control service resulting in pests in rooms, or a cleaning crew that leaves public areas dirty will directly and negatively impact the guest experience.

- **Online Reputation:** In today's digital age, a single negative experience can lead to damaging online reviews on platforms like TripAdvisor and Google, severely tarnishing the hotel's hard-earned reputation and affecting future bookings.

2. Guarantees Legal and Statutory Compliance:

- **Principal Employer Liability:** In India, under the Contract Labour (Regulation & Abolition) Act, 1970, the primary company hiring the contractor (the "principal employer," i.e., the hotel) can be held liable if the contractor fails to comply with labor laws.
- **Statutory Dues:** Proper vetting ensures the contractor is compliant with mandatory regulations such as the Minimum Wages Act, Provident Fund (PF), Employee State Insurance (ESI), and GST. Failure by the contractor to pay these can create legal and financial liabilities for the hotel.
- **Licenses and Permits:** A diligent process verifies that the contractor holds all necessary licenses to operate legally (e.g., a security agency must have a PSARA license).

3. Enhances Safety and Security:

- **Background Checks:** Proper guidelines ensure that contractors perform thorough background checks and police verification for their staff, especially in high-contact roles like security and housekeeping. This prevents hiring individuals with criminal records, safeguarding guests and staff.
- **Health and Safety:** Vetting ensures a contractor uses safe, approved chemicals (in cleaning or pest control), follows proper safety protocols, and provides their staff with appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), reducing the risk of accidents and health hazards on hotel property. Data
- **Data Security:** When hiring IT or tech support contractors, precautions are vital to ensure they have robust data protection policies to prevent breaches of sensitive guest or hotel information.

4. Ensures Financial Prudence and Control:

- **Prevents Hidden Costs:** A thorough contract negotiation process uncovers all potential costs, preventing unexpected charges later. Without this, a low initial quote can quickly escalate with hidden fees for supplies, equipment, or "out-of-scope" work.

- **Ensures Value for Money:** A proper evaluation process compares multiple vendors not just on price, but on their reputation, reliability, and the quality of their service, ensuring the hotel gets the best possible value.
- **Financial Stability:** Investigating a contractor's financial stability is crucial. Hiring a company that is financially unstable could lead to them abandoning the contract midway, causing major operational disruptions.

5. Maintains Operational Stability and Continuity:

- **Reliability:** A well-vetted contractor is more likely to be reliable and consistent. Imagine the chaos if the outsourced laundry service fails to deliver clean linen during peak season or the kitchen stewarding contractor's staff doesn't show up before a major banquet.
- **Contingency Planning:** Good contracts include clauses for backup plans and contingencies, ensuring that service continues uninterrupted even if issues arise.

6. Safeguards Hotel Assets:

- **Prevents Damage:** Untrained contract staff can cause significant damage to expensive hotel property, such as using the wrong chemical on a marble floor, damaging furniture during deep cleaning, or mishandling equipment.
- **Insurance and Liability:** A crucial precaution is to verify that the contractor has adequate insurance, particularly Public Liability Insurance. This ensures that if the contractor's actions cause damage to property or injury to a person, their insurance will cover the loss, not the hotel's.

3.3.4. Pricing Models In Contract Services

Choosing the right pricing model for outsourced services is a critical decision for any hotel's management. It determines budget control, service quality, flexibility, and the nature of the relationship with the contractor. Below is a detailed breakdown of common models used in hospitality.

1. Fixed Periodic Cost

- This is the most straightforward and common model, often referred to as a Fixed-Price or Lump-Sum Agreement. The hotel pays a consistent, predetermined amount on a recurring basis (e.g., monthly, quarterly) for a clearly defined scope of services.
- The contractor agrees to perform a specific list of routine tasks for a set fee. The price is locked in for the duration of the contract, regardless of the actual time or minor resources consumed.
- There are two types of costs:

○**Controlled Cost:** The term "Controlled Cost" accurately describes a true Fixed-Price model. The scope is well-defined and controlled (e.g., "Daily cleaning of the 5,000 sq. ft. lobby area, including mopping floors and cleaning glass doors, using 2 workers for 3 hours each day"). The cost is fixed because the scope is controlled.

○**Uncontrolled Cost:** The contractor agrees to provide a service of a given nature for a specific cost. There is no indication of the number of worker-hours worked nor type of equipment and materials used. Therefore, it is essential that the specification is very detailed indeed.

- **Pros:** ○**Budget Predictability:** The hotel knows the exact cost, making financial planning simple.

  ○**Low Administrative Burden:** No need to track hours or material usage.

  ○ **Risk Transfer:** The risk of work taking longer than expected is on the contractor.

- **Cons:** ○ **Inflexibility:** Adding any task outside the original scope requires contract renegotiation or extra charges.

  ○**Potential for Higher Cost:** The contractor may inflate the price to cover potential risks.

  ○**Quality Risk:** If their costs run high, the contractor might be tempted to cut corners to protect their profit.

- **Example:** A five-star hotel in Delhi signs a one-year contract with a landscaping company for a fixed fee of ₹75,000 per month. This fee covers all routine landscape maintenance for the hotel's 2-acre grounds, including mowing, weeding, pruning, watering, and seasonal flower planting, as per a pre-agreed schedule. The cost remains the same each month, whether it's the dry season or monsoon.

- **Best Suited For:** Routine, predictable, and highly standardized jobs like daily public area cleaning, landscaping, or security services.

2. Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee

- This is a transparent model where the hotel agrees to pay the contractor for all their actual, documented costs plus a pre-agreed lump-sum fee (their profit).
- The contractor tracks all project-related costs (labor wages, materials, equipment rental). They present these invoices to the hotel for reimbursement. On top of these reimbursed costs, the hotel pays a fixed profit fee that was agreed (profit) is fixed.

- **Pros:** ○ High Flexibility: The hotel can easily change the scope of work as needs evolve, as they are simply paying for the actual resources used.
  ○ Transparency: The hotel can see exactly where its money is going.
  ○ Quality Focus: The contractor is not incentivized to use cheaper materials or less-skilled labor, as all costs are reimbursed.

- **Cons:** ○ Budget Uncertainty: The final total cost is unknown until the project is complete.
  ○ No Incentive for Efficiency: The contractor has little motivation to control costs or finish the job quickly, as all expenses are covered.
  ○ Requires High Oversight: The hotel must diligently audit all invoices to prevent cost inflation.

- **Example:** A heritage hotel in Rajasthan needs to undertake a specialized restoration of its delicate limestone facade after unexpected water damage. The exact extent of work is unknown. The hotel hires a specialist firm on a Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee basis. The hotel agrees to pay for all worker wages, specialized chemicals, and equipment rental (the "Cost") plus a fixed fee of ₹2,00,000 for the contractor's expertise and management, regardless of whether the final project cost is ₹10 Lakh or ₹15 Lakh.

- **Best Suited For:** Complex, non-routine projects where the scope is uncertain or expected to change, such as major repairs, renovations, or specialized deep cleaning projects.

3. Unit Pricing

- This model involves breaking down a service into individual, repeatable tasks or "units" and assigning a price to each one. The total cost is the sum of all units completed.
- How it Works: The hotel is charged based on the quantity of work done, not the time it takes. The contract will have a "rate card" listing the price per unit.

- **Pros:** ○ Scalability & Clarity: Easy to understand and scale the service up or down. The cost is directly proportional to the work performed.
  ○ Cost Control: The hotel only pays for what it needs.

- **Cons:** ○ Can be Expensive for Large Volumes: May be less cost-effective than a fixed-price contract for high-volume, regular work.
  ○ Focus on Quantity over Quality: A contractor may be incentivized to complete as many units as possible, potentially sacrificing quality.

- **Example:** A large convention hotel in Delhi outsources its post-event deep cleaning. The contract is based on unit pricing:
    - Carpet shampooing: ₹25 per square foot
    - Upholstered banquet chair cleaning: ₹150 per chair
    - Polishing a marble ballroom floor: ₹40 per square foot
    - Cleaning large glass partitions: ₹500 per panel
- **Best Suited For:** On-demand or periodic services where the workload is variable and can be easily quantified into discrete units.

4. Performance-Based Pricing

- Also known as a Value-Based Contract, this model links the contractor's payment directly to their performance against pre-agreed Key Performance Indicators (KPIs).
- The contract defines specific, measurable goals (e.g., cleanliness scores, guest satisfaction ratings, response times). The contractor's payment is structured with bonuses for exceeding targets and penalties for failing to meet them.

- **Pros:** Aligns Goals: Directly ties the contractor's success to the hotel's objectives.

    Drives Quality: Provides a strong financial incentive for the contractor to deliver high-quality service.

    Shared Risk: The contractor shares the risk of poor performance.

- **Cons:** Complex to Set Up: It can be difficult to define fair, objective, and measurable KPIs.

    Potential for Disputes: Disagreements can arise over performance measurement and whether targets were met.

- **Example:** A business hotel outsources its public area and washroom cleaning. The base monthly fee is ₹1,20,000. The contract includes a performance clause tied to the hotel's internal audit scores:
    - Score >95%: Contractor receives a 10% bonus (₹12,000).
    - Score 90-95%: Contractor receives the full base fee.
    - Score 80-89%: Contractor's fee is reduced by 10% (penalty of ₹12,000).
    - Score <80%: Fee is reduced by 20% and triggers a formal performance review.

- **Best Suited For:** Critical services that directly impact guest experience and the hotel's reputation, such as housekeeping, security, and pest control.

5. Management Consultancy Services

- In this model, the hotel does not outsource the physical labour but rather the expertise and management of the service.
- The hotel provides its own staff, equipment, and cleaning supplies. The contractor provides a specialist manager or supervisor who is responsible for training the hotel's staff, creating schedules, implementing best practices (e.g., new cleaning techniques, safety protocols), managing inventory, and ensuring quality control.

- **Pros:** ○ Access to Expertise: The hotel gains expert knowledge and management skills without the cost of a full-time senior hire.
  - ○ Control over Staff: The cleaning staff remain hotel employees, which can be better for morale and integration.
  - ○ Skill Development: The hotel's own team gets trained and upskilled.

- **Cons:** ○ Divided Responsibility: Can lead to confusion or conflict over who is ultimately responsible for failures—the management contractor or the hotel's staff.
  - ○ Higher Internal Costs: The hotel still bears all costs related to labor, equipment, and supplies.

- **Example:** A hotel wants to implement the HACCP (Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points) system for food safety in its kitchens. It hires a food safety consultancy firm. The hotel's own kitchen and cleaning staff perform the work, but the contractor provides an on-site manager for three months to train the team, set up the documentation, establish critical control points, and oversee the initial implementation to ensure certification.

- **Best Suited For:** Situations requiring specialized knowledge, process improvement, training, or achieving specific certifications, where the hotel wants to retain its own workforce.

6. Complete Cleaning Programme (Full-Service Outsourcing)

- This is the most comprehensive form of outsourcing, where the contractor takes on the entire responsibility for a specific service, typically cleaning or housekeeping. This is also known as a Turnkey Solution.
- The contractor provides everything: hiring and managing all staff, providing all equipment (vacuums, floor polishers), procuring all cleaning agents and supplies, handling payroll and HR for the outsourced staff, and providing

all levels of supervision. The hotel's Executive Housekeeper role shifts from managing daily operations to managing the contract and relationship with the provider.

- **Pros:** ◦ Focus on Core Business: Frees up hotel management to focus entirely on guest experience and core revenue-generating activities.
  Reduced Administrative Overhead: The hotel does not have to deal with
  ◦HR, payroll, or procurement for the outsourced department.
  ◦Access to Professional Systems: The contractor brings in professional-grade equipment, chemicals, and operating procedures.

- **Cons:** ◦Highest Cost: This is typically the most expensive model.
  ◦Loss of Direct Control: The hotel loses direct control over the staff and daily operations.
  ◦Risk to Brand Identity: The outsourced staff may not feel as connected to the hotel's brand and service culture, which can impact guest interactions.

- **Example:** A newly opened, large shopping mall in Noida with an attached hotel decides to implement a complete cleaning programme. It signs a multi-year contract with a major facility management company like JLL or Cushman & Wakefield. The contractor is responsible for the 24/7 cleaning of the entire property—mall common areas, food court, washrooms, parking, and all public areas of the hotel. They manage a team of over 100 cleaning staff, all supervisors, and all associated resources.The hotel's management only needs to ensure the contractor meets the service level agreement (SLA).

- **Best Suited For:** Situations requiring specialized knowledge, process improvement, training, or achieving specific certifications, where the hotel wants to retain its own workforce.

3.3.6. Contract Clauses (Key Components of a Contract Agreement)

- ✓ Scope of Work: Detailed description of tasks and responsibilities.
- ✓ Duration of Contract: Start and end date, renewal conditions.
- ✓ Payment Terms: Frequency of payment, penalties for delay, GST applicability.
- ✓ Termination Clause: Notice period, reasons for termination, penalty for early exit.
- ✓ Manpower Deployment: Number of workers, their roles, timings, supervision.

✓ Quality Standards / SLA: Expected performance levels and quality benchmarks.
✓ Safety and Security: Rules regarding ID cards, safety gear, background checks.
✓ Legal Compliance: Adherence to labor laws, insurance, ESI, EPF, etc.
✓ Dispute Resolution: Jurisdiction and process in case of disagreements.
✓ Force Majeure Clause: Conditions under which services can be excused (e.g., natural calamities).

3.3.7. Types Of Skilled Labour in Contract Services

1. Highly Skilled Labour: Professionals with strong experience, qualifications, and leadership abilities. Like- Contracted managers or supervisors, Project heads for outsourced operations, Executive housekeepers. Their key traits are:

- Can lead teams
- Good knowledge of compliance
- Strong decision-making skills

2. Skilled Labour: These are workers trained to perform specific tasks independently and efficiently. Like - Trained housekeeping staff, Electricians, plumbers, Trained security guards, Commis chefs, technicians. Their key traits are-

- Hold Job-specific training
- Experience and independence
- Adheres to hotel SOPs

3.Semi-Skilled Labour: These are workers with basic job knowledge and experience, needing some supervision. Like - Room attendants/helpers, Kitchen stewards, Laundry assistants. Their key traits are:

- They have limited training
- Good work experience
- Follows instructions

4.Unskilled Labour: these are workers with no formal training, performing manual or routine tasks. Like - General cleaners, Garden helpers, Event setup helpers. Basically they-

- Have no special skill
- Perform basic physical tasks
- Need constant supervision

TRIVIA
WORKER WELFARE & LEGAL COMPLIANCE

Aspect	Details
Wages	Paid on time (within 7–10 days); no delays allowed
No Cash Payment	Wages must be paid digitally or via bank transfer (for transparency)
ESI (Medical)	Medical benefits provided; workers have ESI number & card
EPF (Retirement)	Both employer & employee contribute; workers have PF number

3.3.8. Annual Maintenance Contract (AMC)

AMC is a written agreement for periodic maintenance and repair of equipment or services over a year.

Types of AMC:
- Comprehensive AMC: Includes parts and labour.
- Non-Comprehensive AMC: Only service/labour is included; parts are chargeable.

Common Areas of AMC in Hotels:
- Air-conditioning systems
- Elevators
- Kitchen equipment
- Electrical panels
- Fire safety systems
- Water treatment plants

Advantages:
- ✓ Reduces breakdowns and downtime.
- ✓ Ensures longer equipment life.
- ✓ Budget control through fixed costs.
- ✓ Emergency support availability.
- ✓ Inclusions in AMC:
- ✓ Frequency of visits (monthly/quarterly)
- ✓ Service hours and response time
- ✓ Reporting and documentation

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Check Back Questions:

CASELET

The hotel's kitchen equipment broke down during peak hours. The hotel had an AMC in place, but it was non-comprehensive and the contractor took 3 days to repair the equipment because spare parts were not covered. The hotel lost revenue and received poor reviews.

Questions:

➢ What type of AMC should the hotel have opted for in this case?

➢ How could a better contract clause or SLA have minimized the damage?

➢ Suggest any two lessons the hotel can learn from this incident.

LET'S SUM UP

The chapter provided a comprehensive overview of store management, pest control, and contract services in the hospitality industry. It emphasized the structured flow of materials through the processes of indenting, purchasing, storing, issuing, and maintaining records, along with the principles and types of purchasing and the purchase cycle. The management of housekeeping supplies such as linen, laundry, and guest amenities requires systematic control and accurate recordkeeping.

The section on pest control covered the identification of common pests, their infestation zones within hotels, and effective prevention and treatment methods. The chapter also detailed the importance and process of outsourcing non-core services like cleaning, pest control, and security, outlining key steps in vendor selection, pricing models, contract clauses, and legal compliance.

Later we moved into understanding the role of Annual Maintenance Contracts (AMC) in ensuring the efficient upkeep of equipment. Overall, the chapter developed an understanding on how proper store, pest, and contract management contribute significantly to operational efficiency, guest satisfaction, cost control, and risk mitigation in the hospitality sector.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

1.What is the main purpose of raising an indent in hotel housekeeping?
a) To reduce salaries
b) To raise complaints to management
c) To request required items formally
d) To maintain guest feedback

2.In which type of purchasing are goods procured from nearby vendors to meet urgent needs?
a) Centralized Purchase
b) Decentralized Purchase
c) Local Purchase
d) Rate Contract Purchase

3.What is the first step in an effective pest control management plan in hotels?
a) Spraying chemicals in all rooms
b) Identifying the pest accurately
c) Calling external pest control services
d) Using fogging machines

What is the primary concern with stored product pests?
a) Structural damage
4.b) Blood-feeding
c) Food contamination
d) Sting or bite

5.Which of the following is NOT a valid reason for outsourcing in hotels?
a) Cost reduction
b) Access to specialized skills
c) Increased guest complaints
d) Scalability of operations

STATE TRUE/FALSE:

1.Outsourcing can help reduce operational costs in hotels.
2.Performance-based pricing gives contractors bonus for completing units of service.

3.Semi-skilled labour requires constant supervision in housekeeping tasks

4.A comprehensive AMC only includes the cost of spare parts.

5.Pest control services can be included in the contract services of a hotel.

FILL UP THE BLANKS

1.The _____ department is responsible for issuing cleaning and linen supplies to room attendants.

2. _____ is used to prevent and eliminate pests like cockroaches and rodents in hotels.

3._____ is the process of hiring third-party service providers for non-core hotel operations.

4.A vendor must have _____ registration to ensure compliance with tax laws.

5. _____ inventory method ensures the oldest stock is used first.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

1.What are the advantages of centralized purchasing in hotels? Name any three documents each used in the housekeeping stores for inventory control and purchasing.

2.How can the integration of technology in the purchasing process help in reducing wastage and improving cost control in hotels?

3.Define Integrated Pest Management (IPM) and list its main components.

4.Name any four areas where contract services are commonly used in the hotel industry.

5.Why is it risky to hire a contractor solely based on the lowest price quote? Justify with examples.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

1.Explain the complete purchase cycle in hotel housekeeping operations.

2.Discuss the process of issuing linen, laundry, and guest room supplies from housekeeping stores.

3.Elaborate on pest control management in hotels.

4.What is outsourcing in the hospitality industry? Explain the types of outsourced jobs and the need for outsourcing in hotels.

5.Describe the key steps and clauses involved in contract management and vendor selection in the hospitality industry.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

OPEN BOOK QUESTIONS

1. Draft a checklist for assessing a pest control vendor for a five-star hotel. Include legal, safety, and quality factors.

2. Prepare a detailed vendor selection process for outsourcing landscaping services for a luxury resort, including documentation and evaluation criteria.

CASE STUDY- 1

The Grand Hill Hotel – A Cautionary Tale in Outsourcing Without a Service Level Agreement (SLA)

The Grand Hill Hotel is a renowned five-star property located in a prime urban location. Known for its opulence, seamless guest service, and exceptional cleanliness, it holds a reputation among international business travelers and luxury-seeking tourists alike. As part of a recent cost-optimization initiative, the hotel's management made the decision to outsource its public area cleaning operations to an external facility management agency. What initially seemed like a cost-saving strategy soon spiraled into a service crisis that challenged the hotel's brand image.

In the hospitality industry, particularly in five-star hotels, public area cleanliness is a non-negotiable standard. Lobbies, lounges, corridors, elevators, and other common areas are the first impression points for guests. Any lapse in their maintenance can significantly damage a hotel's image. Despite this, the management of Grand Hill Hotel chose to delegate public area cleaning without detailed scrutiny of the contract terms or service expectations.

The contract was awarded to a local cleaning agency with promises of experienced manpower and round-the-clock service. The hotel assumed the agency would understand the nuances of maintaining luxury hotel spaces. Unfortunately, the contract lacked a clear Service Level Agreement (SLA), which would have defined the scope of work, staffing levels, performance metrics, accountability, and penalties for non-compliance.

Within the first four weeks of operations, several guest complaints were registered regarding the hotel's cleanliness- Guests noticed dirty and dusty lobbies, especially in the mornings, Stained carpets in reception and corridor areas were left unattended, common areas such as lift lobbies and lounges smelled musty, and the trash bins were not cleared regularly. These issues began reflecting in online reviews, with guests pointing out the lack of hygiene—an alarming signal for any five-star hotel.

In response to the rising complaints, the hotel's Executive Housekeeper initiated an internal audit. The findings were both shocking and disappointing. The agreement required a minimum deployment of six cleaners per shift, but only three were actually deployed. This led to improper cleaning schedules and delayed maintenance. Untrained Workforce:

The outsourced staff had no prior experience in five-star hotel housekeeping. They were unaware of brand standards, luxury cleaning protocols, and guest interaction etiquette.

The workers lacked standard uniforms, ID badges, or grooming. Their appearance did not align with the image of a luxury property and created a poor impression on guests.

The absence of an SLA meant there were no defined quality standards, no timelines for task completion, and no penalties for poor performance.

The consequences were severe and multifaceted - Decline in Guest Satisfaction & brand trust, Negative Online Reputation, Operational Disruption & Financial Implications.

Discussion Questions:
- Identify two contract management mistakes made by the hotel.
- How could an SLA have helped avoid this situation?
- What corrective actions should the hotel take immediately?

CASE STUDY- 2

"What Went Wrong? A Lesson in Store Mismanagement"

The Ocean Pearl Hotel is a reputed four-star property located in Goa, known for its beachside views and friendly service. The hotel has 120 rooms, two restaurants, a bar, a spa, and several banqueting facilities. It was enjoying good customer ratings until a string of operational hiccups in early 2023 began to tarnish its reputation.

The hotel started receiving poor guest reviews on cleanliness, room readiness, and missing amenities. Simultaneously, interdepartmental complaints increased, especially from the housekeeping and F&B departments. The general manager initiated an investigation which revealed critical issues in the store department.

Key Issues Identified were - Departments were sending WhatsApp messages or verbal requests to the storekeeper, leading to confusion, missed items, and unauthorized requests. Guest room slippers were overstocked by 500 pairs,

occupying unnecessary storage space, while laundry detergent was unavailable for three days, halting operations. The store lacked a clear layout or item categorization. Items were misplaced, leading to delays in locating supplies. Several cartons of perishable guest amenities were found expired. Cleaning chemicals had leaked due to improper storage, risking safety and increasing wastage. All inventory records were handwritten in a single logbook. There were no backups, and data was incomplete or inaccurate. Staff used newly arrived items before older stock, leading to expiry and wastage of earlier supplies. The store assistant had no formal training in inventory management and was not supervised or evaluated regularly.

This lead to Delays in Room Readiness, Low Guest Satisfaction, Revenue Loss, Wastage of Resources (Approximately ₹1.5 lakhs worth of expired or damaged goods were written off in a single quarter), Employee Frustration.

Discussion Questions:

1.Discuss how mismanagement in the store can affect guest satisfaction and hotel ratings.

2.Imagine you are the new store supervisor. Prepare a 5-point checklist to prevent stock mismanagement.

3.What are the long-term financial implications of frequent overstocking and understocking in a hotel store?

Provide a strategic solution to the solve the issues.

--------------------- END OF UNIT 3 ---------------------

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Unit-4

HOTEL MAINTENANCE

Unit Overview

This unit focusses on the importance and role of maintenance in a hotel. Maintenance is vital for any property to ensure the longevity of the building and the appliances used at the hotel. An in-depth understanding of the management of the maintenance process helps in devising plans to create schedules. The various types of maintenance give the student a definite understanding of the methods that can be employed for upkeep of the property, appliance etc and also directs the attention towards what needs to be avoided in order to have a hassle-free shift.

Any hotel faces maintenance concerns either during the pre-opening period, after renovation or even in day-to-day operations. These can be sorted by keeping a track of malfunctions, time taken to rectify the problem and the cost of fixing them too. It becomes a handy tool for the management to decide if it is worth repairing the appliance repeatedly or to invest in a new one. This requires coordination with all department of the hotel, if the link is broken it can cause chaos, ultimately leading the loss of revenue for the hotel. Audits are ideal to detect flaws, maintain standards and meet industry requirements.

Sustainability is the new key-word, which is a requisite from both the government and the hotel, keeping in mind the global warming and the potential hazards it can cause. The housekeeping and the maintenance teams can work hand-in-hand to minimise the reasons for causing global warming by contributing in ways such as, energy conservation, waste management, optimum use of water and reducing the carbon footprint.

Learning Objectives

Sl. No.	Sub-Unit	Learning Topics	Key Learning Outcomes The student will be able to
1.	4.1. Introduction to maintenance	• Scope of maintenance in the hotel industry • Objectives of maintenance • Maintenance activities	1. State the scope of the maintenance department in a hotel 2. List the objectives and the activities of the maintenance department
2.	4.2. Definition of Maintenance	Maintenance management in a hotel	1. Recall and reproduce the definition of maintenance
3.	4.3. Types of maintenance-	• Routine maintenance • Preventive maintenance • Corrective maintenance • Predictive maintenance • Emergency maintenance • Deep cleaning/ seasonal maintenance • Guestroom maintenance • Contract maintenance	1. Explain types of maintenance 2. Differentiate between types of maintenance 3. Determine the type of maintenance being applied before, after or during a breakdown
4.	4.4. Snagging and de-snagging	• Snagging & de-snagging • Maintenance log book	1. Explain snagging and de-snagging 2. Illustrate necessary formats used 3. Establish the importance and applicability of snagging & de-snagging
5.	4.5. Role of hotel maintenance/ engineering		1. Write the role of maintenance/ hotel engineering department 2. Illustrate the importance of the department
6.	4.6. Interdepartmental coordination	• Coordination between • Housekeeping • Front Office • F&B; Service • Security • Other departments	1. Identify the departments who coordinate with the maintenance department 2. List the tasks performed by maintenance to coordinate with other departments
7.	4.7. Room division audit	• Types of audits • Internal Brand audit • External/ Third party audit • Brand audits • ISO audit	1. List & explain different types of audits 2. Compare different types of audits 3. Outline brand audits and its components
8.	4.8. Sustainable housekeeping practices	• Waste management • Types of waste, segregation and disposal of waste • Energy conservation • Eco-friendly practices	1. Discuss various sustainable practices used in hotels 2. List types of waste generated by hotels and the methods of disposal 3. Explain energy conservation 4. Summarise the methods of energy conservation 5. Outline eco-friendly practices followed by hotels
9.	4.9. Maintenance of Security and surveillance system	• Security in a hotel – responsibilities • Various security & surveillance systems used in hotels • Maintenance of hotel safety & security systems	1. Enumerate the responsibilities of security at a hotel 2. Describe the security and surveillance systems used in a hotel 3. Explain the necessity of maintaining the security and surveillance systems.

4.1. Introduction

Maintenance is essential for the smooth functioning of a hotel's infrastructure and equipment. It ensures safety, guest comfort, and operational efficiency. It plays a vital role in brand image, guest satisfaction, and cost control. Understanding what maintenance is, and the scope it covers, lays the foundation for all maintenance-related activities in hotel operations.

Active Repair Time:

This includes hands-on tasks such as disassembly, reassembly, inspections, testing, measuring, part removal and replacement, adjustments, functional check-outs, cleaning, and lubrication.

Administrative Time:

This covers activities such as acquiring materials, preparing reports, handling documentation, and managing unexpected or administrative issues.

Maintenance broadly covers the following aspects:

(a) Inspection of the item/plant/equipment/machine/system.

(b) Repair of the defects, if any.

(c) Minor modification in order to reduce maintenance efforts.

4.1.1. Scope of Maintenance in the Hotel Industry

Maintenance of the following items/systems is required to ensure the aesthetics and functionality of the hotel

Land (Ground) - Lawn	Pollution control equipment
Site development - boundary wall, septic tank, storage tank, etc..	Power supply equipment
Buildings	Ventilation, refrigeration and air conditioning system
Plants, machinery, equipment and systems	Firefighting equipment
Water supply system	Maintenance equipment and hand tools
Water heating system	Laundry equipment
Gas distribution system	Kitchen equipment or ranges
Fuel supply line system	Telephone system, Fax, Telex, E-mail
Drainage system	TV cable system etc
Waste disposal system	

4.1.2. Objectives of maintenance:

Minimize equipment breakdowns and maintain machines in optimal working condition at the lowest feasible cost.

- Keep all machines and equipment in a state that enables uninterrupted and efficient performance at their highest capacity.

- Ensure that all machines, infrastructure, and services are readily available to meet customer requirements.
- Enhance the safety of both hotel guests and staff.
- Optimize the uptime and dependability of all assets.
- Maximize the return on investment from all equipment and facilities.
- Prolong the operational lifespan of hotel assets.
- Guarantee that all emergency equipment is always ready for immediate use.
- Improve the operational consistency and effectiveness of systems and facilities.
- Boost customer satisfaction through reliable service and well-maintained facilities.
- Reduce energy consumption and control utility costs efficiently.

4.1.3. Maintenance activities:

Maintenance operations need to be performed on a daily, weekly, monthly basis or as per a prescribed schedule. It may involve the following tasks:

- Conducting regular inspections
- Performing measurements for performance or wear and tear
- Carrying out various testing procedures
- Executing tasks such as servicing, repairing, removing, replacing, cleaning, lubricating, adjusting, aligning, reinstalling, modifying, overhauling, rebuilding, and reclaiming components
- Disassembling and reassembling parts or systems, including functional check-outs
- Procuring and managing the storage of spare parts and materials
- Preparing and maintaining maintenance-related documentation and reports
- Handling unforeseen or emergency maintenance requirements
- Managing related administrative responsibilities.

Check Back Questions:

1. Maintenance ensures _____, guest comfort, and operational efficiency in a hotel.
2. _____ time includes tasks like disassembly, inspection, testing, and cleaning of equipment.
3. The objective of maintenance is to minimize equipment _____ and ensure optimal performance.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Check Back Questions:
4.Maintenance activities may be scheduled on a _____, weekly, or monthly basis.
5.The maintenance of the hotel's _____ system ensures proper waste management and hygiene.4.Maintenance activities may be scheduled on a _____, weekly, or monthly basis.

4.2. Definitions of Maintenance

"Maintenance is the combination of all technical and associated administrative actions intended to retain an item in, or restore it to, a state in which it can perform its required function."
— *British Standards Institution (BSI)*

"Maintenance in hotels is the process of preserving the physical assets of a hotel in a condition that meets operational and safety requirements."
— *David M. Stipanuk, Hospitality Facilities Management and Design*

"Maintenance is any activity—such as checking, measuring, replacing, adjusting, and repairing—intended to retain or restore a functional unit to a specified state."
— *Anthony Kelly, Maintenance Planning and Control*

"Maintenance is a combination of actions carried out to retain an item/machine equipment/system/Plant in order to restore it to an acceptable working condition"
— *Dr. K. C. Goyal & Dr. K. C. Arora, Textbook of Hotel Maintenance*

4.2.1. Maintenance Management in a Hotel

Maintenance management in a hotel is a continuous, cyclical process that ensures equipment reliability, guest comfort, and operational efficiency. All the activities and processes need to be well structured and achieving long-term sustainability and profitability.

4.2.1.1 Planning

Planning involves identifying the maintenance needs and setting objectives to ensure the smooth operation of hotel facilities.

Key activities include:
• Assessing the condition of all hotel equipment, systems, and facilities.
• Developing preventive and predictive maintenance schedules.

- Estimating maintenance budgets, manpower, and material requirements.
- Setting goals such as energy efficiency, minimal breakdowns, and guest satisfaction.
- Planning for contingencies and emergency maintenance scenarios.
- Identifying KPIs (e.g., downtime, cost per repair, asset lifespan).

4.2.1.2. Organizing

This step focuses on structuring the maintenance function for effective implementation.

Key activities include:

- Creating a clear organizational structure for the engineering/maintenance department.
- Defining roles and responsibilities (e.g., chief engineer, technicians, helpers).
- Allocating resources – tools, spares, equipment, and workspace.
- Setting up systems for inventory management of spare parts and consumables.
- Coordinating with other departments (housekeeping, front office, F&B) for maintenance schedules.

4.2.1.3. Staffing

Staffing ensures the right personnel are in place and adequately trained.

Key activities include:

- Recruiting skilled maintenance staff – electrical, plumbing, HVAC, carpentry, etc.
- Conducting regular training and skill development programs.
- Ensuring adherence to safety procedures and standard operating practices.
- Evaluating performance and providing feedback and motivation.
- Ensuring sufficient staff availability for routine and emergency tasks.

4.2.1.4. Directing

This involves leading the team and ensuring day-to-day maintenance operations are carried out efficiently.

Key activities include:

- Assigning tasks and scheduling daily work orders.
- Supervising ongoing maintenance tasks and providing technical support.
- Communicating effectively with other departments about ongoing work.
- Motivating and guiding the team to ensure timely and quality work.
- Implementing energy conservation initiatives and sustainability practices.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

4.2.1.5. Controlling

Controlling focuses on monitoring progress, ensuring quality, and taking corrective action when necessary.

Key activities include:
- Monitoring performance indicators like downtime, repair costs, and guest complaints.
- Conducting audits and inspections to ensure compliance with standards.
- Analysing maintenance data and generating reports for improvement.
- Identifying recurring issues and implementing long-term solutions.
- Reviewing and updating maintenance strategies periodically.

> **Check Back Questions:**
> 1. Define maintenance.
> 2. What are the activities associated with directing, in relation to maintenance tasks in the housekeeping?

4.3. Types of Maintenance

Hotels must perform different types of maintenance to prevent equipment failure, ensure guest comfort, and prolong the lifespan of assets. To put it simply, the following questions need to be answered.

What: various types of maintenance;

Why: to improve safety and service quality;

When and Where: depend on the system or area being maintained;

How: varies by maintenance type—routine, preventive, or emergency.

4.3.1. Routine Maintenance

Routine maintenance includes scheduling tasks regularly to keep systems and areas clean and functional. These are simple, repeated, and often part of daily operations.

Routine maintenance in a hotel includes the upkeep of rooms on a regular basis, public areas, and essential services to ensure a seamless guest experience and prevent major problems. This includes routine tasks like cleaning and inspections, as well as scheduled maintenance for equipment like HVAC systems and elevators.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Daily Tasks:

• **Room Inspections:** Check door locks, safes, air-conditioning, lighting, plumbing, and furniture and fixtures for functionality and damage.
• **Public Area Checks:** Ensuring cleanliness and proper functioning of common areas like lobbies and other public areas.
• **HVAC System Checks:** Setting optimal temperatures in all areas and monitoring performance in both rooms and other areas.
• **Plumbing Checks:** Inspecting for leaks in bathrooms, kitchens, etc. and ensuring proper drainage, checking all fittings, like taps, showers etc.
• **Lighting Maintenance:** Replacing fused bulbs and ensuring all fixtures are working.

4.3.2. Preventive Maintenance

It is performed before a breakdown occurs; the maintenance activity is based on a time schedule or usage. The goal is to minimise chances of failure.

'Preventive maintenance refers to the regular and scheduled upkeep of hotel facilities, equipment, and systems to prevent breakdowns and ensure smooth operations.' It involves anticipatory measures like inspections, cleaning, and maintenance tasks, instead of waiting for something to fail before fixing it. This helps minimize unexpected expenses, it also extends the lifespan of assets.

By implementing a comprehensive preventive maintenance program, hotels can improve their operational efficiency, minimize costs, and give a superior guest experience.

Key Aspects:

• **Proactive approach:**
It focuses on preventing issues before they occur, thereby reducing the need for emergency or reactive repairs.

• **Regular inspections:**
Scheduled check of equipment, systems, and facilities should be conducted to identify potential problems early on.

• **Scheduled maintenance:**
Tasks are performed according to a prescribed schedule, ensuring consistent upkeep.

- **Cost savings:**

By preventing breakdowns, costly repairs can be avoided.

- **Improved guest experience:**

Smoothly functioning equipment, enhances the facilities and contributes to a positive and comfortable stay for guests.

- **Extended asset lifespan:**

Regular maintenance helps increase the life of hotel assets, and reduces the need for premature replacements.

Examples of preventive maintenance in hotels:

- **HVAC maintenance:**

Servicing of heating, ventilation, and air conditioning systems regularly, to ensure good performance and prevent breakdowns

- **Plumbing maintenance:**

Inspections and repairs of pipes, drains, and other fixtures to prevent leaks and blockages.

- **Electrical system maintenance:**

Checks of wiring, miniature circuit breakers, and lighting to confirm the safety of electrical appliances and prevent hazards.

- **Fire safety system maintenance:**

Inspections and testing of fire alarms, extinguishers, and sprinkler systems regularly.

- **Furniture and fixture maintenance:**

Ensuring furniture in all areas is in good condition, clean, and well presented.

- **Swimming Pool maintenance:**

Regular cleaning and servicing of pools to maintain water quality and cleanliness.

- **Elevator maintenance:**

Scheduled inspections and servicing of elevators, especially after 100 hours of operations, ensures safe and reliable functioning, thus preventing hazards.

- **Guestroom maintenance:**

Checks of amenities, fixtures, and appliances in guestrooms, ensures everything is in working order.

• **Common area maintenance:**

Maintenance of hallways, lobbies, and other public areas to maintain a clean and welcoming environment.

Sample Format:
Preventive Maintenance Schedule (Guest Room)

Hotel XYZ

Room No.	Area to Check	Task Description	Frequency	Last Serviced On	Next Due Date	Remarks
201	Air Conditioner	Clean filter and check coolant	Monthly	01-May-2025	01-Jun-2025	Working fine
202	Bathroom fittings	Check for leaks and corrosion	Monthly	01-May-2025	01-Jun-2025	Shower knob loose
203	Electrical Panel	Inspect sockets & switches	Quarterly	15-Mar-2025	15-Jun-2025	OK

4.3.3. Corrective Maintenance

Corrective maintenance in a hotel refers to the reactive repairs and restoration of equipment, systems, or facilities after they have failed or malfunctioned. It's essentially fixing things when they go wrong, rather than trying to prevent issues through regular maintenance.

• **Focus on Repairs:**

Corrective maintenance focuses on addressing problems that have already occurred, restoring equipment to its normal operating condition.

• **Reactive Approach:**

It's a reactive rather than a proactive approach. Maintenance activities are triggered by an identified failure or breakdown.

Examples:

Examples include repairing a broken air conditioner, fixing a leaky faucet, replacing a burnt-out light bulb, or fixing a malfunctioning elevator.

• **Potential for Downtime:**

Corrective maintenance can lead to unexpected downtime for the affected equipment or facility, which can disrupt hotel operations and potentially impact guest experience.

• **Cost Implications:**

While corrective maintenance might seem cost-effective in the short term (as

you're not performing regular maintenance), it can lead to higher long-term costs due to unexpected repairs, potential damage from delayed repairs, and potential loss of revenue from downtime.

• **Contrast with Preventive Maintenance:**

Corrective maintenance is the opposite of preventive maintenance, which focuses on regular inspections and maintenance to prevent issues from arising in the first place.

4.3.4. Predictive Maintenance

Predictive maintenance relies on data analytics to predict failures. It answers the question: "When is a machine likely to fail?"

Predictive maintenance in hotels is a strategy that uses data and analytics to anticipate equipment failures before they occur, allowing for proactive maintenance interventions. This approach helps hotels optimize maintenance schedules, reduce downtime, and improve overall efficiency and guest experience.

It is a more advanced approach than traditional reactive maintenance, which only addresses issues after a failure has happened.

In essence, predictive maintenance transforms hotel maintenance from a reactive process to a proactive and data-driven approach, leading to significant benefits in terms of cost, efficiency, and guest satisfaction

How it works:

• **Data Collection:**

Predictive maintenance relies on collecting data from various sources, such as sensors on equipment (e.g., HVAC systems, elevators, plumbing), historical maintenance records, and operational data.

• **Analysis:**

This data is then analysed using algorithms and machine learning techniques to identify patterns and predict potential failures.

4.3.4.1. Proactive Maintenance:

Maintenance personnel can arrange repairs and replacements ahead of time using projections, reducing downtime and disturbances.

Benefits for Hotels:

• **Reduced Downtime:** By anticipating problems, equipment failures can be

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

prevented, unexpected disruptions to guest services can be reduced.

• Cost Savings:

It can lead to significant cost savings by preventing costly emergency repairs and extending the lifespan of equipment.

• Improved Guest Experience:

A hotel with minimal disruptions ensures a comfortable and enjoyable stay for its guests.

• Enhanced Efficiency:

Improved maintenance schedules contribute to overall operational efficiency.

• Better Asset Management:

It helps hotels make informed decisions about maintenance of equipment and replacement, improving asset management strategies.

Examples:

• HVAC Systems:

Temperature, pressure, and airflow can be monitored by sensors to predict potential issues with air-conditioning units, providing for timely maintenance before the system failure, during peak season.

• Elevators:

Problems with elevator components, can be identified by vibration analysis and other sensor data, preventing potential problems like unexpected breakdowns and ensuring smooth operation.

• Electrical Systems:

Electrical parameter monitoring can help detect potential hazards and prevent electrical fires, improving safety for both guests and staff.

4.3.5. Emergency Maintenance

Emergency maintenance in a hotel refers to urgent, unplanned repairs, or actions needed to address issues that pose immediate risks to guests, staff, or property. Situations like these, require immediate attention, often involving a instant response to prevent further damage or danger. Emergency maintenance is not scheduled and arises unexpectedly, unlike routine maintenance.

A well-defined emergency maintenance plan is crucial to ensure guest safety, minimize disruptions, and protect the reputation of any hotel. It should include procedures for identifying, assessing, and responding to emergencies, as well as protocols for communication and resource mobilisation.

Key characteristics of emergency maintenance:

• **Urgent and unplanned:** Happens unexpectedly, requires immediate action. Prioritized over routine tasks: This type of maintenance takes precedence over other types of maintenance such as, scheduled maintenance.

Focus on safety and preventing further damage: The goal is to minimize harm to guests, staff, and property.

• **Requires a rapid response:** Hotels must have protocols and resources in place to handle emergencies quickly.

• **Documentation:** Recording all actions taken during emergency maintenance need to be recorded for future reference and insurance purposes.

Examples of emergency maintenance:

• **Burst pipes:**
A burst pipe can cause flooding, property damage, and probable safety hazards.

• **Elevator entrapment:**
Immediate repair is essential in case a guests get trapped in an elevator.

• **Power outages:**
Loss of electricity, suddenly, can disrupt guest services and create concerns for safety, with focus on areas like kitchens.

• **Gas leaks:**
Require immediate evacuation and repairs, it has to be done on a war footing to prevent potential explosions or health issues.

• **HVAC system failures during extreme weather:**
An air conditioning system malfunction during a heatwave or heating system failure in the winter can create discomfort for the guests and pose health risks.

• **Fires or fire alarm system failures:**
Immediate action to ensure guest and staff safety and prevent property damage is necessitated.

• **Security system failures:**
A security system malfunction compromises guest safety and requires immediate attention.

Check Back Questions:

1. Routine maintenance is only performed when a problem occurs in a hotel system or facility.
2. Preventive maintenance helps reduce long-term costs by avoiding equipment breakdowns.
3. Emergency maintenance is always scheduled in advance to minimize risks.
4. Corrective maintenance follows a proactive approach and is performed before any issues occur.
5. Predictive maintenance uses data and analytics to forecast equipment failures.

4.3.6. Deep Cleaning / Seasonal Maintenance

Deep cleaning or seasonal maintenance in a hotel refers to a thorough and intensive cleaning process that goes beyond regular daily housekeeping, focusing on areas often overlooked and involving tasks like steam cleaning upholstery, deep carpet extraction, sanitizing high-touch surfaces, and cleaning behind furniture and inside appliances. It is often done during low-occupancy seasons to clean and restore areas. This process is crucial for maintaining hygiene, extending the life of furnishings, and enhancing guest satisfaction.

Key aspects:

• **Scope:**

Deep cleaning targets every nook and cranny, right from high level dusting; of ceiling fans and light fixtures to ground level; baseboards, tile grout, and even the kitchen equipment.

• **Frequency:**

Daily cleaning maintains the requisite standards, deep cleaning typically performed several times a year (e.g., 2-4 times for guestrooms, 3-6 times for public areas) based on the hotel's traffic and volume.

• **Specific Areas:**

Deep cleaning goes beyond guestrooms to include public areas, kitchens, common restrooms, and recreational facilities.

• **Benefits:**

It improves the entire aesthetic and sanitation of the hotel, prevents the buildup of dirt and grime, reduces potential health risks, and also contributes to a better return on investment (RoI) in its assets.

• **Seasonal Adjustments:**

Seasonal maintenance includes specific tasks related to the time of year, such as managing frozen plumbing in cold climates or cleaning outdoor areas for summer resorts.

Match The Following:

Column A	Column B
A. Routine Maintenance	1. Uses data to forecast failures
B. Preventive Maintenance	2. Done daily to ensure smooth guest experience
C. Corrective Maintenance	3. Urgent response to unplanned issues
D. Predictive Maintenance	4. Scheduled checks to prevent breakdowns
E. Emergency Maintenance	5. Fixes problems after they occur

4.3.7. Guest Room Maintenance

This focuses on the upkeep of all facilities in-room, to ensure comfort and safety. It includes daily inspections, responses to guest complaints too. It includes a wide range of tasks aimed at ensuring comfort, safety, and satisfaction of the guest. Regular cleaning, upkeep of amenities, and preventative maintenance to address imminent issues before they escalate is necessary. Guest room maintenance contributes to a positive guest experience and helps maintain the reputation and operational efficiency of a hotel.

Room maintenance activities include;

• **Cleaning:**

It involves daily tasks like bed-making, bathrooms cleaning, dusting, vacuuming, and restocking supplies. Deep cleaning is generally done less frequently, such as weekly or monthly, and it may include cleaning carpets, upholstery, and windows etc.

• **Amenity Maintenance:**

Ensuring all in-room amenities, like TVs, phones, minibars, and coffee

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

makers, are functioning correctly is crucial. This also includes checking and replenishing toiletries and other guest supplies.

• Linen Maintenance:

Hotels use linen extensively, with star hotels focussing on bright white linen, be it bed or bathroom linen. Laundering using the right detergent, number of washes, stain removal are integral to prevent damage to linen.

• Preventative Maintenance:

This involves regular inspections of various systems and equipment to identify and address potential issues before they cause problems. Examples include checking HVAC systems, plumbing fixtures, electrical outlets, and lighting.

• Safety and Security:

Maintaining smoke detectors, fire extinguishers, and other safety equipment is essential. Regular inspections and testing of these items are crucial for guest safety.

• Furniture and Fixtures:

Inspecting, repairing and maintaining furniture, including beds, chairs, and tables, for wear and tear is important. Repairing or replacing damaged items promptly is necessary.

• Coordination:

Guest room maintenance often involves coordinating with other departments, such as housekeeping, engineering, and security, to ensure smooth operations and address guest requests or concerns.

Benefits of effective guest room maintenance:

• Enhanced Guest Satisfaction:

A well-maintained room contributes to a positive guest experience, leading to repeat business and positive reviews.

• Cost Savings:

Preventative maintenance can help identify and fix minor issues before they become major problems, saving on costly repairs and replacements.

• Improved Efficiency:

Streamlined maintenance processes can lead to faster room turnover and better resource allocation.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

• Reduced Safety Risks:

Regular checks of safety equipment and systems help minimize potential hazards and ensure a safe environment for guests and staff.

Caselet:

During a corporate conference, the air conditioning units of rooms on the sixth floor failed, in the morning, causing the guests to be delayed in getting ready for the conference. Complaints started pouring in from rooms and the team leaders.

Discussion Questions:

What were the maintenance flaws?
How could this situation have been prevented?
What would you do as a part of service recovery?

4.3.8. Contract Maintenance

Contract maintenance involves outsourcing various maintenance and repair tasks to external service providers who are specialised, through annual maintenance contracts (AMCs) for better upkeep of the hotel.

This practice is common if specialised equipment is required, either for routine services or emergency repairs, allowing hotels to focus on guest services.

Types of services:

This type of maintenance covers a wide range of services, including:

• **General building maintenance:** Including electrical, plumbing, and Heating Ventilation and Airconditioning (HVAC) systems.

• **Specialized equipment maintenance:** Such as kitchen equipment, laundry machinery etc.

• **Grounds maintenance:** Activities such as pest control, landscaping, and outdoor maintenance.

• **Cleaning services:** Specialized cleaning like duct cleaning, janitorial services etc.

• **Emergency repairs:** Prompt response to unexpected issues to be given.

Advantages:

• **Cost savings:** Reduces overall maintenance costs compared to hiring in-house staff, especially for specialized skills or infrequent tasks.

• **Access to expertise:** Specialised knowledge and skilled hands are available to hotels, without hiring full-time staff.

• **Flexibility:** Maintenance services can be scaled up or down based on demand.

• **Focus on core business:** Hotel staff are free to focus on guest services, as they are not bound by specialised tasks.

Disadvantages:

• **Potential for loss of control:** Hotels may have less direct control over maintenance operations or manpower.

• **Communication challenges:** Coordination between hotel staff and external contractors can be complex.

• **Cost increases:** Specialized services can be expensive, especially if few contractors dominate the market.

Contract types:

Common contract types include:

• **Lump-sum contracts:** Fixed price for a defined scope of work.
• **Unit-price contracts:** Payment based on the quantity of work performed.
• **Service contracts:** Regular maintenance and repairs for a set fee.
• **Time and material contracts:** Payment based on actual time and materials used.

Choosing a contractor:

Factors to consider include:

• **Experience and reputation:** Look for contractors with a proven track record in the hospitality industry.

• **Response time and availability:** Ensure the contractor can respond promptly to emergencies.

• **Pricing and payment terms:** Compare quotes and ensure clear payment terms.

• **Insurance and licensing:** Verify the contractor has proper insurance and licensing.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Table 1: Additional types of Maintenance

Types of Maintenance

Type	Description	Example in Hotel Operations
1. Preventive	Scheduled maintenance carried out to prevent equipment failure.	Regular servicing of HVAC systems, elevators, or kitchen equipment.
2. Corrective	Action taken after a fault or failure is detected, to restore functionality	Repairing a leaking faucet or a faulty air conditioning unit
3. Predictive	Maintenance based on real-time data and equipment condition monitoring	Using sensors to detect vibration in motors or compressors
4. Routine	Day-to-day minor maintenance tasks done at regular intervals	Cleaning air filters, lubricating door hinges, checking light fixtures
5. Emergency	Unplanned repairs done urgently due to sudden breakdowns	Fixing a power outage or a burst pipe immediately
6. Deferred	Postponing maintenance activities due to budget or resource constraints	Delaying repainting of guest rooms or refurbishing older equipment
7. Breakdown	Maintenance done only after the equipment has completely failed	Replacing a burnt-out motor after it stops working
8. Condition-Based	Carried out when indicators show signs of decreasing performance	Servicing a water pump when pressure drops or noise increases
9. Scheduled	Maintenance planned at specific intervals as per manufacturer's guidelines	Annual service of boilers or kitchen exhaust systems
10. Shutdown	Maintenance done when the facility or equipment is out of operation	Deep cleaning or overhaul of equipment during hotel off-season or renovation

Check Back Questions:

1. Define preventive maintenance with an example.
2. Differentiate between routine and predictive maintenance.
3. Why is guest room maintenance crucial for guest satisfaction?
4. Describe a real-world example where contract maintenance is preferred.
Evaluate the effectiveness of predictive maintenance in modern hotels.

Caselet:

A luxury resort in Goa was gearing up for a high-profile wedding. The Chief Engineer insisted on executing the preventive maintenance schedule one week in advance. During checks, they discovered a fault in one of the three central HVAC chillers. If undetected, it would have led to cooling failure during the main ceremony. The unit was repaired in time, and the event proceeded without any disruptions.

Discussion Questions:

1. Define preventive maintenance with two examples from a hotel.
2. Differentiate between routine, corrective, and predictive maintenance with examples.
3. If an elevator frequently stops working in a hotel, suggest a suitable type of maintenance and justify your answer.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

4.4. Snagging and De-snagging / Maintenance Log Book

Snagging and de-snagging are quality control practices after construction or renovation, while the maintenance log book is a systematic record that supports transparency and follow-up.

4.4.1. Snagging and De-snagging

Snagging and de-snagging refer to the processes of identifying and then correcting defects or issues in guest rooms or public areas. It could also mean the identification of defects during pre-opening stages or post-renovation.

Snagging is the initial inspection to find problems, while de-snagging is the follow-up to ensure those problems have been properly fixed.

De-snagging is the follow-up to ensure those problems have been properly fixed or the process of correcting errors before a formal handover. These processes are crucial for maintaining high standards of cleanliness and functionality, ultimately enhancing guest satisfaction and operational efficiency.

	Snagging	De-snagging
Purpose	To thoroughly inspect a hotel (newly built or renovated or operational) and create a list of defects, errors, or omissions that need to be addressed before it can be considered fully complete and ready for guests. To identify any defects, damage, or areas requiring attention in a room or public space	To verify that all issues identified during snagging have been addressed and corrected to the required standard

Scope	This can include a wide range of items, such as: • Cosmetic flaws like paint smudges, scratches, or uneven tiling. • Plumbing issues like leaks, poor drainage, or malfunctioning fixtures. • Electrical problems like faulty wiring or malfunctioning outlets. • Mechanical issues like malfunctioning HVAC systems. • Doors, windows, and security hardware issues. • Furniture and carpentry defects. • Other functional and aesthetic issues. • Involves a detailed inspection of various hotel elements, including: **Structural:** Cracks, leaks, etc. **Finishes:** Paint, tiling, flooring, etc. **Fixtures and Fittings:** Door handles, faucets, lighting, etc. **Equipment:** HVAC, kitchen appliances, etc. **Safety:** Fire safety systems, emergency exits, etc.	Focuses on checking each item on the snag-list, to ensure that it has been repaired/replaced as per the prescribed standards.
Process	It includes a detailed inspection, mostly by a specialised snagging team or an assigned quality control team, documenting all defects with descriptions and sometimes photographs. HK staff or supervisors conduct thorough inspections using checklists, recording all identified issues.	Involves a second inspection, often by the same or a similar team, to confirm that the repairs are complete, done correctly, and that no new issues have been introduced during the repair process. A follow-up inspection is conducted after repairs/replacements have been done, ensuring proper working condition of everything in the area as per the hotel's standards.
Output	A snag list/report detailing all the identified issues, is then provided to the relevant contractors and the hotel management for resolution.	A confirmation that all snags have been resolved, allowing for the final handover of the hotel or a section of it to the management.
Importance	To detect problems, is an integral part of a hotel's quality assurance process,	De-snagging is vital to ensure that the property is in optimal condition before guest arrival and to maintain the hotel's reputation for quality.

Examples	Chipped or cracked paint, dented or damaged furniture, broken or malfunctioning equipment, cleaning issues, plumbing leaks, or broken fixtures and missing items.	Engineering staff correct snags, and perform reinspection.

Benefits of Snagging and De-snagging:

• Enhanced Guest Experience:

A positive and comfortable stay for guests can be provided by a well-maintained environment.

• Reduced Maintenance Costs:

Identification and resolution of issues can prevent minor problems from escalating into costly repairs when detected early.

• Improved Operational Efficiency:

A smooth process of snagging and de-snagging ensures that rooms are ready for occupancy in a timely manner.

• Brand Reputation:

Maintaining consistently high standards of cleanliness and maintenance contributes to a positive brand image and guest loyalty.

Sample Snag List Format

Snag No.	Area	Issue Identified	Assigned To	Date Noted	Status	Remarks
001	Room 405	Paint peeling off wall	Painter	01-May-2025	In Progress	
002	Corridor 2	Light flickering	Electrician	02-May-2025	Completed	Replaced tube light

CASELET:

A new hotel wing at a 5-star property in Jaipur was ready for launch. However, the snagging checklist was skipped in the rush to meet the inauguration deadline. In the first week, guest complaints flooded in—broken blinds, leaking taps, and rooms smelling of paint, etc. The hotel had to close 30 rooms for a week, resulting in revenue loss and poor guest reviews.

Discussion Questions:
What is snagging in the context of hotel maintenance?
As per you, what should have been the ideal procedure to be followed after the rooms were handed over for operations?
Design a snag checklist for a newly renovated guest bathroom.

4.4.2. Maintenance Log Book

It is a record of all maintenance activities, including repairs, inspections, and preventative maintenance, to ensure upkeep of the property and its facilities. It also helps track work orders, schedules, and maintenance history, thus contributing to efficient operations and guest satisfaction. The logbook also tracks all maintenance requests, responses, and resolutions, answering when, what, and how an issue was addressed.

4.4.2.1 Contents of a Hotel Maintenance Log Book: Sample

• **Work Order Information:**
The details about the maintenance task, with the date, location, description of the problem, the assigned personnel, and the completion status is to mentioned.

• **Preventive Maintenance Schedule:**
A roster of routine inspections and maintenance tasks for various hotel systems and equipment, like electrical systems, HVAC and plumbing.

• **Equipment Records:**
Information about the equipment, including serial numbers, purchase dates, and maintenance history to be specified.

• **Safety and Compliance Checks:**
Inspection logs of fire safety equipment, emergency lighting, and other safety systems, to monitor compliance with the regulations.

• **Guest Room Maintenance:**
Records of maintenance and repairs in guest rooms, including any reported issues and resolutions.

• **Inventory of Spare Parts:**
Monitoring spare parts used in maintenance and repairs, helping manage inventory levels and prevent delays.

• **Checklists:**
Forms/ SoP/ templates for each maintenance task, ensuring consistency and thoroughness.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

4.4.2.2 Benefits of Using a Maintenance Log Book:

• Improved Efficiency:

It streamlines maintenance processes, makes it easier to track work, schedule tasks, and manage resources.

• Reduced Costs:

Maintenance when proactive, prevents costly repairs and extends the lifespan of equipment and facilities.

• Enhanced Guest Satisfaction:

A well-maintained room and hotel facilities contribute to a positive guest experience.

• Safety and Compliance:

Maintenance and inspections done regularly, helps ensure a safe and comfortable environment for guests and staff.

• Accountability:

Accurate records and clearly defined responsibilities improve accountability for maintenance tasks.

4.4.2.3 Types of Maintenance Log Books:

• **Digital Logbooks:** that are software-based and allow real-time tracking, scheduling, and reporting of maintenance activities.

• **Physical Logbooks:** these are traditional paper-based logbooks for recording maintenance information.

• **Checklists:** such as templates or forms made specifically for specific maintenance tasks, ensuring consistency and thoroughness.

Maintenance Log Book Format							
Date	Room/Area	Complaint Details	Reported	Action Taken	Time	Engineer	Remarks
05-May-25	Room 102	TV not working	Front Desk	Replaced power cable	3:30 PM	Suren	Working now
06-May-25	Lobby	AC making noise	Housekeeping	Cleaned filter	11:00 AM	Ravi	Noise reduced

Sample Guest-Room Maintenance Log Book

Room number	Date/time	Issue reported	Action taken	Staff responsible
05-May-25	Room 102	TV not working	Front Desk	Replaced power cable
06-May-25	Lobby	AC making noise	Housekeeping	Cleaned filter

4.5. Role of Hotel Maintenance/ Hotel Engineering Department

The engineering or maintenance department is the backbone of the hotel's physical infrastructure. It ensures guest safety, comfort, and energy efficiency.

Core Responsibilities:

• **Maintaining Facilities and Equipment:**

Ensuring all aspects of the hotel, from guest rooms to common areas, are in optimal working condition. Regular inspections, repairs, and preventative maintenance is a necessity.

• **Guest Comfort and Satisfaction:**

Guest requests related to maintenance issues to be addressed promptly and efficiently to ensure a pleasant stay for them.

• **Safety and Security:**

Implement and enforce safety protocols, conduct regular checks, and maintain safety equipment like fire alarms and emergency lighting.

• **Energy Management:**

Optimising energy consumption by monitoring and controlling systems. For example, HVAC and lighting, and implementing sustainable practices to reduce the impact of hotel operations on the environmental.

• **Emergency Response:**

Handle emergencies such as power outages, plumbing problems, or other unexpected issues.

• **Asset Management:**

Protect hotel assets by extending the life of equipment and reduce the need for frequent replacements.

• **Record Keeping:**

Maintain detailed records of maintenance activities, repairs, and inventory.

• **Compliance:**

Ensure hotel compliance with all relevant health, safety, and environmental regulations.

Check Back Questions:
1. List the key responsibilities of a hotel engineering department.
2. How does maintenance contribute to guest safety?
3. In what ways does the department support housekeeping?
4. Evaluate the department's role during emergencies.

4.6. Interdepartmental Coordination

Effective interdepartmental coordination between the hotel maintenance department and other departments is crucial for seamless hotel operations and guest satisfaction. This coordination ensures that maintenance issues are addressed promptly, preventing disruptions to guest services and maximizing efficiency.

4.6.1. Coordination with Housekeeping

Housekeeping and maintenance jointly ensure guest rooms are functional and clean.

- **Room Maintenance:**
Housekeeping staff often identifies maintenance needs while cleaning rooms, such as faulty electrical outlets, dripping faucets, or broken furniture.

- **Repair Coordination:**
Housekeeping coordinates with maintenance for repairs, renovations, and general upkeep of rooms and public areas.

- **VIP Room Inspection:**
The housekeeping department, particularly the Executive Assistant Housekeeper (Rooms), inspects VIP rooms before guest arrival to ensure all amenities are in place and functioning correctly.

Caselet:

Housekeeping finds a major leak in one of the public-area washrooms and informs the Engineering. The Engineering has to ensure the problem is fixed without causing disturbance and spoiling the experience of the visitors to the hotel.

Discussion Questions:

1. Why is coordination between housekeeping and maintenance crucial?
2. Create a work flow chart for handling a maintenance request reported by the HK supervisor.

4.6.2. Coordination with Front Office

• Room Status Updates:

The maintenance is informed about occupied, vacant, out-of-order, and under-repair rooms, allowing them to prioritize tasks and schedule work.

• Guest Requests:

Guest requests for maintenance, such as appliance repairs, electrical or plumbing issues are passed to for reconciliation.

• VIP Room Preparation:

Both the teams coordinate to prepare VIP rooms, ensuring all amenities and facilities are in perfect working order.

• Identifying Potential Issues:

Potential maintenance issues observed by the Front office, such as malfunctioning lights or leaky faucets, are passed on to the maintenance department via necessary job orders.

• Special Requests:

Front office coordinates with maintenance for special requests like setting up additional facilities in VIP rooms.

4.6.3. Coordination with Food & Beverage Service department

• Banquet Setup:

Setting up for banquets and events, ensuring proper lighting, sound systems, and other necessary equipment as desired by the guest.

• Special Requests:

Maintenance ensures that any special requests related to food and beverage

service, like setting up – lighting, plumbing, specific equipment etc – in the restaurants, coffee shops, lawns or banquet areas are fulfilled.

• Restaurant Maintenance:

Repairs and maintenance of restaurant equipment, to ensure smooth operations.

4.6.4. Security:

• Security System Maintenance:

Proper functioning of the hotel's security systems, including surveillance cameras and alarms.

• Emergency Repairs:

Maintenance handles security-related maintenance requests, such as repairing broken doors or locks.

4.6.5. Other Departments:

• Laundry:

Maintenance ensures proper functioning of laundry equipment, which includes washing machines and dryers.

• Sales & Marketing:

Special events and promotions, ensuring all facilities are in top condition.

• Purchase:

Procurement of parts and materials needed for repairs.

Caselet:

The Executive Housekeeper and the Chief Engineer of the Hotel Regency did not communicate well with each other due to adverse comments from the EHK about the maintenance department's style and speed of functioning. This rift was caused a few months back during one of the morning meetings. The hotel was hosting a massive New Year's Eve party; the sales department had sold many tickets to the who's-who of the city for the event. The guests checked-in into the hotel on the noon of the 31st of December 20XX. By evening the hotel hotline was buzzing with complaints on multiple room maintenance issues from these guests.

However, the complaint tickets to the maintenance department were delayed, leading to improper complaint redressal, which caused negative guest reviews on social media.

> **Discussion Questions:**
> 1. Which departments need to coordinate most frequently with maintenance?
> 2. What was the main cause of the complaints and failed service recovery?
> 3. Propose methods to improve interdepartmental communication.

4.7. Room Division Audit

Audits help evaluate the quality, safety, and brand compliance of hotel operations. They are essential for certifications, to gain guest trust, and for internal improvement.

Room division audits, like other audits, can be categorized into several types:

Internal (First-Party), External (Third-Party), Brand, and ISO audits.

Internal audits assess a company's own processes, while third-party audits are conducted by independent organizations. Brand audits focus on brand consistency and standards, and ISO audits verify compliance with ISO standards.

4.7.1. Types of audits

4.7.1.1. Internal (First-Party) Audit:

It is conducted by the company's own personnel to evaluate their systems, processes, and performance in relation to established standards and objectives.

Audits are crucial for identifying areas of improvement in the organization and ensure their alignment with company goals.

An internal audit might assess housekeeping procedures, guest registration processes, or inventory management for the rooms division.

The goal is to ensure internal improvements check if all processes align with company standards.

Examples:

- Checklist-based inspections
- Documentation review
- Mystery audits for unbiased evaluation

4.7.1.2. External (Third-Party) Audit:

External/ Third-party audits are performed by independent, external organizations or certification bodies.

An unbiased assessment of a company's compliance with industry standards and regulatory requirements is provided by them.

A third-party audit might assess adherence to safety regulations, cleanliness standards, or data privacy policies, in the rooms division.

External audits are often required for certifications or to demonstrate compliance to external stakeholders.

4.7.1.3. Brand Audit:

Brand audits focus on evaluating the effectiveness of a company's brand strategy and its execution. In room division, this could involve assessing how well the brand is represented in guest interactions, online presence, and physical environment.

Courtesy: Mr. Legoui Yahia - The executive voice of hospitality & Forbes standards

The audit would examine factors like brand messaging, visual identity, and the overall guest experience to ensure consistency with the brand promise.

Hotel brand audits can encompass various areas to ensure quality and consistency. Some common types include: Brand Standard Audits, Financial Audits (covering revenue, expenses, and inventory),

Operational Audits (including front desk, housekeeping, and F&B), Health and Safety Audits, Energy Management Audits, and Guest Experience Audits. Additionally, Rate Audits (checking rate loading and parity), Amenity Audits, and Cancellation Policy Audits are crucial for revenue management.

Operational Audits (including front desk, housekeeping, and F&B), Health and Safety Audits, Energy Management Audits, and Guest Experience Audits. Additionally, Rate Audits (checking rate loading and parity), Amenity Audits, and Cancellation Policy Audits are crucial for revenue management.

4.7.1.3.1. Brand Standard Audits: These ensure hotels adhere to the brand's specific guidelines for guest experience, cleanliness, and overall presentation. This can include checklists for room inspections, restaurant hygiene, and general hotel maintenance, often customized to the brand's requirements.

Examples: Room inspection checklists, restaurant hygiene checklists, and general maintenance checklists.

4.7.1.3.2. Financial Audits: These audits verify the accuracy of financial records, including revenue streams, expenses, and inventory management. Daily revenue audits, such as balancing cash control and credit card transactions, are also part of this process.

Examples: Revenue audits, expense audits, inventory audits.

4.7.1.3.3. Operational Audits: These audits assess the efficiency and effectiveness of various hotel departments, such as front desk operations, housekeeping, and food and beverage services.

Examples: Front office and guest relations audits, housekeeping audits, and F&B audits.

4.7.1.3.4. Health, Safety, and Security Audits: These audits focus on ensuring a safe and secure environment for both guests and staff, covering areas like fire safety, emergency procedures, and security systems.

Examples: Safety and security audits, health and hygiene audits.

4.7.1.3.5. Guest Experience Audits: These audits evaluate the overall guest experience, including satisfaction levels, complaint handling procedures, and the quality of complimentary services.

Examples: Guest satisfaction surveys, mystery audits, and reviews of loyalty programs.

4.7.1.3.6. Rate Audits: These audits ensure accurate and consistent pricing across different channels, including checking for correct rate loading, parity across third-party sites, and proper application of negotiated discounts and amenities.

Examples: Rate availability audits, rate load audits, and rate parity audits.

4.7.1.3.7. Other Audits:

Additional audits might include energy management audits, laundry audits, and engineering and maintenance audits, focusing on specific aspects of hotel operations.

A comprehensive hotel brand audit will incorporate various types of audits to ensure compliance with brand standards, financial accuracy, operational efficiency, and a positive guest experience

4.7.1.4. ISO Audit:

ISO audits assess the adherence on an organization to specific ISO standards, such as ISO 9001 (Quality Management) or ISO 27001 (Information Security Management) etc.

These audits are typically conducted by accredited third-party certification bodies.

An ISO audit might focus on quality management systems related to guest services, or information security practices for guest data in case of rooms division department.

ISO certification is often a requirement for demonstrating a commitment to quality and security to customers.

Caselet:

Hotel Seaview a star hotel in Mumbai, was franchised to a global brand for the past 5 years. They were required to conduct in-house audits regularly to check if brand standards were being followed. The hotel had stopped placing all the stipulated amenities in the guest rooms since the outbreak of Covid. They had taken the necessary permission to do so from their franchisor.

In the year 2022 they were informed by the franchisor to revert to placing the full set of amenities in the guestrooms.

A global brand auditor visited the hotel as a mystery guest and found that room amenities did not meet the brand's current standards, which was later informed to the franchising brand. The hotel had not updated its checklist since 2022. As a result, the property was issued a compliance notice and failed the audit.

Discussion Questions:

1. What is the purpose of a room division audit?
2. List any three types of audits applicable in hotels.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

> **Check Back Questions**
> 1. What is a brand audit in hotels?
> 2. Differentiate between internal and third-party audits.
> 3. How does maintenance impact audit scores?
> 4. Analyse how internal audit feedback can improve room division operations.

4.8. Sustainable Housekeeping Practices

Sustainability in housekeeping promotes responsible resource use and waste management. It addresses the 'why' of eco-practices: reducing the hotel's environmental footprint.

Modern sustainable housekeeping practices in the hotel industry include using eco-friendly cleaning products, conserving water and energy, minimizing waste, and implementing robust recycling and composting programs. Hotels are also focusing on sustainable architecture and construction, reducing reliance on single-use plastics, and engaging guests in their sustainability efforts.

Hotels can become more sustainable by adopting the following practices;

1. Eco-Friendly Cleaning Products:

- Transition to cleaning products with biodegradable ingredients and minimal environmental impact.
  o Use natural cleaning solutions and avoiding harsh chemicals.

2. Water Conservation:

- Install low-flow showerheads, faucets, and toilets.
- Encourage guests to reuse towels and linens.
- Utilise efficient laundry practices and optimise water usage in cleaning processes.

3. Energy Efficiency:

- Replace regular lights to LED lighting and energy-efficient appliances.
- Install smart thermostats and occupancy sensors to optimize energy consumption.
- Utilise natural lighting and ventilation whenever possible.

4. Waste Reduction and Recycling:

Hotels generate solid and liquid waste. Managing this waste is essential for hygiene, compliance, and sustainability.

- Implement comprehensive recycling programs for paper, plastic, glass, and other materials.
- Compost organic waste, including food scraps.
- Eliminate single-use plastics by providing refillable toiletries and dispensers.
- Donate or repurpose furniture, linens, and other items during renovations.
- Explore options like waste-to-energy and repurposing food waste.

5. Guest Engagement:

- Provide information and incentives for guests to participate in sustainability initiatives.
- Encourage guests to reuse towels and linens.
- Offer eco-friendly amenities and services, such as refillable toiletries and bicycle rentals.

6. Staff Training and Awareness:

- Educate housekeeping staff on sustainable practices and the importance of environmental responsibility.
- Involve staff in the development and implementation of sustainability programs.

7. Procurement and Supply Chain:

- Partner with vendors who prioritize sustainability and offer eco-friendly products.
- Source local and organic ingredients for hotel restaurants and minimise food waste.

8. Sustainable Architecture and Construction:

- Design and build hotels with energy-efficient features and sustainable materials.
- Incorporating green spaces and landscaping to improve air quality and reduce the urban heat island effect.
- Certifications by Indian Green Building Council (IGBC), GRIHA (Green Rating for Integrated Habitat Assessment), and Bureau of Energy Efficiency (BEE), Travel for LiFE, in India and LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) globally help creating awareness and compliance.

4.8.1. Waste Management

Hotels generate a wide variety of waste, which can be broadly categorized into organic, plastic, paper, glass, metal, hazardous, electronic, textile, construction, and bulky waste. These categories encompass everything from food scraps and packaging to cleaning products, old furniture, and broken electronics.

4.8.1.1. Types of waste, segregation and disposal of waste

Types of Waste

- **Organic Waste:** This includes food scraps from the kitchen, leftovers from meals, and other biodegradable materials.
- **Plastic Waste:** This category covers single-use plastics like water bottles, toiletry containers, and packaging materials.
- **Paper and Cardboard Waste:** This includes packaging, documents, brochures, and other printed materials.
- **Glass Waste:** This encompasses bottles from beverages, room service, and minibars.
- **Metal Waste:** This includes aluminum cans and other metal packaging.
- **Hazardous Waste:** This category includes cleaning products, light bulbs, and batteries.
- **Electronic Waste (E-waste):** This includes old computers, TVs, and phones.
- **Textile Waste:** This includes used bed linens, towels, and other fabric-based items.
- **Construction and Renovation Waste:** This includes debris from construction and renovation projects.
- **Bulky Waste:** This includes furniture, mattresses, and appliances.
- **Miscellaneous Waste:** This category covers lost and found items and general waste from guest rooms and common areas.

Waste Segregation:

Hotels segregate waste into categories like paper, plastic, glass, food waste, and general waste, often using designated bins in guest rooms and back-of-house areas. Recyclable materials are collected separately and sent to recycling facilities. Food waste may be composted, and general waste

is typically sent to landfills or incinerators, with a focus on reducing overall waste through strategies like reducing packaging and encouraging reuse.

• **Categorization:**

Hotels typically separate waste into distinct streams, including:

> o **Recyclables:** Paper, cardboard, plastic bottles, glass, and aluminium.
>
> o **Food Waste:** Scraps from food preparation and leftovers from guests.
>
> o **General Waste:** Non-recyclable items that cannot be composted or recycled.

• **Bin Placement:**

Clearly labelled bins are placed in guest rooms, public areas, and back-of-house locations to encourage proper segregation by guests and staff.

• **Training:**

Staff are trained to understand the different waste categories and ensure proper sorting.

4.8.1.2. Importance of Waste Management:

• **Environmental Responsibility:**

Proper waste management minimizes the environmental impact of hotel operations, reducing landfill waste and pollution.

• **Cost Savings:**

Efficient waste management can lead to lower waste disposal costs and potentially reduce material costs through recycling and waste reduction.

• **Public Image:**

Demonstrating a commitment to sustainability can enhance a hotel's reputation and attract environmentally conscious guests.

Hotels employ several methods for effective waste management, including source reduction, recycling, composting, and proper disposal of non-recyclable waste. These methods aim to minimize environmental impact, reduce costs, and enhance the hotel's sustainability profile.

Common waste management practices that can be followed in hotels:

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

4.8.1.3. Waste Reduction:

• Reduce packaging:

Hotels can work with suppliers to minimise packaging or switch to recyclable/compostable options.

• Menu planning and portion control:

Implement strategies to reduce food waste through careful menu planning and offering various portion sizes.

• Encourage Reuse:

Hotels can encourage guests to reuse towels and linens, reducing the amount of laundry waste.

• Food Waste Management:

Implementing portion control, offering doggie bags, and using food waste smart meters can help minimize food waste.

• Sustainable Purchasing:

Choosing eco-friendly products and minimizing the use of disposable items contributes to overall waste reduction.

• Digital alternatives:

Utilise digital platforms for guest communication, check-in/check-out, and marketing to reduce paper consumption.

• Refillable amenities:

Provide refillable soap, shampoo, and conditioner dispensers instead of single-use plastic bottles.

4.8.1.4. Recycling:

• **Source separation:** Providing clearly labelled bins for different types of recyclables (paper, plastic, glass, etc.) in guest rooms and common areas.

• **Partner with recycling facilities:** Ensuring that collected recyclables are properly processed and diverted from landfills.

• **E-waste recycling:** Implement programs to recycle or donate old electronics.

4.8.1.5. Composting:

• **Food waste composting:** Utilise composting systems to convert food scraps and other organic waste into nutrient-rich compost.

• **Yard waste composting:** Compost yard waste from hotel grounds.

4.8.1.6. Disposal of Non-Recyclable Waste:

• **Incineration:** Burn waste, potentially with energy recovery, can be a disposal option for non-recyclable materials.

• **Landfill disposal:** As a last resort, non-recyclable waste can be sent to landfills.

4.8.1.7. Other Practices:

• **Waste audits:** Regularly assess waste generation to identify areas for improvement.

• **Staff training:** Educate staff on waste management procedures and the importance of waste reduction.

• **Guest engagement:** Encourage guests to participate in recycling and other waste reduction initiatives.

• **Donating leftover food:** Partner with food banks or charities to donate unused food.

4.8.2. Energy Conservation

Energy-saving practices reduce utility costs and carbon emissions. Hotels use a variety of methods to conserve energy, including efficient lighting, optimized HVAC systems, water conservation techniques, and renewable energy sources. They also implement smart technologies like occupancy sensors and energy management systems to reduce waste and improve overall efficiency.

The key methods that can be employed:

4.8.2.1. Efficient Lighting:

- **LED Lighting:**

Replace traditional incandescent bulbs with LEDs to reduce energy consumption by up to 75% and offer longer lifespans.

- **Smart Lighting:**

Utilise occupancy sensors and daylight sensors to automatically adjust lighting levels based on occupancy and natural light availability.

- **Lighting Controls:**

Implement master switch controls in guest rooms and public areas to easily turn off lights when not in use.

4.8.2.2. Optimized HVAC Systems:

- **Smart Thermostats:**

Install thermostats that automatically adjust room temperatures based on occupancy and pre-set schedules, optimizing heating and cooling.

- **HVAC Maintenance:**

Regularly maintain and tune up HVAC systems, including changing of air filters and ensuring proper insulation and weatherproofing, to prevent heat loss and reduce energy consumption.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

- **Insulation:**
Improve building insulation to significantly reduce heat transfer, minimizing the need for heating and cooling.
- **Window Films and Blinds:**
Utilise window films and blinds to regulate temperature by reducing heat gain in the summer and heat loss in the winter.

4.8.2.3. Water Conservation:

- **Low-flow Fixtures:**
Install low-flow showerheads and faucets in guest rooms to reduce water consumption.

- **Water Heating Efficiency:**
Optimise water heating systems by using energy-efficient water heaters or solar water heating systems.

- **Leak Detection and Repair:**
Address leaks in taps and toilets promptly to prevent water and energy waste.

4.8.2.4. Renewable Energy:

- **Solar Panels:**
Install solar panels to generate electricity from renewable energy sources, reducing reliance on fossil fuels.

- **Wind Turbines:** In some cases, hotels may also utilise wind turbines to generate electricity.

4.8.2.5. Energy Management Systems:

- **EMS:**
Install energy management systems to monitor and control energy consumption across different areas of the hotel.

- **Energy Audits:**
Conduct regular energy audits to identify areas of energy waste and inefficiency.

- **Smart Metering:**
Utilise smart electricity and water metering devices to track consumption patterns and identify potential areas for improvement.

4.8.2.6. Guest Engagement:

- **Involve Guests:**
Encouraging guests to participate in energy conservation efforts by adjusting room controls, turning off lights and electronics when leaving the room, and

• **Communication:**

Clearly communicate the hotel sustainability initiatives to guests through various touchpoints.

Activity:

Download the guidebook, read and prepare a report on – Energy Management in your hotel. - https://beeindia.gov.in/sites/default/files/guidebook-Hotel.pdf

Browse the link, read, discuss on – Save energy in hotels and reduce costs with smart technologies. Courtesy – Sensorflow - https://www.sensorflow.co/save-energy-hotel/

4.8.3. Eco-friendly Practices

Introduction

Eco-practices include chemical-free cleaning and green procurement.

Eco-friendly hotels are increasingly adopting various practices to minimize their environmental impact. These include energy efficiency measures like using LED lighting and renewable energy sources, water conservation techniques like low-flow fixtures and towel reuse programs, and waste reduction strategies such as recycling, composting, and eliminating single-use plastics. Hotels are also focusing on sustainable sourcing of materials, implementing green building practices, and offering eco-conscious amenities and services. Waste management and energy conservation practices discussed also go a long way in making hotels eco-friendly.

The points are listed below;

Energy Efficiency:

• **LED Lighting:**

Replace traditional incandescent bulbs with energy-efficient LED lighting to significantly reduce energy consumption.

• **Renewable Energy:**

Utilise solar panels, wind turbines, and other renewable energy sources to minimise reliance on fossil fuels and reduce carbon emissions.

• **Smart Thermostats:**

Implement automated systems that optimise heating and cooling based on occupancy and weather conditions saves energy.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

• **Energy-Efficient Appliances:**

Choose appliances with high energy efficiency ratings and upgrade older equipment to contribute to the overall energy conservation.

Water Conservation:

• **Low-Flow Fixtures:**

Install low-flow showerheads, faucets, and toilets reduces water consumption in guest rooms and public spaces.

• **Towel and Linen Reuse Programs:**

Encourage guests to reuse towels and linens reduces laundry frequency and water usage.

• **Rainwater Harvesting:**

Collection and use of rainwater for non-potable purposes like irrigation to significantly reduce reliance on municipal water sources.

• **Greywater Recycling:**

Implement Sewage Treatment Plants (STP) systems to treat and reuse wastewater for non-potable purposes to further minimise water consumption.

Waste Reduction:

• **Recycling Programs:**

Establish comprehensive recycling programs for various materials, including paper, plastic, glass, and aluminium, to help divert waste from landfills.

• **Composting:**

Composting food waste and other organic materials to reduce landfill volume and also create nutrient-rich soil for landscaping.

• **Eliminating Single-Use Plastics:**

Replace plastic straws, cutlery, water bottles, and other disposable items with reusable or biodegradable alternatives to reduce plastic waste.

• **Refillable Amenities:**

Provide shampoo, conditioner, and soap in refillable containers instead of individual bottles thereby minimising plastic waste.

• **Paperless Processes:**

Utilise technology to digitise registration, billing, and other processes to further reduce paper consumption.

Prioritise locally sourced building materials, food, and other supplies thereby minimising transportation emissions and support local economies.

• **Recycled and Reclaimed Materials:**

Utilise recycled and reclaimed wood, glass, and other materials in construction and design further reducing the demand for virgin resources.

• **Green Building Practices:**

Install energy-efficient HVAC systems, optimise natural light and ventilation, and incorporate green roofs and walls into building design to reduce environmental impact.

Caselet:

A business hotel in Pune implemented a towel/linen reuse program and replaced single-use toiletries with refillable dispensers. In three months, they saved over 20,000 litres of water and reduced plastic waste significantly. These initiatives were later highlighted in a national hospitality magazine.

Discussion Questions:

1. What kind of waste was reduced by this initiative?
2. Explain how the hotel conserved energy by implementing the programmes?
3. Design a waste management plan for a 100-room hotel.

Critically evaluate the long-term financial benefits of sustainable housekeeping initiatives in a mid-sized hotel.

4.9 Maintenance of Security and surveillance system

4.9.1.Security in a hotel – responsibilities

The security staff are responsible for the safety and security of the guest, staff and the hotel's property.

They are required to:

- Discourage criminal behaviour and unlawful activities within the hotel.
- Keep a watchful eye on suspicious people and actions.
- Prevent disorderly situations from arising or worsening.
- Safeguard both guest belongings and hotel property from loss or damage.
- Ensure that guests feel safe and protected on hotel grounds.
- Respond swiftly and effectively to any emergency situations.
- Prevent violent or harmful incidents targeting guests.
- Support law enforcement by providing relevant information and assistance during investigations.

assistance during investigations.
- Offer prompt medical help in case of guest emergencies.
- Secure guest assets, such as vehicles and luggage, from theft.
- Assist in the investigation and recovery of stolen possessions.
- Remove disruptive individuals and unauthorized persons from the hotel premises.

A robust hotel security system prevents
- **Theft and Burglary:** Surveillance systems and controlled access to the guest areas help prevent unauthorized individuals from entering guest rooms, storage areas, and restricted zones.
- **Vandalism:** Cameras and alarm systems acts as a strong deterrent against damage to property.
- **Unauthorized Entry:** Access control mechanisms ensure only permitted guests or staff can enter secure areas such as guestrooms, meeting rooms, or storage facilities.
- **Internal Theft:** Employee monitoring systems help track staff behaviour and reduce the risk of theft.

4.9.2. Various security & surveillance systems used in hotels:

Hotels utilize a variety of security and surveillance systems to ensure guest and staff safety, property protection, and data security. These systems include CCTV cameras, access control systems (including smart locks and keycards), intrusion detection systems, and cybersecurity measures. Hotels also employ emergency preparedness and response systems, including fire detection and suppression, and clear evacuation procedures.

- **CCTV Surveillance Systems:**
  High-definition cameras are strategically placed in public areas, entrances, and parking lots to monitor activity and deter crime.

- **Access Control Systems:**
  These systems, ranging from keycards to biometric scanners, control access to rooms, restricted areas, and sensitive data.

- **Intrusion Detection Systems:**
  These systems, including sensors and alarms, detect unauthorized entry or suspicious activity and alert security personnel.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

• Cybersecurity Measures:

Hotels implement measures to protect guest data and prevent cyber fraud, including encryption, two-factor authentication, and secure Wi-Fi networks.

• Emergency Preparedness and Response:

This includes fire detection and suppression systems, emergency evacuation plans, and training for staff on emergency procedures.

• AI and Machine Learning:

These technologies are increasingly being used to enhance surveillance, detect threats, and improve overall security operations.

• Mobile Apps and Virtual Assistants:

These technologies offer convenient and secure ways for guests to access services, manage their stay, and communicate with hotel staff.

• Wearable Panic Buttons:

These provide a discreet safety net for staff, allowing them to alert security in emergencies.

• Integration with Law Enforcement:

Hotels may collaborate with local law enforcement agencies to enhance security and response capabilities.

• Regular Maintenance and Updates:

Ensuring that all security systems are regularly maintained and updated is crucial for their effectiveness.

4.9.3.Maintenance of hotel safety & Security systems

Maintaining hotel security and surveillance systems involves regular checks, updates, and training to ensure optimal functionality and effectiveness. This includes inspecting cameras, access control systems, and emergency communication systems, as well as training staff on how to use the systems and respond to incidents. Hotels should also implement policies regarding camera usage and data privacy. By focusing on these areas, hotels can ensure their security and surveillance systems are effective in protecting guests, staff, and property.

Key areas of focus for maintenance and upkeep are:
Camera Systems:

o **Regular Cleaning:** Keeping camera lenses clean is crucial for maintaining image quality.

o **Functionality Checks:** Ensuring all cameras are functioning properly, including checking for dead or malfunctioning cameras.

o **Software Updates:** Keeping camera software up-to-date is essential for optimal performance and security.

o **Storage Management:** Ensuring sufficient storage capacity for recorded footage and proper management of stored data.

• **Access Control Systems:**

o **Key Management:** Regular checks on keycard systems, including ensuring proper access levels and timely deactivation of access for departed guests.

o **Keyless Entry Systems:** Maintaining and updating mobile access and other keyless entry systems to ensure seamless and secure entry.

o **Regular Audits:** Conducting periodic audits of access logs and permissions to identify and address any potential security vulnerabilities.

• **Emergency Systems:**

o **Communication Systems:** Testing and maintaining communication systems, including emergency phones and intercoms, to ensure they are working effectively.

o **Fire Safety Systems:** Regularly testing and maintaining fire alarms, sprinkler systems, and other fire safety equipment.

o **First Aid and Medical Equipment:** Ensuring first aid supplies and medical equipment are readily available and properly maintained.

• **Staff Training:**

o **System Usage:** Providing comprehensive training to staff on how to use the surveillance and access control systems.

o **Incident Response:** Training staff on how to respond to security incidents, including how to use the surveillance system to gather information and how to contact emergency services.

o **Privacy Awareness:** Educating staff on the importance of guest privacy and how to handle sensitive information.

• **Policy and Procedures:**

o **Clear Guidelines:** Establishing clear policies regarding the use of surveillance systems, including who has access to footage and how long it is stored.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

o **Privacy Compliance:** Ensuring that all security measures comply with relevant laws and regulations, including data protection and privacy laws.

o **Incident Reporting:** Implementing clear procedures for reporting security incidents, including how to document incidents and how to escalate issues to the appropriate authorities.
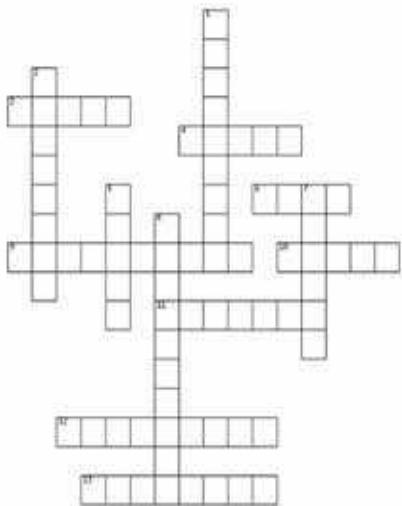
Check-back Questions

ACROSS

3. Crime of Stealing
4. A planned robbery
6. Explosive device
9. A guest under the influence of alcohol
10. Illegal substances
11. Act of intentionally taking one's own life
12. Deliberate destruction of property
13. Protects networks from unauthorized access

DOWN

1. Stealing small quantities repeatedly
2. Online scam to steal personal info
5. A type of malicious software
7. Unlawful killing of another person
8. Malicious software demanding payment

Let's sum up

The chapter focusses on the fundamental role of maintenance in hotel operations, it emphasises the critical contribution of the department in the smooth functioning, safety, and sustainability of the hotel property. Students will understand how maintenance ensures the longevity of the infrastructure and appliances, used in hotels and how it also helps avoid operational disruptions, and supports guest satisfaction. The unit covers the following; scope, objectives, and types of maintenance, which range from routine and preventive to emergency and contract-based maintenance approaches.

Learners will explore the key concepts and the necessity of snagging and de-snagging, along with the importance of maintenance logbooks as key tools in not just pre-opening or properties under renovation, but also in daily operations.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

The curriculum further highlights the role of the engineering department, the interdepartmental coordination required between various operating departments like housekeeping, front office, food and beverage service and food production, to name a few. It highlights the importance of room division audits—both internal and external—for quality assurance. It also talks about different types of audits followed by hotels to maintain standards at all times.

An essential component of the unit, sustainable housekeeping practices, includes waste segregation, energy conservation, and eco-friendly operations, keeping in mind the need for sustainability in the tourism sector. The topics of security and surveillance systems is also addressed to impress upon the student the need for maintaining these systems at all times. Overall, this unit prepares students to manage and evaluate maintenance procedures efficiently while aligning with modern sustainability and safety standards.

Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. Which of the following is an example of preventive maintenance in a hotel?

A. Fixing a leaking pipe after a guest complaint

B. Replacing a broken chair in the restaurant

C. Scheduling monthly HVAC inspections and filter cleaning

D. Addressing guestroom lighting after a power outage

2. What is the primary goal of predictive maintenance in hotels?

A. To conduct daily inspections of guestrooms

B. To reduce costs through routine cleaning

C. To forecast equipment failures and schedule maintenance proactively

D. To replace old equipment with new

3. The objectives of maintenance are

A. Maintain all machines and equipment on a breakdown basis.

B. Ensure that all machines, infrastructure, and services are readily available to meet customer requirements.

C. Does not enhance the safety of both hotel guests and staff.

D. Optimising the uptime and dependability of all assets is not required.

4. Staffing for maintenance includes

A. Recruiting skilled maintenance staff – electrical, plumbing, HVAC, carpentry, etc.

B. Conducting regular training and skill development programs.

C. Ensuring adherence to safety procedures and standard operating practices.

D. All the above

5.Security in a hotel helps

A.Encourage criminal behaviour and unlawful activities within the hotel.

B.Keep a watchful eye on the property alone.

C.Doesn't need to prevent disorderly situations from arising or worsening.

D.Safeguard both guest belongings and hotel property from loss or damage.

True or False

1.Predictive maintenance uses real-time data and analytics to anticipate equipment failure.

2.Corrective maintenance is always planned in advance to avoid downtime.

3.De-snagging is the first step to be followed by a maintenance department.

4.Water conservation is not a compulsion for hotels situated near rivers, seas or oceans.

5.Dust bins have been colour coded for better segregation of trash in hotels.

Fill in the Blanks

1._____ maintenance focuses on responding to equipment breakdowns after they occur.

2.Emergency maintenance tasks are usually _____ and demand immediate attention to ensure guest safety.

3.Preventive maintenance depends on having a _____ approach for upkeep of a hotel.

4._____ lighting is considered eco-friendly and is advised to be installed in hotels.

5.Hotel façade cleaning is an example of _____ maintenance.

Short Answer Questions

1.Define routine maintenance and list two examples of routine tasks performed in hotels.

2.Mention two key differences between preventive and corrective maintenance. Guest room maintenance is important for maintaining the reputation of a hotel! Explain in short.

3.Discuss the points of coordination between the maintenance and housekeeping department in a hotel.

4.What do you understand by snagging, in a hotel?

5.List 5 major roles of maintenance department in a hotel.

Long Answer Questions

1. Explain the five key management functions in hotel maintenance: planning, organizing, staffing, directing, and controlling. Provide at least one activity involved in each.

2. Discuss the importance of emergency maintenance in hotel operations. Include examples of situations that require emergency maintenance and explain how hotels should respond.

3. What do you understand by 'brand audit' explain its importance to a hotel. What is the procedure to be followed before a brand audit starts?

4. What do you understand by sustainable hotel practices? List any 5 practices that you would like to suggest a hotel to follow.

5. Why is a hotel dependent on security and surveillance systems? Explain the need to maintain these systems on a regular basis in detail.

--------------------END OF UNIT 4--------------------

Unit-5

HOTEL BUILDING SYSTEMS

Unit Overview

This chapter provides an in-depth understanding of the essential infrastructure systems that support hotel operations and guest comfort. It covers a range of mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems (MEP) that are crucial for delivering quality service in hospitality environments. Key topics include HVAC (Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning), water supply and drainage, sewage treatment, fire prevention and safety systems, lighting, and vertical transportation like elevators and escalators.

Students are introduced to different types of cisterns, water closets, piping materials, and the stages of sewage treatment, helping them understand how hotels maintain hygiene, comfort, and sustainability. The chapter also discusses how building systems impact thermal comfort, air quality, humidity control, energy efficiency, and noise reduction in various areas like guest rooms, lobbies, restaurants, and kitchens.

A major focus is on the preventive maintenance of systems such as chillers, AHUs, compressors, thermostats, and electrical components to avoid service disruption. Emphasis is also placed on green building practices and certifications like LEED and GRIHA, encouraging eco-friendly hotel operations.

Overall, this unit equips hotel management students with the foundational knowledge to manage building services effectively and contribute to a safe, efficient, and guest-friendly hospitality environment.

Learning Objectives

SUB UNIT	LEARNING TOPICS	KEY LEARNING OUTCOMES / At the end of the sub- unit the learners will be able to
5.1 Electricity Basics	• Definitions • Units • Symbols • Fault identification • Meter reading • Electricity consumption calculation	1. Define key electricity terminologies, units, and symbols. 2. Identify and report electrical fault. 3. Perform basic meter readings and calculate consumption.
5.2 Plumbing and Sanitary Systems	• Plumbing definitions • Fixtures (taps, traps, R.O, etc.) • STP, • Care and maintenance	1. Identify the pests 2. Identify the areas of infestation in the hotel 3. Prevention & Treatment of Pests
5.3 HVAC Systems	• Terminologies (humidity, refrigerants, etc.) • Systems types • Checklists • Comfort conditions	1. Define HVAC terms and principles 2. Differentiate between various HVAC systems (Window, VRF, etc.) 3. Conduct inspections 4. Explain HVAC's role in guest comfort

5.4 Building Transportation Systems	• Elevator and escalator types, • Operation,	1. Describe different building transportation systems 2. Explain maintenance needs for elevators 3.Escalators and moving sidewalks
5.5 Smart Room Technology	• Modern room automation and • Smart controls	1. Explain components of smart room technology 2.Identify benefits of automation for guests and
5.6 Robotics in Housekeeping	• Application of robotics in cleaning routines	1. Identify types of cleaning robots used in hotels 2. Describe benefits and limitations of robotic assistance
5.7Audio Visual Equipment	• Care and maintenance of projectors • Sound systems • Computers • Accessories	1. Identify and maintain common AV equipment 2.Troubleshoot basic issues with presentation and sound systems
5.8 Fire Safety and Emergency Systems	• Fire detection (smoke, gas) • Evacuation protocols • Fire suppression equipment	1.Identify fire detection and suppression systems 2. Demonstrate fire evacuation procedures 3. Operate fire extinguishers safely

5.1. Electricity Basic

5.1.1. Introduction to Electricity Basics

Electricity is a fundamental aspect of modern life, powering homes, industries, and technologies that drive economic and social development. Understanding the basics of electricity is essential not only for professionals in engineering and facility management but also for individuals seeking to use electrical systems safely and efficiently. This foundational knowledge begins with familiarizing oneself with key electrical terminologies, such as voltage, current, resistance, and power—each with specific definitions, units, and symbols. For example, voltage is measured in volts (V), current in amperes (A), and power in watts (W), all of which follow the laws of electricity such as Ohm's Law.

Additionally, recognizing and interpreting electrical symbols used in diagrams and installations is crucial for understanding how circuits function. Equally important is the ability to identify faults—such as short circuits, overloads, and grounding issues—that can cause hazards or equipment failures. Fault identification plays a significant role in maintaining electrical safety and operational efficiency.

Another essential skill is meter reading, which allows users to monitor electricity usage, detect irregular consumption, and manage energy costs effectively. This directly ties into the calculation of electricity consumption, which is typically measured in kilowatt-hours (kWh). By knowing how to calculate energy usage, consumers can adopt more sustainable practices and reduce utility expenses.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Overall, acquiring basic knowledge of these concepts lays the groundwork for more advanced study and responsible use of electricity, fostering both safety and energy efficiency in residential, commercial, and industrial settings.

5.1.2. Terminologies

1. Voltage (V)

The electrical potential difference between two points. It is the force that pushes electric current through a conductor. Measured in **volts (V).**
Formula: $V = I \times R$

2. Current (I)

The flow of electric charge through a conductor or circuit. Measured in **amperes (A).**
Formula: $I = V / R$

3. Resistance (R)

The opposition to the flow of electric current in a material. Measured in **ohms (Ω).**
Formula: $R = V / I$

4. Power (P)

The rate at which electrical energy is consumed or transferred. Measured in watts (W).
Formula: $P = V \times I$

5. Watt-hour (Wh)

A unit of energy equivalent to one watt of power consumed for one hour.
1 kilowatt-hour (kWh) = 1000 Wh

6. Alternating Current (AC)

A type of electric current in which the flow of electric charge periodically reverses direction.

7. Direct Current (DC)

A type of electric current where the electric charge flows in one direction only.

8. Circuit

A closed loop or pathway that allows electric current to flow. It can be series or parallel.

9. Conductor

A material that allows the easy flow of electricity, e.g., copper, aluminium.

10. Insulator

A material that resists the flow of electric current, used to protect users from electric shock, e.g., rubber, plastic.

11. Load

An electrical component or device that consumes electric power, such as a light bulb or motor.

12. ShortCircuit

An abnormal connection of low resistance that causes excessive current flow and potentially damage or fire.

13. Fuse

A protective device that melts and breaks the circuit when excessive current flows through it.

14. Circuit Breaker

An automatic device that interrupts the flow of current in case of an overload or short circuit.

15. Earthing (Grounding)

A safety measure that connects electrical systems to the ground to prevent electric shock.

16. Transformer

A device used to increase or decrease voltage levels in AC systems.

17. Frequency

The number of cycles per second in an alternating current. Measured in Hertz (Hz).

Standard frequency: 50 Hz (India), 60 Hz (USA)

18. Phase

Refers to the distribution of a load. Most systems use single-phase or three-phase power.

19. Neutral Wire

A return path for current in an electrical system. Usually connected to earth at the main distribution board.

20. Live/Hot Wire

Carries current from the power source to the load; can be dangerous to touch.

Term	Definition	Unit	Symbol
Voltage	Electrical potential difference between two points	Volt	V
Current	Flow of electric charge	Ampere	A
Resistance	Opposition to flow of electric current	Ohm	Ω
Power	Rate at which electrical energy is consumed	Watt	W
Energy	Amount of electricity consumed over time	Kilowatt-hour (kWh)	kWh
Frequency	Number of cycles per second in AC	Hertz	Hz

Table 1. Basic Electrical Terminologies, Units, and Symbols

5.1.3. Identify and Report Electrical Faults-Key Points

Importance of Timely Reporting:
- Ensures guest safety.
- Prevents service interruptions.
- Maintains operational efficiency.

Common Electrical Faults in Hotels:
- Flickering or dimming lights.
- Malfunctioning power outlets.
- Tripped circuit breakers.
- Unusual sounds or smells from panels or appliances.

Potential Risks:
- Disruption of guest comfort.
- Damage to electrical equipment.
- Serious safety hazards like fire or electric shock.

Role of Hotel Staff:
- Housekeeping and maintenance personnel must remain vigilant.
- Immediately report any electrical abnormalities.
- Isolate the affected area if required.

Reporting Procedure:
- Log and report faults to the engineering or maintenance department.
- Include details: location, nature of the fault, and time of occurrence.
- Ensure proper documentation for efficient technician response.

Causes of Electrical Faults:
- Aging of electrical equipment.
- Circuit or appliance overloading.
- Poor maintenance practices.
- External factors like moisture or pests.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

High-Risk Hotel Areas for Faults:
- Guest rooms.
- Kitchen and laundry equipment.
- HVAC systems.
- Elevators and other electrical appliances.

Preventive Measures:
- Routine room inspections and equipment checks.
- Use of checklists during maintenance rounds.
- Use of advanced tools: thermal imaging cameras, voltage testers, circuit analyzers.

Staff Training:
- Regular training to help staff recognize early signs of faults.
- Increases awareness and reduces safety risks.

Common signs of electrical faults in hotels include:
- Flickering or dimming lights
- Burning smells near outlets or appliances
- Buzzing sounds from switches or panels
- Tripping of circuit breakers
- Sparks or visible damage to plugs, cords, or sockets
- Unresponsive switches or outlets

Frontline staff such as housekeeping, front office, and maintenance teams should be trained to recognize these warning signs during routine operations. Immediate reporting of any unusual electrical behaviour to the hotel's engineering department ensures timely inspection and corrective action. Use of checklists during room inspections and maintenance rounds also helps in early identification.

Advanced tools like thermal imaging cameras, voltage testers, and circuit analyzers can be used by technical staff to detect hidden or developing faults. Preventive maintenance, routine inspections, and guest feedback play a key role in fault detection. Identifying electrical faults early helps prevent serious hazards like electrical fires, equipment damage, and power outages—ensuring a safe and comfortable stay for hotel guests.

Fault Type	Description	Common Causes
Short Circuit	Sudden surge in current	Faulty wiring, water ingress
Overload	More current than circuit can handle	Multiple high-wattage appliances
Open Circuit	Break in wiring or connection	Damaged wires, loose terminals
Earth Fault	Leakage of current to ground	Damaged insulation or appliances

Table 2 Common Electrical Faults in Hotels

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

5.1.4. Prevention

5.1.4.1. Use Circuit Breakers (MCB)

Miniature Circuit Breakers (MCBs) are essential safety devices in hotel electrical systems. They automatically cut off the electrical supply when an overload or short circuit is detected, preventing potential damage to equipment and reducing the risk of fire. MCBs are more reliable and reusable compared to traditional fuses, and they can be quickly reset after tripping. In hotels, MCBs are typically installed in distribution boards to control power flow to various zones such as guest rooms, kitchens, banquet halls, and laundry areas. Using MCBs ensures prompt isolation of faulty circuits, allowing maintenance without affecting the entire electrical system.

Figure1: Circuit Breaker (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

5.1.4.2. Regular Electrical Audits

Conducting regular electrical audits is vital for maintaining safety, energy efficiency, and regulatory compliance in hotels. These audits involve systematic inspections of wiring, circuit loads, switchboards, lighting systems, and appliances to detect wear and tear, potential hazards, and inefficiencies. Audits help identify outdated or non-compliant installations, ensuring that corrective actions are taken proactively. Regular audits not only reduce the risk of electrical accidents but also help in optimizing energy usage, which is crucial for reducing operational costs in hospitality businesses.

5.1.4.3. Avoid Overloading Outlets

Overloading electrical outlets occurs when too many high-wattage appliances are connected to a single socket, exceeding its rated capacity. This can lead to overheating, wire insulation damage, and even fire. In hotels, common areas such as kitchens, guest rooms, and housekeeping stations are especially vulnerable. To prevent this, staff should be trained to distribute electrical loads properly and avoid using multiple extension cords or power strips. Additionally, outlets should be labeled with load capacity and checked periodically for signs of overheating or damage.

5.1.4.4. Ensure Proper Earthing

Proper earthing (grounding) is a critical safety measure that protects both people and equipment from electric shock and short circuits. Earthing provides a safe path for stray or leaking current to flow into the ground, minimizing the risk of electric shock in case of insulation failure. In hotels, all major appliances, metal-bodied equipment, and electrical installations must be properly earthed. Regular checks should be performed to ensure that earthing conductors are intact and connections are secure. A well-maintained earthing system enhances safety, particularly in wet areas such as bathrooms, kitchens, and laundry rooms.

5.1.5. Safety Guidelines for Hotel Electricity Management

5.1.5.1. Use Appliances with ISI Certification

ISI (Indian Standards Institute) certification ensures that electrical appliances meet the safety and quality standards set by the Bureau of Indian Standards (BIS). In hotels, using ISI-marked appliances such as kettles, geysers, irons, air conditioners, and kitchen equipment guarantees safe operation and reduces the risk of electrical faults, short circuits, or fire hazards. It also ensures durability and energy efficiency, which is essential for daily commercial use in hotels.

5.1.5.2. Install Earth Leakage Circuit Breakers (ELCB)

ELCBs (Earth Leakage Circuit Breakers) are essential safety devices that detect any leakage current flowing through the earth wire and disconnect the power supply instantly. In hotels, where guests and staff operate electrical equipment in bathrooms, kitchens, and laundry areas, ELCBs help prevent electric shocks due to wet conditions or faulty wiring. Installing ELCBs at key points protects both people and property from electrical accidents.

Figure: 2 Earth Leakage Circuit Breakers (ELCB) (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

5.1.5.3. Label All High-Voltage Zones

Proper labelling of high-voltage zones is crucial to ensure the safety of hotel staff and contractors. Electrical panels, transformer rooms, generator areas, and HVAC systems should be clearly marked with high-voltage warning signs. This

helps in preventing unauthorized access, guiding emergency response teams, and ensuring that only trained personnel handle high-risk areas. Visible, durable, and standardized labels enhance situational awareness and reduce the chance of accidents.

Figure: 3 High Voltage Warning (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

5.1.5.4. Place Fire Extinguishers Near Panels

Electrical fires require specialized Class C or CO_2 fire extinguishers, which must be placed near all major electrical panels and distribution boards. In hotels, these extinguishers should be accessible in areas such as the main switch room, kitchen control panels, and utility zones. Staff must be trained to use them correctly, as using water on an electrical fire can be fatal. Regular checks should ensure that extinguishers are within their service period and are not obstructed.

Figure: 4 CO₂ fire extinguishers, placed near major electrical panels (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

5.1.5.5. Conduct Monthly Electrical Safety Inspections

Monthly inspections of the hotel's electrical systems help in the early detection of wear and tear, loose wiring, overheating components, and potential fire hazards. These checks should include distribution boards, sockets, lighting fixtures, backup systems (like generators and UPS), and kitchen and laundry equipment. A qualified electrician or facility manager should document findings and take corrective action immediately. Consistent inspections reduce downtime, prevent accidents, and ensure compliance with safety regulations.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

ELECTRICAL TOOLS INSPECTION CHECKLIST

Company:		Supervisor:	

Equipment Type		Equipment Tag No.	
Voltage Rating		Maker / Model	
Equipment Construction		Serial Number	
KW/HP/KVA Rating		Area of Use	

No.	CRITERIA	PASS	FAIL	REMARKS
1	Check general appearance of the equipment and it is safe for use			
2	Check if there is no breaks/cracks in equipment casing/body			
3	All equipment screws secured			
4	Cooling vents unblocked			
5	Check if switch is operational and as per original equipment design and no modification			
6	Flexible cords/cable free of cuts, splices or tap			
7	All cable to be secured properly at the plug and equipment			
8	Cable size confirmed to power rating			
9	Plug/socket undamaged and acceptable			
10	Plug/socket no visible sign of overheating			
11	Equipment guards firmly in place			
12	Equipment earth continuity test			
13	Equipment insulation test			

Figure: 5 Monthly inspections (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

5.1.6. Electricity Meter Reading Techniques

Performing basic meter readings and calculating electricity consumption are essential skills for managing energy usage effectively, especially in commercial establishments like hotels. These practices help monitor utility costs, detect abnormal usage patterns, and support energy conservation efforts.

5.1.6.1. Performing Meter Readings

An electricity meter records the amount of electrical energy consumed in kilowatt-hours (kWh). To take a basic meter reading:

• Locate the main electricity meter (usually found in the electrical room or near the service entrance).
• Read the numbers displayed from left to right, ignoring any digits after a decimal point or in red (if digital or analog).
• Record the current reading and compare it to the previous one to determine the consumption over a period.

Example:
- Previous reading: 15,250 kWh
- Current reading: 15,980 kWh
- Consumption = 15,980 – 15,250 = 730 kWh

Meter Readings: Video Link: https://youtu.be/orCRLfBKaxQ?si=MOn416YqROYlaXrB

5.1.6. 2. Calculating Electricity Consumption

To calculate the consumption for specific equipment or areas:

Formula:

Electricity Consumption (kWh) = Power Rating (kW) × Time Used (hours)

Example:

A 2 kW air conditioner used for 5 hours:

2 kW × 5 hours = 10 kWh

In hotels, calculating consumption helps track the energy used by guest rooms, kitchens, HVAC systems, and laundry. This data is crucial for budgeting, load balancing, and sustainability initiatives electricity meters.

Formula:

$$\text{Energy (kWh)} = \frac{\text{Power (W)} \times \text{Time (hrs)}}{1000}$$

📌 Example:

A 1000W air conditioner used for 6 hours:

$$\text{Energy} = \frac{1000 \times 6}{1000} = 6 \text{ kWh}$$

If tariff = ₹7 per kWh, then

$$\text{Cost} = 6 \times 7 = ₹42$$

TYPE OF METER	EXPLANATION
Digital Meter	Displays electrical readings numerically on an LCD or LED screen. It is accurate, easy to read, and often used in modern buildings for tracking energy consumption.May include advanced features like data logging and remote monitoring.
Analogue Meter	Uses a dial and rotating pointer to display readings. It requires manual interpretation and is commonly found in older installations. Less precise compared to digital meters.

Table 3: Types of Electrical Meters and Theirs Explanations

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

Check Back Questions:
1. Define voltage and state its unit.
2. What is the formula for calculating electricity consumption?
3. A 1500W geyser runs for 2 hours. How much electricity (in kWh) is used?
4. List two causes of overload in a hotel.

5.2 Plumbing and Sanitary Terminology

5.2.1 Plumbing and Sanitary Terminologies

Plumbing and sanitary systems are vital components of hotel infrastructure, ensuring hygiene, comfort, and efficient water management. Key terminologies include potable water (safe for drinking), fixtures (sinks, showers, toilets), and traps that block sewer gases. Soil pipes carry waste from toilets, while waste pipes handle water from sinks and showers. Vent pipes maintain air pressure in the drainage system, and grease traps prevent fats from clogging kitchen drains. Backflow prevention devices check valves and air gaps protect water quality. Overhead tanks and pumps distribute water, while septic tanks or sewer lines handle disposal. Proper understanding ensures operational efficiency and guest satisfaction. Here are essential Plumbing and Sanitary Terminologies used in the hotel industry, especially relevant for **Hotel Engineering** or **Hotel Building Systems:**

1. Potable Water
  • Definition: Water that is safe for human consumption.
  • Usage in Hotels: Used in guest rooms, kitchens, restaurants, and staff areas.

2. Non-Potable Water
  • Definition: Water not suitable for drinking.
  • Usage: Used for irrigation, flushing toilets, or HVAC cooling towers.

3. Fixture
  • Definition: A device that uses water and is connected to the plumbing system.
  • Examples: Washbasin, toilet, shower, bathtub, urinal.

4. Trap
  • Definition: A curved section of pipe that retains water to prevent sewer gases from entering the hotel premises.
  • Common Types: P-trap, S-trap, Bottle trap.

5. Vent Pipe
  • Definition: A pipe that releases sewer gases outside the building and allows air to enter the drainage system.
  • Function: Prevents water seals in traps from being siphoned out.

6. Soil Pipe
- Definition: A pipe carrying discharge from water closets (WCs) and urinals.
- Note: Usually made of cast iron or PVC in modern buildings.

7. Waste Pipe
- Definition: A pipe that carries wastewater from sinks, baths, and showers, but not from toilets.

8. Drainage System
- Definition: The complete network of pipes used to remove wastewater and rainwater from the premises.

9. Sewerage System
- Definition: A system of underground pipes carrying sewage to a treatment facility or municipal sewer.

10. Septic Tank
- Definition: An underground chamber where sewage is collected and partially treated on-site.

11. Grease Trap
- Definition: A plumbing device used to intercept grease and oils before they enter the wastewater system.
- Common in: Hotel kitchens.

12. Air Gap
- Definition: A physical space between a water outlet and the flood level of a fixture.
- Purpose: Prevents backflow contamination.

13. Backflow
- Definition: The unwanted reverse flow of water into the clean water supply.
- Risk: May cause contamination of potable water.

14. Rainwater
- Definition: A system for collecting and storing rainwater for non-potable uses like gardening and flushing.

15. Check Valve / Non-Return Valve
- Definition: Allows flow of water in one direction only, preventing backflow.

16. Stop Valve
- Definition: Used to stop the water supply to a fixture for repair or maintenance.

17. Overhead Tank
- Definition: A water storage tank installed at the highest point of the building to distribute water using gravity.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

18. Pump
  • Definition: A mechanical device used to move water from lower levels to overhead tanks or through the building's piping system.

19. Sanitary Fitting
  • Definition: A broad term that includes all plumbing fixtures and their accessories used in bathrooms and kitchens.

20. Flushing Cistern
  • Definition: A water tank that releases water to flush a toilet.

5.2.2. Plumbing fittings and fixtures

Plumbing fittings and fixtures are essential components of a building's water supply and drainage system. In hospitality establishments, such as hotels and restaurants, these elements ensure hygienic conditions, guest comfort, and efficient water management. Understanding their types, functions, and proper usage is critical for effective facility management.

1. Water Taps (Faucets)
Definition:

Water taps are fixtures that control the release of water from a pipeline. They are manually or sensor-operated and come in a variety of designs.

Types:

  • **Pillar Taps:** Installed on sinks or wash basins.
  • **Mixer Taps:** Mix hot and cold water and are commonly used in bathrooms.
  • **Sensor Taps:** Used in public restrooms to conserve water and maintain hygiene.
  • **Bib Taps:** Wall-mounted, used for wash basins and utility areas.

Figure 6: Types of Taps (Picture Courtsey: Wikipedia)

Relevance in Hotels:

  • Sensor taps are preferred in guest and public washrooms for hygiene.
  • Mixer taps provide convenience in guest bathrooms.

2. Traps
Definition:

Traps are plumbing fittings that prevent foul gases from the sewer from entering

the building by holding a water seal.

Common Types:

- **P-Trap:** Used under sinks and wash basins.
- **S-Trap:** Common in floor-mounted water closets.
- **Bottle Trap:** Used under wash basins where aesthetics are important.

Function:

- Maintain a water seal to block sewer gases.
- Capture debris, preventing drain clogs.
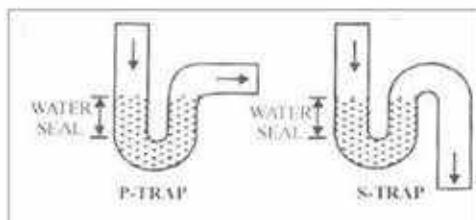
Figure: 7 Types of Traps (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

3. Grease Traps

Definition:

grease trap is a plumbing device designed to intercept most greases and solids before they enter a wastewater disposal system.

Location:

Installed in kitchen drains in hotels and restaurants.
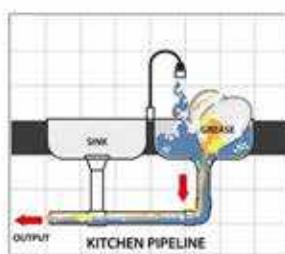
Figure: 8 Grease Traps (Picture Courtesy Google)

Importance:

- Prevents clogging in drainage systems.
- Protects municipal sewer systems from grease build-up.
- Reduces foul odors.

4. Heat Pumps

Definition:

Heat pumps transfer heat from one area to another using mechanical energy. In

plumbing, they are used for heating water.

Applications in Hotels:

- Centralized hot water systems.
- Energy-efficient alternative to electric geysers or boilers.

Figure: 9 Heat Pumps (Picture Courtesy Google)

Advantages:

- Environmentally friendly.
- Cost-effective in the long term.

5. Reverse Osmosis (RO) System

Definition:

RO is a water purification process that uses a semi permeable membrane to remove ions, molecules, and larger particles from water.
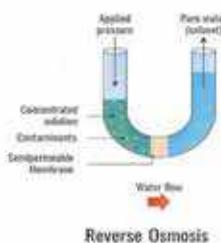
Figure: 10 Reverse Osmosis (Picture Courtesy Google)

Applications in Hotels:

- In kitchens for cooking and drinking.
- In guest rooms for safe potable water.
- Used in housekeeping for laundry requiring soft water.

Advantages:

- Provides clean and safe drinking water.
- Enhances taste and removes contaminants.

6. Water Purifiers

Definition:

Water purifiers remove impurities through filtration, UV, UF, or RO methods.

Types:

- UV Purifiers: Use ultraviolet light to kill germs.
- RO Purifiers: Remove dissolved impurities.
- UF Purifiers: Remove larger impurities and bacteria.

Figure: 11 UV Purifiers (Picture Courtesy Google)
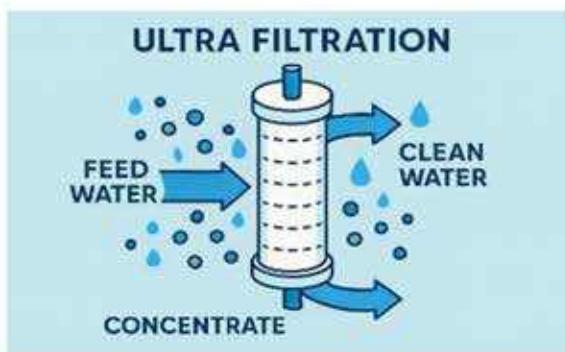
Figure: 12 UF Purifiers (Picture Courtesy Google)

Applications in Hotels:

- Drinking water supply.
- Room service.

7. Flushing Cisterns

Definition:

A flushing cistern is a tank that stores water for flushing a water closet.

Types:

Type of Cistern	Description	Image
Conventional Cistern	Mounted high above the toilet and operated using a pull chain. Often seen in older buildings.	
Low-Level Cistern	Mounted just above the toilet bowl and operated with a lever. Common in modern hotels.	
Concealed Cistern	Installed behind the wall or inside a cabinet. Operated with a push button. Looks neat and space-saving.	

Table 4. Types of Cisterns, Descriptions, and Images

Advantages:
   • Provides water force to flush away waste from toilets.

8. Flushing Valves

Definition:

Flushing valves deliver water directly to the toilet bowl for flushing without storing it in a cistern.

Advantages:
   • Space-saving.
   • Provides immediate and powerful flush.
   • Often sensor-controlled in modern washrooms.

9. Water Closets (WCs)

Definition:

Water closets are sanitary fixtures used for the disposal of human waste.

Type of WC	Description	Image
European Style (Western)	Sitting type toilet commonly used in hotels and modern homes.	
Indian Style (Squatting Pan)	Traditional squatting pan commonly used in many Indian households and public places.	
Wall-Hung WC	Modern design mounted on the wall. Saves space and allows easy cleaning underneath.	

Table 5. Types of WC, Descriptions, and Images

Advantages:
   • Efficient waste disposal.
   • Compatible with flushing systems and bidets.

10. Bidets

Definition:

A bidet is a plumbing fixture used for washing the genital and anal area after using the toilet.

Figure 13: Bidet (Picture Courtesy Google)

Installation:

Located beside the WC or integrated within modern WCs.

Applications in Hotels:

- Adds luxury and comfort.
- Common in premium or international hotels.

11. Water Pipes

Definition:

Water pipes transport water from the supply source to various fixtures within the building.

Materials:

Type of Pipe	Description	Image
PVC (Polyvinyl Chloride)	Lightweight, inexpensive, and corrosion-resistant. Ideal for cold water and drainage systems.	
CPVC (Chlorinated PVC)	Can handle both hot and cold water. More heat-resistant than regular PVC.	
Copper Pipes	Strong, durable, and naturally antimicrobial. Common in high-end plumbing systems.	
PEX (Cross-linked Polyethylene)	Flexible, easy to install, and used for both hot and cold water. Popular in modern plumbing.	

Table 6. Types of Pipes, Descriptions, and Images

Installation in Hotels:

• Proper layout planning is crucial to prevent leakage, pressure drop, and ensure temperature regulation.

5.2.3. Understand the function of STP (Sewage Treatment Plant)

A Sewage Treatment Plant (STP) is a facility designed to treat and purify wastewater before it is released into the environment. The primary function of an STP is to remove contaminants—such as solids, organic matter, harmful microorganisms, and chemicals—from sewage through physical, biological, and chemical processes. This treatment ensures that the water, once treated, is safe for discharge or reuse, thereby preventing pollution and protecting public health and ecosystems.

The treatment process generally includes three main stages:

• **Primary treatment** involves the removal of large solids through screening and sedimentation.

• **Secondary treatment** uses biological processes, often involving aerobic bacteria, to break down organic pollutants.

• **Tertiary treatment** further purifies the water, removing any remaining pathogens or chemicals through filtration, chlorination, or ultraviolet (UV) disinfection.

In the hospitality industry, particularly in hotels, STPs play a vital role due to the high volume of wastewater generated from guest rooms, kitchens, laundries, and other service areas. An on-site STP helps hotels manage this waste efficiently, comply with environmental regulations, and reduce their impact on municipal sewage systems. Additionally, treated water from the STP can be reused for purposes such as toilet flushing, gardening, and cooling systems, promoting water conservation and sustainable operations.

By implementing STPs, hotels not only fulfil their environmental responsibilities but also enhance their reputation as eco-friendly establishments, often qualifying for green certifications and attracting environmentally conscious guests.

STP Functions:

• Treats backwater and greywater.
• Separates solids, oils, and sludge.
• Disinfects and recycles water for flushing, gardening.
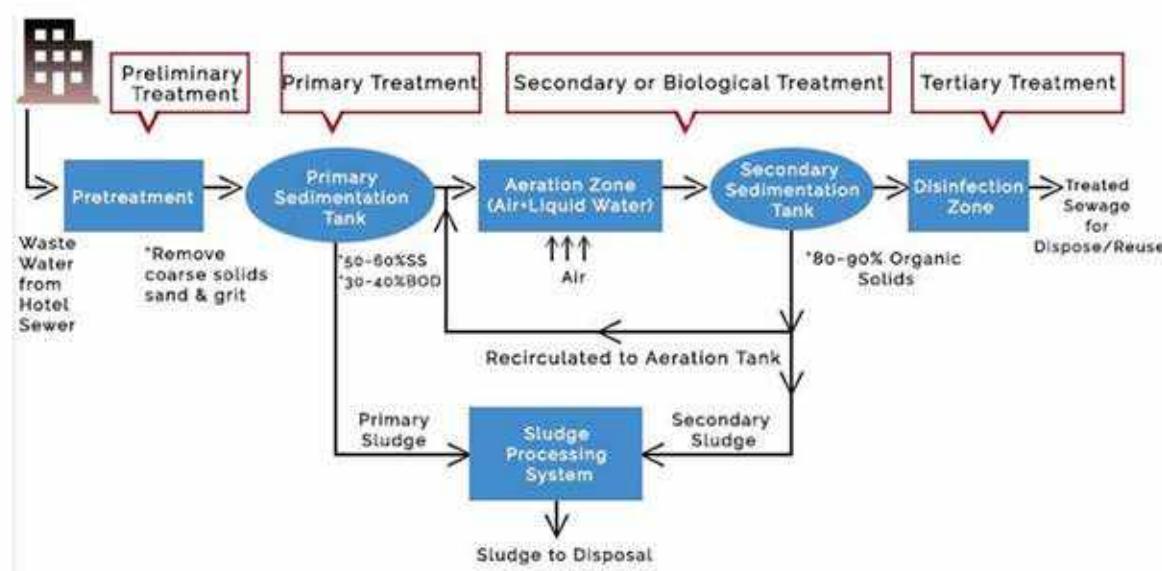
Figure: 14 Conventional treatment process flow chart for STP (in Hotels) Picture Source
https://neoakruthi.com/blog/sewage-treatment-plant

1. Preliminary Treatment

• First stage of wastewater treatment; also called mechanical or physical treatment.

• Removes large, coarse solids using:
- **Screening** (metal bars trap rags, plastics, paper, etc.)
- **Grit chambers** to eliminate sand, small stones, and heavy particles.
- **Skimming** for removal of floating oils and grease.

• Protects downstream equipment from damage or clogging.

• Sets the foundation for efficient subsequent treatment.

2. Primary Treatment

• Involves physical and chemical processes.

• Wastewater enters a primary sedimentation tank (clarifier):
- Heavier solids settle as primary sludge.
- Oils and lighter materials float and are skimmed off.

• Removes:
- 50–60% of suspended solids (SS).
- 30–40% of Biological Oxygen Demand (BOD).

• Prepares water for biological treatment in the next stage.

3. Secondary Treatment (Biological Treatment)

• Focuses on biological degradation of organic matter.

• Uses the Activated Sludge Process:

- Wastewater mixed with microorganisms in aeration tanks.
- Air is introduced to support aerobic bacteria.
- Water flows into a secondary clarifier:
  - Biomass settles as secondary sludge.
  - Part of the sludge is recycled back to aeration tank.
  - Remaining sludge sent to sludge treatment/disposal.
- Removes 80–90% of organic pollutants, greatly improving water quality.

4. Tertiary Treatment (Disinfection/Polishing)

- Final purification step to remove:
  - Remaining suspended solids, dissolved substances, and pathogens.
- Disinfection methods:
  - Chlorination (may leave residues)
  - Ultraviolet (UV) light
  - Ozone treatment (preferred for eco-sensitive zones)
- Ensures water is safe for discharge or reuse, e.g.:
  - Irrigation
  - Toilet flushing
  - Gardening

5.2.4 Apply basic care, maintenance, and reporting procedures

Proper care and regular maintenance of plumbing fittings and fixtures are essential to ensure efficient water flow, hygiene, and longevity of plumbing systems in both residential and commercial buildings, especially in hospitality establishments like hotels. Neglecting plumbing maintenance can lead to water wastage, costly repairs, and guest dissatisfaction.

1. Regular Inspection

Routine inspection helps identify leaks, corrosion, blockages, or loose fittings early. Faucets, taps, flush tanks, and pipes should be checked weekly or monthly for any signs of wear and tear.

2. Cleaning and Desalting

Fixtures such as taps, showerheads, and valves can accumulate mineral deposits, especially in hard water areas. Regular cleaning with mild desalting solutions or vinegar helps maintain water flow and appearance. Avoid abrasive cleaners that can damage the finish.

3. Leak Prevention

Dripping taps or leaking flush systems should be addressed immediately.

Leaks waste water and can damage surrounding walls or flooring. Replacing worn-out washers, seals, or gaskets can often resolve the issue.

4. Trap and Drain Maintenance

Traps under sinks and basins should be cleaned periodically to prevent clogs and odors. Grease traps in kitchens need scheduled cleaning to avoid blockages and unpleasant smells.

5. Valve Operation

Flush valves and angle valves should be operated periodically to ensure smooth functioning. Cistern mechanisms should be adjusted or replaced if flushing becomes inefficient.

6. Professional Servicing

Annual or bi-annual servicing by a qualified plumber helps assess hidden problems, such as pipe corrosion or water pressure inconsistencies, and ensures that the system is functioning optimally.

5.2.5 Recognize common plumbing issues in hotel facilities

Plumbing systems in hotels play a vital role in delivering clean water and managing wastewater efficiently. Any malfunction or leakage can lead to discomfort for guests, damage to property, and increased operational costs. Therefore, timely identification and accurate reporting of plumbing issues are crucial in maintaining guest satisfaction and hotel standards.

1. Common Plumbing Issues in Hotels

a) Leaky Faucets and Showerheads
- Constant dripping or water seeping even when turned off.
- May be due to worn-out washers, damaged cartridges, or loose fittings.

b) Clogged Drains and Toilets
- Water draining slowly or backing up.
- Often caused by hair, soap scum, grease, or foreign objects.
- Unpleasant odors may also indicate a blockage.

c) Low Water Pressure
- Weak flow from taps or showers.
- May be due to sediment build-up, pipe leakage, or malfunctioning pressure valves.

d) Running Toilets

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

- Continuous water flow in the flush tank.
- Caused by faulty flapper valves, misaligned float mechanisms, or damaged fill valves.

e) Leaking Pipes

- Water stains, dampness, or mold on walls or ceilings.
- Audible dripping sounds behind walls or under flooring.

f) Noisy Plumbing

- Gurgling sounds, pipe hammering, or whistling noises.
- Often due to trapped air, loose pipes, or high water pressure.

2. Identification Process

a) Regular Inspection

- Housekeeping and engineering staff should inspect bathrooms, kitchens, and service areas routinely.
- Spot checks during room cleaning can detect early signs.

b) Guest Feedback

- Front desk or housekeeping staff must record and respond to guest complaints related to plumbing immediately.

c) Water Meter Monitoring

- Unusual spikes in water usage can indicate hidden leaks.

d) Odour and Sound Detection

- Bad smells near drains or unusual noises in pipelines can be early warning signs.

3. Reporting Procedure

a) Internal Reporting Protocol

- Staff must use standard maintenance request forms or digital reporting systems to log issues.
- Reports should include:
  - Room or area number
  - Type of problem
  - Exact location
  - Time and date identified
  - Any temporary solution applied

b) Communication with Maintenance Department

• Immediate reporting for urgent issues such as water leakage, overflowing toilets, or no water supply.

• Use of hotel's facility management software or verbal communication for quick action.

c) Follow-up

• Maintenance staff should update the status of the repair.

• Housekeeping or engineering supervisors must recheck after repairs to ensure the issue is resolved.

4. Preventive Measures

• Staff training to identify early signs of plumbing issues.

• Scheduled plumbing system audits by professionals.

• Installation of water sensors in risk-prone areas.

Item	Maintenance Practice
Water taps	Check for drips, clean aerators
Traps	Regular flushing to avoid clogs
Grease traps	Weekly cleaning to avoid buildup
R.O. unit	Replace filters every 6 months
Flushing cisterns	Check valves and floats monthly
Water pipes	Monitor for leaks, insulate hot lines
Heat pumps	Check thermostats and filters quarterly

Table 7. Care and Maintenance of Common Plumbing Fittings

Symptom	Possible Issue	Action
Water leakage	Damaged washer/seal	Report and replace part
No water flow	Clogged pipe, valve shut	Inspect and unblock
Low water pressure	Sediment, pipe corrosion	Clean or replace pipe
Backflow	Trap failure, negative pressure	Check vent pipes
Foul odor	Dry trap, clogged drainage	Flush system and clean trap

Table 8. Identification & Reporting of Plumbing Issues

Check Back Questions:

1. What is the function of a trap in a plumbing system?
2. Differentiate between an RO and a water purifier.
3. Name three types of water pipes used in hotel plumbing.
4. What are the major stages in sewage treatment?
5. List two symptoms of a blocked or leaking pipe and how to report them.

5.3. HVAC SYSTEMS

5.3.1. Define HVAC terms and principles

HVAC stands for Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning, a critical system designed to regulate indoor environmental comfort. These systems control temperature, humidity, air quality, and ventilation in residential, commercial, and industrial buildings. HVAC systems contribute to maintaining thermal comfort, ensuring healthy indoor air, and enhancing energy efficiency.

In general, an HVAC system includes key components such as heaters, air conditioners, ductwork, air filters, fans, and thermostats. Heating systems may use boilers or furnaces, while cooling is typically achieved using air conditioning units and chillers. Ventilation is equally important, as it replaces or exchanges indoor air with fresh outdoor air, reducing odors, moisture, and indoor pollutants.

In the hotel industry, HVAC systems are indispensable for providing a comfortable and pleasant environment for guests and staff. Given the continuous occupancy and diverse facility needs—such as guest rooms, restaurants, banquet halls, spas, and kitchens—hotels require centralized HVAC systems that can be efficiently managed and customized.

Modern hotels often utilize central air conditioning systems (like VRV/VRF or chiller-based systems) that allow for individual temperature control in each guest room. Exhaust and fresh air systems are installed to manage ventilation in areas such as kitchens, laundries, and bathrooms. Additionally, air quality control through filtration and humidity regulation is essential, especially in luxury or eco-friendly hotels.

Efficient HVAC design in hotels ensures energy savings, compliance with environmental standards, and enhanced guest satisfaction—all of which are critical to the success of hospitality operations.

5.3.2. HVAC Systems Terminologies

1. HVAC

- Stands for Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning. It refers to the systems used to regulate indoor climate and air quality.

2. BTU (British Thermal Unit)

- A unit of heat energy; it measures the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of one pound of water by one degree Fahrenheit. Commonly used to express the cooling or heating capacity of HVAC equipment.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

3. CFM (Cubic Feet per Minute)

• A measure of airflow volume; it indicates how much air an HVAC system can move per minute.

4. Compressor

• A component of an air conditioner or refrigeration unit that compresses refrigerant gas and circulates it through the system.

5. Condenser

• The part of the system where heat is expelled from the refrigerant, turning it from gas to liquid. Typically located outdoors.

6. Evaporator Coil

• A cooling component where refrigerant absorbs heat from the indoor air, causing it to evaporate and cool the space.

7. Thermostat

• A device used to set and regulate the desired room temperature by controlling the HVAC system.

8. Ductwork

• A system of air passages (ducts) used to deliver and remove air from rooms; essential for central heating and cooling systems.

9. Split System

• An HVAC system with separate indoor and outdoor units, commonly used in residential and hotel guest rooms.

10. Package Unit

• A single unit that contains all components (compressor, condenser, evaporator) in one casing, usually installed on rooftops or outside walls.

11. Chiller

• A large system used in hotels and commercial buildings to produce chilled water for air conditioning.

12. VRV/VRF (Variable Refrigerant Volume/Flow)

• Advanced HVAC systems that control the flow of refrigerant to multiple indoor units, offering energy-efficient and individual zone control.

13. Air Handling Unit (AHU)

• A large unit that conditions and circulates air as part of an HVAC system, often used in large hotels and commercial spaces.

14. Heat Pump

• A device that can both heat and cool a space by transferring heat between indoor and outdoor environments.

15. Fresh Air Intake

• The portion of HVAC design that allows fresh outdoor air into the system for ventilation and improved indoor air quality.

16. Exhaust System

• Used to remove stale, hot, or contaminated air from specific hotel areas like kitchens, bathrooms, or laundries.

17. Thermal Comfort

• A state where individuals feel neither too hot nor too cold. It is a key objective of HVAC systems in hotels and other buildings.

18. Filter

• A component that removes dust, allergens, and other particles from the air; requires regular cleaning or replacement.

19. Dampers

• Adjustable plates inside ductwork that regulate airflow and help balance temperature and pressure throughout the building.

20. Relative Humidity (RH)

Relative humidity refers to the percentage of moisture present in the air compared to the maximum amount it can hold at a given temperature. It is expressed as a percentage (%).

- • Ideal indoor RH: 40%–60%
- • High RH can lead to discomfort, mold growth, and condensation.
- • Low RH can cause dryness in skin, eyes, and respiratory issues.
  HVAC systems regulate RH for comfort and health.

21. Humidification

Humidification is the process of adding moisture to the air to maintain a

- Achieved using humidifiers in the HVAC system.
- Important in hotels to maintain guest comfort in air-conditioned rooms or cold regions.

22. Dehumidification

Dehumidification is the process of removing excess moisture from the air.
- Carried out using dehumidifiers or through the cooling coil of an air conditioning unit.
- Essential in tropical climates or during monsoon seasons to prevent dampness, mold, and musty odors.

23. Dew Point Control

The dew point is the temperature at which air becomes saturated and water vapour condenses into liquid.
- Dew Point Control is important in HVAC systems to prevent condensation on surfaces like windows, ducts, or walls.
- Maintaining proper dew point ensures comfort and protects building materials from moisture damage.

24. Unit of Air Conditioning

The capacity or cooling power of an air conditioning system is measured in Tons of Refrigeration (TR) or BTUs (British Thermal Units).
- 1 Ton of Refrigeration = 12,000 BTU/hr
- A ton refers to the amount of heat needed to melt one ton (2,000 lbs) of ice in 24 hours.
- HVAC units for hotel rooms typically range from 1 to 2 tons per room, depending on size and insulation.

5.3.3. Principles of refrigeration cycles and characteristics of refrigerants

5.3.3.1. Principles of Refrigeration Cycles

Refrigeration is the process of removing heat from a space or substance to lower its temperature below the ambient level. The vapor-compression refrigeration cycle is the most widely used method, especially in air conditioners, refrigerators, and HVAC systems in hotels and buildings.

1. The Basic Vapor-Compression Refrigeration Cycle
This cycle has four key stages:

a) Evaporation (Evaporator)

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

- Low-pressure liquid refrigerant absorbs heat from the surrounding air or space.
- It evaporates into vapour, thus cooling the space.
- This happens in the evaporator coil.

b) Compression (Compressor)

- The refrigerant vapour is drawn into a compressor and compressed.
- This increases the pressure and temperature of the vapour.

c) Condensation (Condenser)

- The high-pressure, high-temperature vapour passes through the condenser coil.
- Heat is released to the surrounding air (often outdoors), and the refrigerant condenses into a high-pressure liquid.

d) Expansion (Expansion Valve)

- The high-pressure liquid refrigerant flows through an expansion valve, reducing its pressure.
- As it expands, its temperature drops, preparing it to absorb heat again in the evaporator.

This cycle repeats continuously, maintaining the desired temperature.
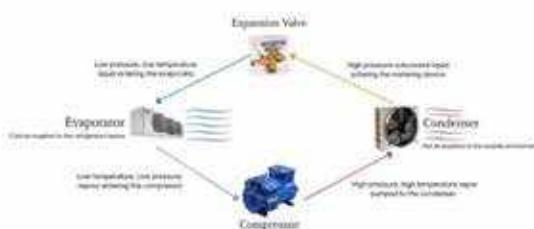
Figure:15 The refrigeration cycle (Picture courtesy Google)

5.3.3.2. Characteristics of Refrigerants

A refrigerant is a chemical substance used in the refrigeration cycle to absorb and release heat efficiently. Choosing the right refrigerant is essential for performance, safety, and environmental sustainability.

1. Thermodynamic Properties

- High Latent Heat of Vaporization: So that a small amount can absorb large amounts of heat.
- Boiling Point: Should be low to evaporate easily at desired cooling temperatures.
- Pressure-Temperature Relationship: Should support efficient heat transfer

and minimize energy usage.

2. Chemical Stability

• Should remain chemically stable during repeated cycles and under different temperatures and pressures.

3. Non-corrosive and Non-toxic

• Must not corrode metal parts of the HVAC system.

• Safe for humans in case of accidental leaks (low toxicity).

4. Compatibility with Lubricants

• Must mix well with compressor oil and not cause degradation.

5. Environmental Impact

• Should have low Ozone Depletion Potential (ODP) and low Global Warming Potential (GWP).

• Older refrigerants like CFCs (e.g., R-12) and HCFCs (e.g., R-22) are being phased out.

• Eco-friendly options like HFCs (e.g., R-134a), HFOs, or natural refrigerants (e.g., ammonia, CO_2, hydrocarbons) are now preferred.

6. Leakage Detection

• Should be detectable by smell or electronic sensors to allow for safe maintenance.

Refrigerant	Type	ODP	GWP	Applications
R-22	HCFC	High	High	Older AC systems (phasing out)
R-134a	HFC	0	Medium	Domestic refrigerators, cars
R-410A	HFC blend	0	High	Modern split and central AC systems
R-600a	Hydrocarbon	0	Very Low	Domestic refrigeration
Ammonia (R-717)	Natural	0	0	Industrial refrigeration
CO■ (R-744)	Natural	0	Very Low	Supermarkets, commercial chillers

Table 9. Common Refrigerants and Their Uses

5.3.4. Window, split and central Air conditioning system - Chiller-water & Air cooled, VRF

5.3.4.1. Types of Air Conditioning Systems

1. Window Air Conditioning System

Overview:

• A compact unit with all components (compressor, evaporator, condenser, fan, and filter) enclosed in a single box.

• Installed in a window or a wall opening.

Working:

• Sucks warm air from the room.

• Cools it by passing over the evaporator coil.

• The hot air from the condenser is released outside.

Pros:

• Simple installation and low cost.

• Suitable for small rooms or single occupancy hotel rooms.

Cons:

• Noisy, blocks window space, and not aesthetically pleasing.

• Limited cooling capacity.

2. Split Air Conditioning System

Overview:

• Consists of two units:

o Indoor unit: Contains evaporator coil and blower.

o Outdoor unit: Contains compressor and condenser.

Working:

• Refrigerant absorbs heat inside and releases it outside via compressor cycle.

• Connected via refrigerant piping and electrical lines.

Pros:

• Quiet operation and efficient cooling.

• Ideal for guest rooms, small offices, and residential settings.

Cons:

• Slightly higher cost than window ACs.

• Requires professional installation.

3. Central Air Conditioning Systems

These systems are suitable for large buildings, hotels, banquet halls, lobbies, and multiple-zone cooling.

A. Chilled Water Central AC System

i. Water-Cooled Chiller:

• Uses water as the cooling medium for the condenser.

• Requires cooling towers to dissipate heat.

• Suitable for large hotels and commercial buildings.
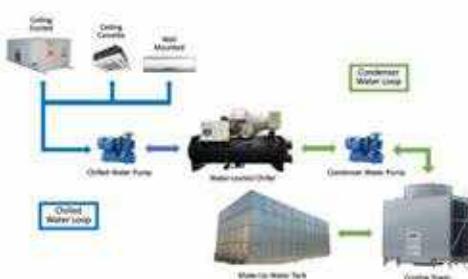
Figure:16 A typical water-cooled chiller systems (Picture courtesy Google)

ii. Working Principle:

1. Chiller cools water (typically to 7°C).
2. Chilled water is circulated through Air Handling Units (AHUs) or Fan Coil Units (FCUs).
3. These units cool the air, which is then distributed through ducts.
4. Heated water is returned to the chiller for re-cooling.

Pros:

- High efficiency and suitable for large-scale applications.
- Long life span.

Cons:

- High initial cost and complex installation.
- Requires more space (for chillers, cooling towers, pump rooms).

B. Air-Cooled Chiller System

- Similar to water-cooled chillers but uses air to dissipate heat, eliminating the need for cooling towers.
- Condenser fans blow air over coils to remove heat.

Pros:

- Easier to install and maintain than water-cooled systems.
- Good for medium-sized buildings or hotels with limited space.

Cons:

- Lower efficiency compared to water-cooled chillers.
- Affected by high ambient temperatures.

4. VRF / VRV Systems (Variable Refrigerant Flow / Volume)

- Advanced, energy-efficient AC system using refrigerant as the cooling/heating medium.
- One outdoor unit is connected to multiple indoor units, each independently controlled.

VRF System working principle

There are two types of VRF systems; air-cooled and water-cooled. The air-

cooled VRF system is just like your house air conditioner. It has a blower fan and cooling coil. It uses ambient air to carry away the heat. On the other hand, the water-cooled VRF system uses water to carry away the heat. It usually connected to cooling towers where the heat dissipates to the surrounding through evaporation.
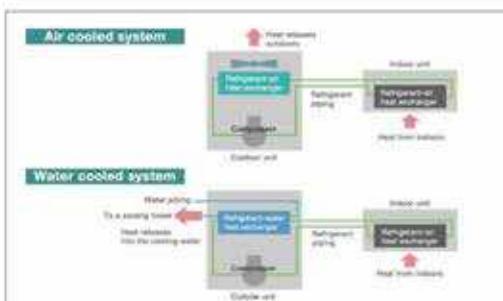

Figure: 17 A typical water-cooled chiller systems (Picture courtesy Google)a

Types:
- Heat Recovery VRF: Can simultaneously heat and cool different zones.
- Heat Pump VRF: Can either heat or cool all zones at once.

Pros:
- High energy efficiency, excellent zone control.
- Quiet and aesthetic indoor units.
- Ideal for hotels, high-rise buildings, and premium residences.

Cons:
- High installation cost.
- Requires trained professionals for design and maintenance.

5.3.5. Inspection checklist of HVAC

Regular inspection of HVAC (Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning) systems is crucial to ensure efficient operation, energy savings, occupant comfort, and prevention of unexpected breakdowns. Below is a comprehensive HVAC inspection checklist covering key components and operational parameters.

1. General Inspection
- Check for unusual noises or vibrations from any part of the system
- Inspect for any visible leaks (water or refrigerant).
- Ensure all components are accessible and free from obstructions
- Confirm system labelling and signage are clear and intact

2. Air Handling Units (AHUs) & Fan Coil Units (FCUs)

- Check belts for wear and proper tension.
- Inspect coil surfaces for dust, dirt, or corrosion.
- Test fan motor operation and amperage draw.

3. Ductwork and Air Distribution

- Inspect ducts for air leaks or damage.
- Ensure dampers and fire dampers are functional.
- Check for proper airflow at diffusers and return vents.
- Clean dust or mold accumulation inside ducts (if any).

4. Refrigeration Circuit

- Check refrigerant pressure levels and ensure they are within specifications.
- Inspect refrigerant lines for insulation damage or leaks.
- Test operation of the expansion valve.
- Ensure sight glass is clear (no bubbles or discoloration).

5. Condenser and Evaporator Coils

- Clean condenser and evaporator coils thoroughly.
- Check fins for bending or corrosion.
- Inspect drainage pans and clear blocked drain lines.

6. Compressors

- Check oil level and condition (for open-type compressors).
- Inspect for excessive noise, overheating, or vibrations.
- Measure voltage and amperage to ensure proper power supply.

7. Chillers (If applicable)

- Inspect chiller control panel and settings.
- Check chilled water and condenser water flow rates.
- Review inlet/outlet temperatures for efficiency.
- Inspect pumps, strainers, and expansion tanks.

8. VRF/VRV Systems

- Check communication between outdoor and indoor units.
- Monitor system pressure, superheat, and subcooling values.
- Clean filters in indoor units.
- Update software (if applicable).

9. Thermostats and Controls

- Test and calibrate thermostats.
- Verify programmed settings and schedules.
- Ensure sensors are working and placed properly.
- Test all safety and limit switches.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

10. Electrical Components
- Tighten electrical connections.
- Inspect fuses, contactors, relays, and circuit breakers.
- Check capacitor condition and microfarad rating.
- Test operation of control panel and BMS integration.

11. Ventilation and IAQ (Indoor Air Quality)
- Check operation of exhaust fans and fresh air intakes.
- Inspect air filters for cleanliness and pressure drop.
- Monitor CO_2 levels if sensors are installed.
- Ensure compliance with ASHRAE standards.

12. Safety Checks
- Confirm emergency shutoff switches are operational.
- Inspect smoke detectors and interlocks.
- Check for presence of refrigerant leak detectors.
- Ensure condensate overflows are routed correctly.

13. Documentation
- Record all readings and findings in a maintenance log.
- Update maintenance schedule for next service.

Inspection Type	Frequency
General Check	Monthly
Filter Replacement	1–3 Months
Coil Cleaning	6 Months
Full System Service	Annually
Chiller Inspection	Pre/Post Season
VRF System Audit	Every 6 Months

Table 10. HVAC Inspection Checklist Schedule

5.3.5. Role of HVAC in guest experience

HVAC (Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning) systems are critical components of any modern hotel infrastructure. They play a vital role in shaping the guest experience by providing thermal comfort, indoor air quality, and quiet operation. A well-maintained HVAC system enhances the ambiance, health, and satisfaction of guests, directly impacting customer reviews and loyalty.

Role of HVAC in Guest Experience

1. THERMAL COMFORT
- Ensures that guest rooms, lobbies, restaurants, and function areas are

maintained at comfortable temperatures, regardless of external weather conditions.

• Offers temperature control based on individual preferences through thermostats in guest rooms.

2. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT

• HVAC systems filter and circulate air, removing dust, allergens, and airborne pathogens.

• Fresh air intake and exhaust systems prevent stale air, odor accumulation, and mold growth, especially in humid areas like spas and kitchens.

3. HUMIDITY CONTROL

• Regulates indoor humidity between ideal ranges (typically 40–60%), preventing discomfort due to excessive dryness or dampness.

• Proper humidity control prevents damage to furniture, electronics, and building structure.

4. NOISE REDUCTION

• Modern HVAC systems are designed to operate quietly, ensuring a peaceful environment, especially in guest rooms, suites, and conference halls.

5. CUSTOMIZATION AND ZONING

• Allows individual room control, enabling guests to adjust settings for heating or cooling based on personal comfort.

• Multi-zone HVAC designs (e.g., VRF systems) allow independent operation of different zones for better energy efficiency and comfort.

6. ENERGY EFFICIENCY AND ECO-FRIENDLINESS

• Guests increasingly value sustainable practices. High-efficiency HVAC systems reduce a hotel's carbon footprint and align with green building standards (LEED, GRIHA).

• Communicating green HVAC features (e.g., energy recovery systems) can positively influence environmentally conscious guests.

Conditions for Thermal Comfort in Hotels

Thermal comfort refers to the state of mind that expresses satisfaction with the surrounding thermal environment. It depends on various environmental and personal factors.

1. ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

Parameter	Ideal Range	Impact on Comfort
Air Temperature	21–24°C (winter), 23–26°C (summer)	Directly affects sensation of heat or cold.
Humidity	40–60% RH	High: feels sticky; Low: causes dry skin, throat.
Air Movement	0.15 – 0.5 m/s	Ensures uniform cooling/heating and freshness.
Radiant Temperature	Depends on wall/window temperatures	Impacts overall thermal perception.

Table 11. Environmental Factors

2. PERSONAL FACTORS

- Clothing Insulation: Varies with seasons and personal attire.
- Metabolic Rate: Depends on guest activity (sleeping, exercising).
- Health and Age: The elderly or children may require different conditions.

HVAC and Specialized Hotel Areas

Area	HVAC Requirement
Guest Rooms	Quiet operation, personalized temperature control.
Ballrooms & Halls	High-capacity systems with zonal control.
Restaurants	Odor control, fresh air circulation.
Kitchens	Exhaust systems, make-up air, grease filtration.
Spas/Wellness Centers	Warm temperature, high humidity, aroma control.
Server/Data Rooms	Precision cooling to maintain equipment stability.

Table 12. HVAC and specialized hotel areas

Impact of Poor HVAC Performance

- Guest discomfort and complaints.
- Negative reviews on platforms like Trip Advisor or Booking.com.
- Mold and mildew growth due to humidity imbalance.
- Increased energy bills and maintenance costs.
- Poor indoor air quality leading to respiratory discomfort.

HVAC systems are integral to delivering a seamless and pleasant guest experience in the hospitality industry. Ensuring proper temperature, humidity, and air quality not only improves comfort but also contributes to guest satisfaction, health, and hotel reputation. Hotel engineers must prioritize preventive maintenance, energy efficiency, and system upgrades to align with evolving guest expectations and sustainability goals.

✨ *"A guest's first impression often depends on how the room feels – not just how it looks."*

Check-back Questions

1. What is the full form of HVAC?
2. Describe the vapor compression refrigeration cycle.
3. What is the difference between a water-cooled and an air-cooled chiller?
4. Name two refrigerants used in hotel HVAC systems.
5. How does the HVAC system affect guest comfort?

5.4. Building Transportation Systems

5.4.1. Introduction

Building transportation systems refer to mechanical and electromechanical systems that facilitate the vertical and horizontal movement of people and goods within a building. These systems are vital in multi-storey structures, especially in hotels, hospitals, malls, and commercial complexes where ease of movement, accessibility, and safety are key concerns.

5.4.2. Importance in Hotels and Commercial Buildings

- Guest Convenience: Enables smooth and quick movement between floors.
- Operational Efficiency: Aids in room service, housekeeping, and engineering operations.
- Accessibility: Essential for elderly guests and persons with disabilities.
- Fire Safety and Emergency Evacuation: Designed to comply with fire and safety regulations.
- Aesthetic and Modern Appeal: Enhances the visual and functional appeal of a hotel.

5.4.3. Types of Building Transportation Systems

1. Elevators (Lifts)

- Definition: Enclosed platforms used for vertical transport of passengers or goods.
- **Types:**
  - Passenger Elevators: Used by guests and staff for floor access.
  - Service Elevators: For staff use, linen carts, food trays, etc.
  - Freight Elevators: Designed to carry heavy loads and goods.
  - Glass Elevators: Aesthetic purpose, often installed in atriums.
- **Components:**
  - Car, hoist way, machine room, counterweights, control panel, doors.
- **Drive Mechanisms:**
  - Traction (geared/gearless) and Hydraulic systems.

- **Safety Features:** Emergency stop, door sensors, intercom, and overload sensor.

2. Escalators
- Definition: Moving staircases that transport people between floors.
- Applications: Common in hotel lobbies, shopping areas, airports.
- Features:
  - Automatic operation with sensor activation.
  - Handrails synchronized with steps.
  - Emergency stop button.
- Advantages: Continuous movement, higher capacity compared to elevators.

3. Moving Walkways (Travelators)
- Definition: Horizontal or inclined conveyor systems for transporting people.
- Use Case: Airports, large hotel complexes, convention centres.
- Types:
  - Flat belt or pallet-type travelators.
- Features: Safety edges, handrails, non-slip surfaces.

4. Dumbwaiters
- Definition: Small freight elevators used for moving food, laundry, or documents.
- Use in Hotels:
  - Transports trays from kitchen to room service floors.
  - Used in linen management between housekeeping and laundry.

5.4.4. Design Considerations

1. Capacity and Speed:
- Passenger load and building height determine the elevator size and speed.
- Hotels generally install elevators with 1.5–2.5 m/s speed.

2. Location and Number:
- Ideally located near guest entrances and service corridors.
- Sufficient number to avoid guest wait times (traffic analysis required).

3. Accessibility Standards:
- Compliance with ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) or national codes.
- Braille buttons, audio signals, wide door openings, handrails.

4. Safety & Emergency Systems:
- Automatic rescue devices (ARD) during power failure.
- Fire service mode, seismic sensors, intercoms for assistance.

5. Aesthetics and Interiors:

- Mirrors, wood panels, LCD screens, lighting enhance luxury appeal.
- Branding elements can be integrated.

5.4.5. Maintenance and Operation

- Routine Checks: Brakes, doors, cables, alignment, control panel diagnostics.
- Annual Inspection: Certified by government or private bodies for compliance.
- Technological Integration:
  - Smart elevators with touch less controls.
  - Building Management System (BMS) integration for real-time monitoring.

5.4.6. Energy Efficiency and Innovation

- Regenerative Drives: Reuse energy during descent to power ascent.
- Destination Control Systems (DCS): Groups passengers to reduce stops and wait times.
- Green Escalators: Operate in standby mode when not in use.

5.4.7. Legal and Regulatory Framework

- Must comply with local building codes, fire safety norms, and elevator acts.
- Regular audit, certification, and trained operator availability are mandatory.

Building transportation systems are essential for functionality, guest comfort, and safety in any multi-level building, especially hotels. From luxurious glass elevators to efficient service lifts and escalators, these systems should be carefully selected, designed, and maintained. With modern innovations and smart technologies, transportation systems also contribute to energy efficiency and operational excellence in hospitality management.

5.4.8. Operation, Care and Maintenance

Efficient operation and regular maintenance of building transportation systems—passenger elevators, freight elevators, escalators, and moving sidewalks—are critical in hotels and commercial buildings. These systems must provide safety, comfort, and reliability for guests, staff, and goods.

5.4.8.1. Passenger Elevators

A. Operation

- Controlled via call buttons outside and floor selection buttons inside the cabin.
- Equipped with automatic doors, sensors, emergency alarms, and overload indicators.
- Should allow smooth acceleration and deceleration.
- Emergency features include battery-powered lights, intercom, and Automatic

Rescue Device (ARD) during power failures.

B. Care and Maintenance

1. Daily Checks:
- Door operation (smooth opening/closing).
- Lights, buttons, and display panels.
- Emergency systems (alarm, phone, lighting).

2. Weekly/Monthly:
- Inspect control panel, guide rails, brakes, and cables.
- Test interlocks and limit switches.

3. Quarterly/Annually:
- Load test, levelling accuracy, and speed regulation.
- Certified inspection by authorized engineers.

4. Best Practices:
- Keep cabin clean and free of spills.
- Logbook for faults, breakdowns, and inspections.

5.4.8.2. Freight Elevators

A. Operation

- Designed for carrying heavy loads such as linen trolleys, food carts, or furniture.
- Operated manually or automatically, often slower and sturdier than passenger elevators.
- Doors can be manual or collapsible, with strong walls and flooring.

B. Care and Maintenance

1. Load Management:
- Never exceed the rated capacity.
- Ensure even distribution of goods to prevent damage.

2. Mechanical Care:
- Lubricate rails and gears.
- Regularly check motors, hoist mechanisms, and counterweights.

3. Safety:
- Inspect safety locks, interlocks, and emergency stop switches.
- Ensure clear signage of weight capacity and usage guidelines.

4. Cleanliness:
- Keep free from debris, grease, or spills to prevent slip hazards.

5.4.8.3. Escalators

A. Operation

- Automatically activated by motion sensors or floor buttons.
- Steps move continuously; passengers step on and off from platforms.
- Handrails synchronized with step movement.

B. Care and Maintenance

1. Daily:

- Clean treads and comb plates.
- Check for noise or irregular step movement.
- Ensure handrails are moving smoothly.

2. Weekly:

- Check for broken steps or loose parts.
- Inspect safety brushes, stop buttons, and indicator lights.

3. Monthly/Annually:

- Deep cleaning of mechanical parts.
- Inspect drive chains, motors, and step chains.
- Ensure safety systems (skirt brushes, stop buttons) are operational.

4. Precautions:

- Display safety signage: "Hold Handrail," "No Trolleys," etc.
- Monitor for children, elderly, and guests with mobility aids.

5.4.8.4. Moving Sidewalks (Travelators)

A. Operation

- Flat or inclined conveyors for horizontal movement.
- Often installed in large hotels, convention centers, and airports.
- Controlled via sensors or manual activation; continuous belt or panel movement.

B. Care and Maintenance

1. Surface Care:

- Clean regularly to remove dirt and debris that could jam the mechanism.

2. Safety Features:

- Check emergency stop buttons, lighting, and warning signs.
- Test anti-slip surfaces and alignment of handrails.

3. Mechanical Checks:

- Motor performance, chain alignment, and tension must be monitored.

• Ensure structural integrity of balustrades and side guards.

4. Routine Scheduling:

• Perform monthly servicing and annual inspections by certified engineers.

Checklist Item	Application
Emergency power backup (UPS/ARD)	Elevators
Stop button functioning	All systems
Fire-resistance compliance	Elevators and Escalators
Load capacity signage	Elevators, Freight Lifts
Cleanliness & housekeeping	All systems
Trained operator availability	Freight lifts & maintenance
Maintenance logbook & records	Required for all equipment

Table 13. General Safety & Best Practices

The efficient operation, timely inspection, and routine maintenance of elevators, escalators, freight lifts, and moving sidewalks are essential for guest safety, hotel efficiency, and infrastructure longevity. Establishing a preventive maintenance schedule and adhering to manufacturer guidelines ensures compliance, comfort, and trust in hospitality environments.

"A well-maintained elevator is not just a service—it's a silent host in the guest's journey."

Check-back Questions
1. What is the difference between a passenger elevator and a freight elevator?
2. Name two safety features installed in escalators.
3. How does a moving sidewalk differ from an escalator?
4. List two maintenance practices for elevators.
5. How do transportation systems impact guest satisfaction?

5.5. Smart Rooms Technology

5.5.1. Smart room technology and its applications in hotels

Smart Room Technology refers to the integration of Internet of Things (IoT), automation, and AI-based systems within a hotel guest room to enhance comfort, convenience, energy efficiency, and personalization. It enables guests to control various in-room features via voice, mobile apps, or touch panels using interconnected devices and centralized systems.

5.5.1.1 Core Features of Smart Hotel Rooms

1. Automated Lighting Control
• Lights adjust based on occupancy or natural light.

- Guests can customize lighting scenes (e.g., reading, relaxing, sleeping).

2. Climate Control (Smart Thermostats)
- Temperature settings adapt to guest preferences and weather conditions.
- Energy-saving modes during unoccupied hours.

3. Voice-Controlled Assistants
- AI devices (e.g., Alexa for Hospitality, Google Assistant) used for room service requests, controlling TV, AC, or lights.

4.Smart Entertainment Systems
- Access to personalized streaming services (Netflix, YouTube).
- Guests can mirror content from personal devices.

5. Mobile Room Key & Access Control
- Smart phones replace physical key cards for door access.
- Enhanced security through facial or fingerprint recognition.

6. Automated Curtains and Blinds
- Operated via mobile device or voice command.
- Sync with sunrise or sleep mode settings.

7. Smart Mirrors and TVs
- Display news, weather, or personalized greetings.
- Interactive touch features for in-room services or booking spa/dining.

8.Guest Service Integration
- Digital concierge and chatbot assistance.
- In-room tablets for ordering food, scheduling housekeeping, or requesting transport.

5.5.1.2 Applications and Benefits in Hotel Operations

1. Enhanced Guest Experience
- Personalized environment improves comfort and satisfaction.
- Tech-savvy travelers enjoy seamless digital interaction.

2. Operational Efficiency
- Staff alerted automatically when guests check out or request service.
- Housekeeping schedules optimized using occupancy sensors.

3. Energy and Resource Management
- Smart HVAC and lighting reduce electricity and water usage.
- Lower operational costs and improved sustainability.

4. Data-Driven Insights

- Analyzing guest preferences to tailor future services and marketing.
- Real-time monitoring for maintenance and predictive servicing.

5. Increased Safety and Security

- Smart locks, motion sensors, and surveillance integration.
- Fire and smoke detection systems linked to building management systems.

Smart Room Technology is transforming the modern hospitality experience by blending luxury with technology. It empowers guests with control and personalization while helping hotels reduce costs, streamline services, and strengthen sustainability efforts. As technology evolves, smart rooms will become a standard offering in high-end and mid-tier hotels worldwide.

5.5.2 Identify the components of a smart guest room

A Smart Guest Room integrates advanced technologies that enhance guest comfort, convenience, and operational efficiency. These rooms use Internet of Things (IoT), automation, sensors, and AI to deliver a personalized and seamless experience to hotel guests.

Component	Description
1. Smart Thermostat	Controls room temperature based on guest preferences or occupancy. Can be adjusted via app, voice, or panel. Helps with energy efficiency.
2. Smart Lighting System	Allows for mood-based lighting, dimming, and automatic shut-off when the room is unoccupied. Controlled via mobile devices or voice assistants.
3. Occupancy Sensors	Detects presence in the room to automate lighting, HVAC, and curtains. Helps optimize energy consumption.
4. Smart Locks and Keyless Entry	Uses RFID, Bluetooth, or smart phone apps for secure room access without physical keys. Enhances guest convenience and safety.
5. Voice Assistants	Devices like Amazon Alexa or Google Assistant allow voice control for lights, curtains, music, TV, and information requests.
6. In-Room Tablet or Control Panel	Central control unit to manage room settings (temperature, lighting, Do Not Disturb, service requests, etc.). Often replaces the traditional room phone.
7. Smart Curtains/Blinds	Can be programmed to open/close based on time, weather, or guest command. Enhances privacy and daylight management.
8. Smart TVs and Entertainment Systems	Provide streaming access (e.g., Netflix, YouTube) and screen mirroring from personal devices. May also offer hotel services and digital concierge features.
9. Mobile App Integration	Guests use hotel apps to control room features, check-in/out, request services, or communicate with staff.
10. Energy Monitoring Devices	Track and report energy usage in real time. Helps both the guest and hotel contribute to sustainability goals.
11. Smart Mirrors	Display interactive content like weather, news, or hotel services. Some double as entertainment or information panels.

12. Environmental Sensors	Monitor indoor air quality, temperature, humidity, and noise levels to adjust room conditions automatically.
13. Automated Mini bar and Inventory Sensors	Detects mini bar item usage and alerts staff for restocking and billing.
14. Bathroom Automation	Touchless faucets, smart toilets with bidet features, temperature-controlled showers, and anti-fog mirrors.

Table 14. Key Components of a Smart Guest Room

5.5.2.1. Optional Add-Ons in Premium Smart Rooms

• Facial recognition for room access
• Sleep tracking systems integrated into beds
• AI-based concierge bots
• Smart aroma diffusers
• Interactive room service menus via screen/tablet

5.5.2.2. BENEFITS of These Components

• For Guests: Personalization, comfort, convenience, and luxury.
• For Hotels: Energy savings, reduced manpower, efficient service delivery, improved guest satisfaction, and valuable data analytics.

5.5.3. Understand the integration of smart technologies with guest experience

In today's digital age, smart technology integration has revolutionized the hospitality industry. By combining automation, artificial intelligence (AI), and Internet of Things (IoT), hotels can enhance guest satisfaction, personalize services, and streamline operations. This integration bridges the gap between convenience and luxury, transforming traditional hotel stays into immersive, tech-driven experiences.

Technology	Guest Impact
Mobile Check-in/Check-out	Reduces wait times; allows guests to bypass the front desk. Enhances autonomy and speeds up arrival/departure processes.
Keyless Room Entry	Guests can access rooms via smartphone or biometric verification, improving convenience and security.
Voice-Controlled Devices	Enables guests to control lights, TV, air conditioning, and request services hands-free, adding comfort and novelty.
Smart Room Controls	Personalization of lighting, temperature, and entertainment according to guest preferences.
In-Room Tablets or Apps	Centralized access to hotel services: food ordering, housekeeping requests, spa bookings, and concierge support.

Streaming and Casting Services	Allows guests to connect personal devices to Smart TVs for a customized entertainment experience.
AI-Based Chatbots/Virtual Assistants	24/7 instant response to queries and service requests via text or voice, improving responsiveness.
Automated Service Alerts	Notifies housekeeping when a room is unoccupied or alerts maintenance about issues automatically.
Smart Minibars and Inventory	Sensors detect item usage and auto-update billing and restocking systems.

Table 15. Key Smart Technologies in Guest Experience

5.5.3.1. Benefits to the Guest Experience

1. Personalization
• Guests can set preferences before arrival (e.g., room temperature, favourite TV channels, and welcome messages).
• Enhances the feeling of being "at home" while traveling.

2. Convenience and Speed
• Contactless check-in/out, quick service requests, and automated room controls streamline the entire stay.
• Less dependence on human intervention for basic services.

3. Comfort and Control
• Greater in-room autonomy; guests can control environments according to mood or needs (e.g., sleep, work, leisure).
• Integration with wearable tech or guest apps adds further ease.

4. Safety and Hygiene
• Touch less technologies (voice, motion sensors) reduce surface contact.
• Smart alerts for sanitization or occupancy improve health and safety measures.

5. Accessibility
• Smart features like voice commands and automated doors enhance inclusivity for differently-abled guests.

5.5.3.2. Benefits to Hotels

• **Higher Guest Satisfaction:** Leads to better reviews and repeat business.
• **Operational Efficiency:** Smart systems reduce manual workload and enhance coordination.
• **Energy Management:** Automation ensures systems turn off when not in use, reducing utility costs.

5.5.3.3. Challenges in Integration

- High initial investment cost.
- Staff training requirements.
- Ensuring cyber security and data privacy.
- Dependence on reliable network infrastructure.

Smart technologies are not just tools but strategic enablers of an enhanced guest journey. When effectively integrated, they elevate comfort, convenience, and personalization, redefining the guest-hotel relationship. Hotels that embrace these innovations gain a competitive advantage, fostering loyalty in a tech-savvy clientele.

5.5.4. Appreciate the advantages and limitations of smart hotel rooms

Smart hotel rooms utilize advanced technologies such as IoT (Internet of Things), automation, voice control, and AI to enhance guest comfort, operational efficiency, and service personalization. While these innovations significantly improve the hotel experience, they also present certain limitations that must be understood and managed effectively.

5.5.4.1. ADVANTAGES of Smart Hotel Rooms

1. Enhanced Guest Experience

- Personalized control over room features like lighting, temperature, curtains, and entertainment.
- Voice assistants and mobile apps allow hands-free, instant service access.

2. Increased Operational Efficiency

- Automation of housekeeping alerts, maintenance requests, and energy management.
- Real-time room status helps streamline staff workflow and reduce response time.

3. Energy and Cost Savings

- Sensors and automated systems turn off appliances when the room is unoccupied.
- Smart HVAC and lighting reduce unnecessary power consumption, promoting sustainability.

4. Contactless Services

- Mobile check-in/check-out, digital room keys, and app-based service requests minimize physical interaction—especially crucial post-COVID.

5. Competitive Differentiation
• Tech-savvy guests are drawn to modern, connected environments.
• Smart rooms enhance brand image and position the hotel as innovative and future-ready.

6. Data-Driven Insights
• Guest behaviour and preference data allow hotels to customize future services and marketing strategies.
• Helps in anticipating guest needs for a proactive service approach.

7. Security and Safety
• Digital access controls, occupancy sensors, and emergency alerts improve guest security.
• Integration with fire alarms, surveillance, and air quality monitors ensures better risk management.

5.5.4.2. Limitations of Smart Hotel Rooms

1. High Installation and Maintenance Costs
• Initial investment in infrastructure, devices, and networking is expensive.
• Regular software updates and hardware maintenance incur ongoing expenses.

2. Technical Glitches and System Failures
• Malfunctioning devices, network downtime, or software bugs can frustrate guests.
• Over-reliance on technology may disrupt service during power outages or connectivity issues.

3. Cyber security Risks
• Smart systems collect and store sensitive guest data.
• Without robust cyber security measures, hotels are vulnerable to hacking, data theft, and breaches.

4. Learning Curve for Guests and Staff
• Not all guests are tech-savvy; some may struggle to use advanced systems.
• Staffs require regular training to operate and troubleshoot smart technologies effectively.

5. Limited Compatibility
• Integration challenges with older building infrastructure or legacy systems.
• Inconsistent user experience if systems from different vendors are not fully compatible.

6. Privacy Concerns
• Guests may feel uncomfortable with voice assistants or surveillance systems

in the room.

• Transparency about data collection and privacy policies is essential to build trust.

Smart hotel rooms offer a transformative guest experience and operational advantages that align with modern expectations of comfort and convenience. However, these benefits must be balanced with careful planning, staff training, security protocols, and ongoing investment. Understanding both the strengths and limitations helps hotels make informed decisions and maximize the return on their technological investments.

Check-back Questions

1. What does IoT stand for and how is it used in smart rooms?
2. Name any three features of a smart hotel room.
3. What is the role of a Property Management System (PMS)?
4. List two advantages of smart room technology for hotel operators.

5.6. Robotics in Routine Cleaning

5.6.1. Understand the role of robotics in routine hotel cleaning

The integration of robotics in housekeeping and facility management is revolutionizing the hospitality and cleaning industries. Robotic cleaning systems are now increasingly adopted in hotels, airports, hospitals, and large commercial spaces to maintain hygiene, ensure efficiency, and reduce labor costs. These systems use artificial intelligence (AI), sensors, machine learning, and autonomous navigation to perform cleaning tasks with precision and consistency.

Type of Robot	Function
Autonomous Vacuum Cleaners	Vacuum floors in guest rooms, lobbies, and hallways. Navigate around obstacles and recharge themselves.
Floor Scrubbing Robots	Mop and scrub hard surfaces in public areas like hotel lobbies, banquet halls, and kitchens. Often used for large surface areas.
Window Cleaning Robots	Used for cleaning glass surfaces, including high-rise windows, using suction and cleaning pads.
UV Disinfection Robots	Sterilize rooms and common areas using ultraviolet light to kill bacteria and viruses. Essential for post-pandemic hygiene practices.
Carpet Cleaning Robots	Specialized robots for deep-cleaning and maintaining carpeted areas in guest rooms and corridors.
Trash Collection Robots	Collect and transport garbage in large hotels or resorts, especially in back-of-house or outdoor areas.

Table 16. Types of Robotic Cleaning Devices

5.6.2. Features of Cleaning Robots

• **Autonomous Navigation:** Use LiDAR, infrared, or ultrasonic sensors to map and move around the area.

• **Obstacle Detection & Avoidance:** Avoids furniture, guests, and staff while cleaning.

• **Programmable Schedules:** Operate during off-peak hours or during specific times to avoid guest disturbance.

• **Remote Monitoring:** Staff can monitor robot performance through apps or control panels.

• **Eco-friendly Operation:** Consume less water and chemicals compared to manual cleaning in some cases.

• **Recharge and Resume:** Automatically return to charging stations and resume tasks once recharged.

5.6.3. Advantages of Robotics in Routine Cleaning

• **Consistency and Precision:** Robots maintain high cleaning standards without fatigue or error.

• **Labor Cost Reduction:** Reduces dependency on manual labor for repetitive tasks.

• **Operational Efficiency:** Frees housekeeping staff to focus on detail cleaning and guest service.

• **Improved Hygiene and Safety:** UV and chemical disinfection features enhance sanitation, crucial for post-COVID protocols.

• **24/7 Operation:** Can work overnight or during downtime, increasing productivity.

• **Data Collection:** Tracks areas cleaned, time taken, and maintenance requirements, useful for facility management.

5.6.4. Limitations and Challenges

• **High Initial Cost:** Significant investment required for purchase and setup.

• **Maintenance and Repairs:** Requires regular servicing and occasional technical support.

• **Limited Flexibility:** May not clean complex spaces or tight corners effectively.

• **Training Needs:** Staff must be trained to operate and troubleshoot robotic systems.

• **Integration with Existing Systems:** Needs compatibility with hotel management and housekeeping workflows.

5.6.5. Applications in Hotel Industry

- **Guest Rooms:** Vacuuming and surface cleaning.
- **Public Areas:** Lobby, corridors, banquet halls.
- **Back-of-House:** Service corridors and staff zones.
- **Restrooms:** Automated floor scrubbing and disinfection.
- **Outdoor Areas:** Some robots clean external walkways or windows.

Robotic cleaning is reshaping the future of hospitality operations. While not a complete replacement for human labor, cleaning robots act as supportive tools that increase productivity, hygiene, and guest satisfaction. As technology becomes more affordable and sophisticated, their role in daily hotel operations is expected to grow significantly.

5.6.6. Robotics in Housekeeping for the Hotel Management Industry

Transforming Hospitality Operations through Automation

1. Introduction

The hospitality industry thrives on delivering exceptional guest experiences, and cleanliness plays a vital role in ensuring those expectations are consistently met. With rising labor costs, staff shortages, and the demand for enhanced hygiene protocols, hotels are increasingly turning to robotics in housekeeping as a solution. Robotics not only brings consistency and efficiency but also supports sustainability goals and helps optimize resource usage.

In India, certain companies are pioneering the shift to autonomous floor-cleaning solutionsin hotels, malls, airports, and commercial spaces. This report explores the key benefits of robotic housekeeping, types of cleaning robots used in hospitality, and the strategic roles played by executive housekeepers and new team members in facilitating the adoption of this transformative technology.

2. Benefits of Using Robotics in Hotel Housekeeping

a) Operational Efficiency

Robots work autonomously and continuously, reducing downtime and increasing cleaning frequency without depending on manual labour. Hotels can maintain consistently high standards of cleanliness in lobbies, banquet halls, and guest corridors throughout the day.

b) Cost Savings

By automating repetitive tasks, robotic cleaners reduce reliance on outsourced manpower or overtime labor. Brands like Peppermint Robotics offer a clear ROI within 12–18 months through lower water usage, electricity savings, and reduced chemical consumption.

c) Consistency & Hygiene

Unlike manual cleaning, which can vary in quality, robots ensure uniform cleaning every cycle. Many robots come with HEPA filters and adaptive pressure cleaning—crucial in maintaining post-pandemic hygiene standards.

d) ESG and Sustainability

Peppermint robots are designed to optimize energy use and minimize water consumption, aligning well with the green building and ESG compliance standards that many hotel chains now aim for.

e) Data and Analytics

Robots equipped with IoT sensors and dashboards provide real-time updates on cleaning schedules, completed tasks, and maintenance alerts helping hotels make data-driven decisions and improve facility management.

3. Types of Cleaning Robots Used in Hotels and Hospitality

a) Vacuum Cleaning Robots

These are primarily used on carpeted floors, common in corridors and banquet areas. These are a widely deployed solution in large-scale hospitality operations for consistent daily vacuuming.

E.g Founded in 2019, Peppermint Robotics makes Vacuum Cleaning Robots for deployment in hospitality industry. These robots can clean upto 50,000 sq.ft in 4 hours helping hotels clean lobbies and provide a quick turnaround for large scale banquet bookings.

b) Scrubber-Dryer Robots or Dry Mopping Robots

Ideal for tile or marble surfaces, these robots mop and scrub simultaneously and are used in lobbies, kitchens, and service corridors.

You can see the Robot in action in this video -

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8IvtNHKIO4g

c) Room Service Delivery Robots

Used for delivery of towels, toiletries, or minibar items, these robots navigate elevators and hallways. We will be seeing these robots in action in India very soon to improve Customer Experience and provide a fast turnaround to customer requests.

d) Multipurpose Robots

Future models will combine vacuuming, mopping, and disinfection.

4. Role of Executive Housekeepers in Adoption of Technology

Executive housekeepers are central to successful implementation of robotic cleaning in hotels. Their role spans evaluation, integration, training, and optimization of robotics within the housekeeping workflow.

a) Technology Evaluators

Executive housekeepers are the first to evaluate whether robotics can fit into the hotel's housekeeping SOPs. They assess cleaning cycles, floor types, shift

b) Change Managers

Adopting robotics involves redesigning cleaning schedules and team roles. Executive housekeepers manage the shift by retraining existing staff, explaining how robots complement—not replace—manual cleaning, and organizing areas of collaboration.

c) Workflow Integrators

They establish cleaning routes, mark robot zones, assign charging areas, and supervise data dashboards. In hotels using Peppermint robots, executive housekeepers manage the real-time dashboard to monitor task completion and battery levels.

d) Influencers and Champions

They influence senior leadership by demonstrating cost and quality benefits. Housekeepers who proactively push automation adoption become tech champions, accelerating transformation in hotel operations.

5. Role of New Joinees in Introducing New Technology

Young professionals entering the hospitality workforce today bring with them a tech-first mindset and can be important enablers in technology adoption.

a) Digital Natives

Most new joinees in hotels from hotel management schools are comfortable using apps, dashboards, and digital workflows. They can quickly learn robot interfaces, schedule cleanings, and handle minor troubleshooting.

b) Internal Evangelists

They often become early adopters of new technology & robotics. When new employees demonstrate comfort with robotics, it helps older staff adapt more easily.

c) Innovation Drivers

New staff can suggest improvements in robot use: like combining manual cleaning before high-profile events with scheduled robot passes afterward, or using data logs to adjust cleaning cycles based on footfall trends.

d) Talent Multipliers:
By freeing young staff from repetitive cleaning tasks, robots let them focus on higher-touch guest services—like room personalization, in-room dining upgrades, or concierge-like services. This improves staff engagement and retention.

6. Case Example: Peppermint Robotics in Action

Several leading Indian hotel chains and airports use Peppermint Robotics products for daily floor cleaning. In recent deployments:

- Corridors, banquet halls, and lobbies are cleaned using VC20 or SD20 robots,

depending on floor type.

- Robots operate autonomously across multiple floors using elevators, and housekeeping teams use Peppermint's dashboard to monitor progress.
- Hotels have reported savings in manual cleaning costs, water use, and

Feedback from facility managers and executive housekeepers consistently highlights ease of use, silent operation, and consistent cleaning quality as key advantages.

7. Conclusion

Robotic housekeeping is not a futuristic concept—it is already redefining hotel operations in India and globally. Adoption, however, depends on forward-thinking executive housekeepers and digitally fluent new professionals who embrace automation not as a threat, but as a tool for excellence. The future of hotel housekeeping lies in the collaborative synergy between humans and machines—and that future has already begun.

> ### Check Back Questions:
> 1. Name two types of cleaning robots used in hotels.
> 2. How do robots improve cleaning efficiency in hotels?
> 3. What is a UV disinfection robot, and why is it used?
> 4. List two challenges faced when using robots in routine hotel cleaning.

5.7. Care and Maintenance of Audio Visual (AV) Equipment

5.7.1. Identify AV equipment commonly used in hotel banquets, conferences, and rooms

Banquet and conference spaces demand high-performance AV equipment to support a wide range of events, from board meetings to gala dinners.

1. Projectors and Screens

- Digital Projectors: For displaying presentations, videos, or event content.
- Motorized Screens: Retractable projection screens, often ceiling-mounted for large audiences.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

2. LED Video Walls and Flat Panels
• Used for dynamic displays, promotional content, or live streaming.
• High-definition displays suitable for branding, slide shows, or multimedia playback.

3. Sound Systems
• Wireless Microphones (handheld, lapel, headset): Essential for presenters and speakers.
• Speakers and Amplifiers: Deliver clear audio throughout the venue.
• Mixing Consoles: Control and balance multiple audio inputs during events.

4. Video Conferencing Systems
• Includes cameras, microphones, and integration with platforms like Zoom, MS Teams, or Webex.
• Supports hybrid events and virtual participation.

5. Control Panels and Automation
• Centralized touch panels to operate lighting, AV systems, curtains, and air conditioning.

6. Lighting Systems
• Stage Lighting: Enhances visibility and ambiance during events.
• Spotlights and Up lighters: For decorative and functional lighting.

7. Interpretation and Translation Equipment
• Wireless headsets and transmitters used during multilingual conferences.
• Allows simultaneous translation without disrupting the main presentation.

5.7.1.1. AV Equipment in Guest Rooms

Guest rooms are equipped with AV solutions aimed at comfort, convenience, and entertainment.

1. Smart Televisions
• Allow access to streaming services, casting, and personalized content.
• Often integrated with hotel property management systems (PMS).

2. Bluetooth Speakers or Sound bars
• Provide high-quality audio for in-room entertainment.
• Some luxury hotels offer bedside smart speakers with alarm and concierge services.

3. Media Hubs
• Allow guests to connect their devices via HDMI, USB, or Bluetooth to the room's AV system.

4. Digital Signage
  • Displays personalized greetings, promotional offers, and hotel services.

5. Voice-Activated Devices
  • Devices like Amazon Echo or Google Nest to control lighting, curtains, TV, and temperature.

5.7.1.2. AV Equipment for Outdoor Events (Hotel Lawns, Rooftops, Poolside)

Guest rooms are equipped with AV solutions aimed at comfort, convenience, and entertainment.

  • Portable PA Systems
  • Wireless Speakers and Microphones
  • Mobile LED Screens
  • Battery-operated Projectors
  • Ambient Lighting and DJ Systems

5.7.1.3. Public Address (PA) Systems

Public Address Systems are used to broadcast announcements, emergency alerts, background music, or event information in lobbies, banquet halls, corridors, restaurants, and back-of-house areas.

Components:
  • Amplifiers
  • Microphones (corded/wireless)
  • Ceiling/Wall Speakers
  • Audio Mixers
  • Paging Consoles
  • Control Panels

Maintenance Guidelines:

1. Audio Clarity Checks
  • Test speakers and microphones regularly for distortion, echoes, or low volume.
  • Check all speaker zones for consistent volume and clarity.

2. Wiring and Connectivity
  • Inspect wiring for frays or disconnections.
  • Ensure wireless devices are synced and charged.
  • Avoid coiling wires tightly to prevent internal breaks.

3. Backup Power Support
  • Connect critical components to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

• Test PA systems on backup power to ensure operation during outages.

4. Routine Testing and Calibration
• Perform sound checks before events and weekly in common areas.
• Balance microphone sensitivity and output levels via mixers or DSPs.

5. Dust and Moisture Control
• Keep equipment in dry, ventilated control rooms or racks.
• Use dust covers on microphones and consoles when not in use.

6. Emergency Broadcast Functionality
• Integrate with fire alarm and emergency systems.
• Conduct monthly drills to test emergency audio announcements.

7. Staff Training
• Train relevant staff on basic troubleshooting and usage of the system.
• Ensure technicians can operate mixers and reset malfunctioning units quickly.

5.7.1.4. Benefits of Quality AV Systems in Hotels

• **Enhances Guest and Client Experience:** Professional AV solutions improve overall satisfaction.

• **Increases Event Revenue:** Corporate clients value well-equipped venues.

• **Supports Branding:** High-quality screens and sound reinforce the hotel's brand image.

• **Facilitates Hybrid and Virtual Events:** Expands service offerings and audience reach.

The use of modern AV equipment in hotel banquet halls, conference rooms, and guest rooms is no longer optional—it is a critical component of hospitality services. Keeping AV systems updated, well-maintained, and staff-trained ensures seamless event delivery and enhances the overall guest experience.

5.7.2. Learn care and maintenance protocols for optimal functioning

5.7.2.1. Care and Maintenance of AV and IT Equipment in Hotels

I. Overhead Projector (OHP)

Use: Displays transparencies for training, conferences, and lectures.

Maintenance Guidelines:
• **Lens Cleaning:** Use a soft cloth and lens cleaning fluid regularly.
• **Lamp Care:** Avoid touching lamps with bare hands; replace if flickering or dim.

- **Cooling System:** Ensure vents are clean and fans work to prevent overheating.
- **Storage:** Keep in a dust-free environment when not in use; cover with a protective case.

II. Slide Projector

Use: Projects photographic slides for visual presentations.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Slide Tray Handling:** Avoid jamming by inserting slides carefully.
- **Lens & Bulb Check:** Clean lens frequently; replace bulbs with compatible models.
- **Motor & Mechanism:** Lubricate mechanical parts as per manufacturer'srecommendation.
- **Dust Protection:** Use dust covers when idle.

III. LCD Projector

Use: Widely used for PowerPoint and multimedia presentations.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Filter Cleaning:** Clean air filters regularly to prevent overheating.
- **Lens Care:** Use lens wipes and avoid touching with fingers.
- **Lamp Monitoring:** Track lamp hours and replace when needed.
- **Mount Stability:** Secure ceiling/wall mounts firmly to avoid mishandling.

IV. PowerPoint Presentation Units

Use: Laptop or PC setups used to run PowerPoint or similar presentation software.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Software Updates:** Keep PowerPoint and OS updated to prevent compatibility issues.
- **Backup Copies:** Always have a USB or cloud backup of the presentation.
- **Connection Check:** Ensure seamless connection with projectors or displays.
- **Remote Control Use:** Test clickers and batteries beforehand.

V. Personal Computer (PC) and CPU

Use: For back-office, reservations, billing, and presentations.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Regular Cleaning:** Clean CPU vents and keyboards to prevent dust build-up.
- **Antivirus Software:** Keep security software updated.

- **Disk Cleanup:** Run maintenance tools (defragment, disk cleanup) monthly.
- **Cooling Fans:** Ensure CPU fans function well to prevent overheating.

VI. Modem

Use: Provides internet connectivity throughout hotel premises.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Ventilation:** Ensure modem is placed in a well-ventilated area.
- **Firmware Updates:** Install manufacturer-released updates regularly.
- **Restart Schedule:** Reboot modem weekly for optimal performance.
- **Check Cables:** Inspect and replace damaged ethernet or power cables.

VII. Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

Use: Provides backup power to PCs, servers, and network devices during outages.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Battery Testing:** Conduct periodic battery performance checks.
- **Load Capacity Check:** Ensure UPS is not overloaded.
- **Environment:** Place in cool, dry areas to maintain battery life.
- **Self-Diagnostics:** Run built-in diagnostics every month.

VIII. Printer

Use: Used in front office, admin, and banquet departments for printing invoices, reports, etc.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Cartridge Replacements:** Replace ink/toner only with compatible brands.
- **Nozzle Cleaning:** Use software tools for print head cleaning.
- **Paper Quality:** Avoid using folded or moist paper to prevent jamming.
- **Rollers & Tray:** Clean feed rollers and trays to ensure smooth printing.

IX. Laptop

Use: Portable computing device for managers, presenters, and guests.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Battery Care:** Avoid overcharging; calibrate battery periodically.
- **Screen Protection:** Use screen guards and clean with microfiber cloth.
- **Software Maintenance:** Keep OS, antivirus, and applications updated.
- **Storage:** Carry in padded laptop bags to avoid physical damage.

X. Server

Use: Hosts hotel management systems, email services, and databases.

Maintenance Guidelines:

- **Temperature Control:** Keep in a climate-controlled server room.
- **Security Updates:** Apply software and security patches regularly.
- **Data Backups:** Automate daily or weekly backups to off-site/cloud storage.
- **Physical Inspection:** Check hard drives, fans, and cables monthly.
- **Access Control:** Restrict physical and digital access to authorized personnel.

XI. Public Address (PA) System

- **Speaker Testing:** Check clarity, volume, and functionality weekly.
- **Microphone Care:** Avoid dropping; store in padded holders.
- **Cable Inspection:** Replace damaged wires; label all connections.
- **Amp & Mixer Maintenance:** Keep ventilated; clean dust from panels and knobs.

XII. Channel Music System

- **Speaker Balancing:** Test all zones for even volume distribution.
- **Content Source Check:** Update playlists and digital media regularly.
- **Wiring Audit:** Ensure proper insulation and secure connectors.
- **Volume Settings:** Set appropriate limits to prevent distortion or guest discomfort.

XIII. Fire Panels

- **Visual Inspection:** Check for error messages, battery status, and lights daily.
- **Sensor Testing:** Conduct smoke and heat detector tests monthly.
- **Battery Maintenance:** Replace backup batteries annually or as required.
- **Alarm Test:** Schedule full-system drills quarterly to ensure speaker and light functionality.

General Best Practices for All AV/IT Equipment

- **Use Surge Protectors:** Prevent electrical damage due to power fluctuations.
- **Labelling:** Clearly label cables and ports to avoid connection errors.
- **User Training:** Train staff on safe usage and minor troubleshooting.
- **Inventory Tracking:** Maintain a logbook for serial numbers, maintenance dates, and issues reported.

Routine care and preventive maintenance of AV and IT equipment in hotels are essential for uninterrupted operations, data safety, and guest satisfaction. A proactive approach reduces downtime, extends equipment life, and ensures the

hotel maintains a professional and tech-friendly image.

5.8. Fire Identification and Evacuation Systems

5.8.1 Identify fire detection and suppression systems

Detector Type	Function	Common Areas
Smoke Detector	Detects airborne smoke particles	Guest rooms, corridors
Heat Detector	Triggers alarm upon high temperature	Kitchens, boiler rooms
Gas Leak Detector	Detects presence of LPG/natural gas	Kitchens, gas plant rooms
Flame Detector	Detects infrared/UV emitted by flames	Fuel storage, generator rooms

Table 17. Fire Detection

5.8.1.1 Fire Detection Systems

Fire detection systems are critical for identifying the presence of fire, smoke, or heat at an early stage and initiating an alarm to allow evacuation and response. These systems are designed to ensure guest safety, staff preparedness, and property protection.

1. Smoke Detectors
- **Types:**
  - **Ionization Smoke Detectors:** Detect fast-flaming fires.
  - **Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:** Better for smouldering, slow fires.
- **Function:** Detect presence of smoke particles in the air and trigger an alarm.
- **Location:** Guest rooms, corridors, kitchens, service areas.

Figure 19: Smoke Detector (Picture Courtsey Wikipedia)

2. Heat Detectors
  • **Types:**
    • **Fixed Temperature Detectors:** Trigger when a preset temperature is exceeded.
    • **Rate-of-Rise Detectors:** Trigger when temperature rises rapidly.
  • **Function:** Detect abnormal heat levels; suitable for kitchens, laundry rooms.

Figure: 20 Heat Detector (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

3. Flame Detectors
    • **Function:** Detect infrared or ultraviolet light from open flames.
    • **Usage:** High-risk zones like fuel storage or boiler rooms.

Figure: 21 Flame Detectors (Picture Courtesy Google)

4. Manual Call Points (MCPs)
    • **Function:** Allows occupants to manually raise a fire alarm by pressing/ breaking a glass panel.
    • **Location:** Hotel corridors, near staircases, exits.

5. Control Panel (Fire Alarm Control Panel - FACP)
    • **Function:** Central hub that monitors input from detectors and activates alarms or suppression systems.
    • **Feature:** Shows real-time zones, alerts, and logs.

6. Alarm Devices
    • **Types:** Sirens, strobe lights, voice evacuation systems.
    • **Feature:** Notify occupants to evacuate; especially important for visually or hearing-impaired guests.

5.8.1.2. Fire Suppression Systems

Fire suppression systems are activated automatically or manually to extinguish or control fires before they spread. These systems vary depending on the nature of the fire hazard.

1. Sprinkler Systems
- **Types:**
  - **Wet Pipe:** Always contains water; most common in hotels.
  - **Dry Pipe:** Filled with air under pressure; used in cold areas.
  - **Pre-Action:** Combines features of dry pipe and alarm systems.
- **Function:** Activated by heat; releases water over affected area.

Figure: 22 Water Sprinkler (Picture Courtesy Google)

2. Fire Extinguishers
- **Types & Uses:**
  - **Water:** Class A fires (paper, wood).
  - **Foam:** Class A and B (flammable liquids).
  - **CO_2:** Class B and electrical fires.
  - **Dry Chemical Powder:** Class A, B, C fires.
  - **Wet Chemical:** Class K (kitchen fires – cooking oil/fats).
- **Placement:** Throughout the hotel; especially in kitchens, electrical rooms, corridors.

Figure: 23 Fire Extinguishers (Picture Courtesy Wikipedia)

Operating Fire Extinguishers (T.A.K.E. Method)
A standard protocol to remember the correct usage of fire extinguishers:
T.A.K.E. =

Operating Fire Extinguishers (T.A.K.E. Method)

A standard protocol to remember the correct usage of fire extinguishers:

T.A.K.E. =

- T – Twist and pull the safety pin
- A – Aim the nozzle at the base of the fire
- K – Keep a safe distance (1.5–2 meters)
- E – Engage the lever/squeeze handle to discharge

3. Fire Blankets

- **Function:** Smothers small fires, especially in kitchens.
- **Material:** Usually made of fire-retardant fibre.

4. Gas Suppression Systems

- **Types:** FM200, CO_2, Inergen, Novec 1230.
- **Use:** Used in server rooms, electrical panels where water would damage equipment.
- **Function:** Quickly displaces oxygen or absorbs heat to suppress fire.

System	Description
Sprinkler Systems	Activate automatically when temperature rises (usually $\geq 68°C$)
Fire Extinguishers	Portable, manually operated for localized fire suppression
Fire Hydrants	Fixed firefighting systems for large-scale water discharge
Gas Suppression Systems	Use inert gases (CO2, FM-200) for data centers, server rooms
Wet Riser System	Vertical pipe system for water supply to each floor

Table 17. Fire Suppression Systems in Hotels

5. Kitchen Hood Suppression System

- **Function:** Specifically designed for commercial kitchens.
- **Mechanism:** Detects grease fires; automatically releases wet chemicals to extinguish flames.

6. Hydrant Systems

- **Components:** Fire hydrants, hoses, nozzles, and fire pumps.
- **Use:** Fire-fighters can access water supply quickly during a fire emergency.

5.8.1.3. Integration with Building Management Systems (BMS)

- **Automation:** Modern hotels integrate fire detection and suppression systems with BMS for centralized control.
- **Benefits:** Immediate alerts, faster evacuation coordination, automated reports.

5.8.1.4. Maintenance & Testing Requirements
- **Routine Inspections:** Weekly, monthly, and annual checks of detectors, alarms, and suppression systems.
- **Third-Party Audits:** Conducted by certified fire safety agencies.
- **Record Keeping:** Logs of testing, faults, and repairs must be maintained.

5.8.2 Demonstrate fire evacuation procedures
Fire evacuation procedures are crucial in ensuring guest and staff safety, minimizing injury, and preventing panic during a fire emergency. Hotels, due to high occupancy and unfamiliar guests, must have well-documented and practiced evacuation protocols.

5.8.2.1. Pre-Evacuation Preparedness
a. Evacuation Plan Documentation
- Floor-wise evacuation maps displayed on guestroom doors and hallways.
- Marked emergency exits, stairwells, and fire assembly points.

b. Staff Training
- Staff must be trained in:
  o Evacuation routes
  o Guest assistance (elderly, disabled, children)
  o Fire warden responsibilities
  o Use of fire extinguishers and alarm systems

c. Emergency Equipment Readiness
- Functioning fire alarms, extinguishers, signage, emergency lights.
- Communication devices like walkie-talkies for coordination.

5.8.2.2. Step-by-Step Evacuation Procedure
a. Detection and Alarm
- Fire detected through smoke/heat detectors or reported manually.
- Fire alarm system is activated (automatically or manually via MCP).

b. Immediate Staff Response
- Trained staff act as fire wardens and begin floor-wise checking.
- Kitchen, engineering, and front office teams initiate emergency roles.
- Disable elevators; guide people to stairwells.

Element	Purpose
Fire Staircases	Provide protected escape route from upper floors
Fire Exit Routes	Clearly marked corridors leading to emergency exits
Exit Signage	Illuminated signs guiding toward exits
Refuge Areas	Fireproof holding areas for elderly/disabled
Assembly Points	Safe outdoor space for gathering after evacuation

Table 18. Pre-Evacuation Preparedness

c. Evacuation of Guests

- Calmly guide guests using the nearest safe exit route.
- Prioritize:
  - o Children
  - o Elderly
  - o Physically challenged
  - o Non-English speaking guests (use universal signs)
- Use floor marshals and backup teams to sweep rooms for stragglers.

d. Use of Fire Exits

- Lead guests to fire escape stairwells.
- Keep stairways clear of obstructions.
- Never use elevators during fire evacuation.

e. Assembly at Muster/Assembly Point

- All evacuees gathered at pre-defined fire assembly points.
- Conduct headcount using guest registration and staff roster.

f. Communication with Authorities

- Inform local fire department immediately.
- Engineering team to assist with system shutdowns (e.g., HVAC, gas).
- Liaise with emergency services upon arrival.

5.8.2.3. Post-Evacuation Procedures

a. Roll Call & Accountability

- Check guests and staff against attendance lists.
- Report missing persons to emergency services immediately.

b. First Aid & Support

- Provide medical aid where required.
- Counsel guests and manage panic.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

NCHMCT

c. Damage Control
- Engineering inspects the premises once declared safe.
- Hotel management prepares incident report.

d. Communication & Recovery
- Notify guests about the situation through official communication.
- Arrange alternative accommodations if necessary.

5.8.2.4. Fire Drills and Mock Evacuations

a. Frequency
- Conduct mock drills every 6 months or as per local regulations.

b. Assessment Criteria
- Speed of evacuation
- Clarity of communication
- Guest handling
- Functioning of alarm and emergency lights

c. Feedback and Improvement
- Conduct debriefs meetings post-drill.
- Update evacuation plans and training modules as needed.

5.8.2.5. Fire evacuation: Fire staircases, Fire routes, Fire suppression, operating fire extinguishers

1. Fire Staircases

a. Definition
Fire staircases are specially designated and constructed stairways used exclusively for emergency evacuation during fire incidents.

b. Characteristics
- Fire-resistant materials (concrete, metal).
- Enclosed with fire-rated doors and walls.
- Pressurized ventilation to prevent smoke infiltration.
- Well-lit with emergency lighting.
- Clearly marked with illuminated "Exit" signs.
- Accessible from each floor via fire exit doors.

c. Usage Guidelines
- Never used for daily operations; reserved only for emergencies.
- Must be free of obstructions at all times.
- Should be connected directly to fire exits on each floor.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

2. Fire Routes (Evacuation Routes)

a. Definition

Fire routes are pre-planned clearly marked pathways that guide occupants from any location in the building to a safe exit during a fire.

b. Key Elements

- Directional signage with arrows.
- Fluorescent/photo luminescent signs for visibility during power failures.
- Floor plans displayed in rooms and hallways.
- Routes should avoid elevators, leading instead to fire staircases.

c. Best Practices

- Staff should be trained to guide guests, especially vulnerable individuals.
- Fire routes must be regularly inspected and kept unobstructed.
- Map updates required when building layout changes.

3. Fire Suppression Systems

a. Definition

Fire suppression systems are automated or manual systems that aim to control or extinguish a fire at its early stage to prevent spread.

b. Types Commonly Used in Hotels

- **Sprinkler Systems:** Automatically activated by heat; most common in guest rooms and corridors.
- **Gas Suppression Systems (e.g., FM200, CO_2):** Used in server rooms and electrical panels where water could cause damage.
- **Wet Chemical Systems:** Used in kitchens; reacts with oils to extinguish grease fires.
- **Portable Fire Extinguishers:** Manually operated to suppress incipient-stage fires.

c. Maintenance

- Regular inspection and testing.
- Systems must comply with fire safety codes and hotel insurance policies.
- Logs must be kept for all checks and refills.

4. Operating Fire Extinguishers (PASS Technique)

a. Understanding Fire Extinguishers

Each extinguisher is suited for specific fire classes:

- o A – Paper, wood, fabric.

o B – Flammable liquids

o C – Electrical fires

o D – Metals (rare in hotels)

o K – Kitchen oils and fats

b. PASS Technique

The universally taught method for using a fire extinguisher:

1. P – **Pull** the pin to unlock the handle.
2. A – **Aim** the nozzle at the base of the fire.
3. S – **Squeeze** the handle to release the extinguishing agent.
4. S – **Sweep** the nozzle from side to side at the fire base until extinguished.

c. Usage Guidelines

The universally taught method for using a fire extinguisher:

- Use only for small, contained fires.
- Always ensure a safe exit route behind you.
- Do not use water-based extinguishers on electrical or oil fires.

An effective fire evacuation strategy depends on well-maintained fire staircases, clearly marked fire routes, automated suppression systems, and properly used extinguishers. All hotel staff must be trained in fire safety protocols and regularly participate in mock drills to ensure the safety of guests and personnel.

5.8.2.6. Special Considerations in Hotel Environment

- Multilingual evacuation signs and instructions.
- Night-time evacuation protocols (reduced staff).
- Guestroom evacuation tools (e.g., escape ladders for low-rise hotels).
- Special protocols for high-rise hotels (refuge floors, pressurized staircases).

Fire evacuation procedures must be clearly communicated, regularly rehearsed, and consistently improved. Staff must remain calm, alert, and proactive, ensuring the safe and timely evacuation of all hotel occupants in the event of a fire emergency.

Check Back Questions:

1. Name any two types of fire detectors and their locations in a hotel.
2. What does the acronym T.A.K.E. stand for in fire extinguisher usage?
3. What kind of fire is a CO_2 extinguisher suitable for?

Lets Sum Up:

This unit provides a comprehensive understanding of the essential building systems that form the backbone of hotel operations. Each system contributes significantly to the overall guest experience, operational efficiency, safety, and sustainability of the property. Hotel staff—especially those in housekeeping, engineering, and front office—must be familiar with these systems to ensure smooth coordination and prompt problem-solving.

One of the core systems discussed is the HVAC (Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning) system, which maintains thermal comfort, manages indoor air quality, and controls humidity levels. A well-maintained HVAC system ensures guests experience a comfortable environment regardless of the outside temperature. Different components such as AHUs, FCUs, chillers, VRV/VRF units, and thermostats were explored, along with their routine maintenance protocols.

The unit also emphasizes the importance of a robust water supply and drainage system. Understanding various types of water closets (e.g., European, Indian, wall-hung), cisterns (low-level, conventional, concealed), and plumbing materials (PVC, CPVC, copper, PEX) is crucial for ensuring hygiene, water efficiency, and guest satisfaction.

Sewage treatment is another critical component. The process, divided into four key stages—preliminary, primary, secondary, and tertiary—ensures that wastewater is effectively treated before being released or reused. This reduces environmental impact and supports sustainable operations.

Electrical systems and fire safety are vital for maintaining a safe environment for both guests and staff. The unit discusses methods to identify and report electrical faults, the use of circuit breakers, emergency lighting, and the importance of grounding. Fire prevention systems like smoke detectors, sprinklers, fire exits, extinguishers, and alarm systems are essential safety features in a hospitality setting.

Additionally, vertical transportation systems such as elevators and dumbwaiters were covered. These systems support the efficient movement of guests, staff, and supplies within the hotel. Emphasis is placed on safety protocols and regular maintenance.

The unit also introduces the importance of energy efficiency and green building practices, including the use of smart systems and certifications like LEED and GRIHA. These practices not only reduce operating costs but also appeal to environmentally conscious travellers.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

Review Questions

Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. Which of the following is not a component of a smart guest room?
   a) Smart thermostat
   b) Traditional lock and key
   c) Occupancy sensor
   d) Smart TV

2. What is the standard frequency of electricity in India?
   a) 40 Hz
   b) 50 Hz
   c) 60 Hz
   d) 70 Hz

3. Which HVAC system is known for energy efficiency and zone control?
   a) Window AC
   b) Split AC
   c) VRF/VRV system
   d) Package unit

4. The device used to prevent grease and oils from entering the drainage system is:
   a) Trap
   b) Flushing valve
   c) Grease trap
   d) Stop valve

5. Which refrigerant is considered eco-friendly and natural?
   a) R-22
   b) R-134a
   c) R-600a
   d) R-410a

Fill in the Blanks

1. The unit used to measure electrical energy consumption is _____.

2. A plumbing fitting that prevents sewer gases from entering is called a _____.

3. VRF stands for _____ Refrigerant Flow.

4. The device used to control lighting, temperature, and other features in a smart room is a _____.

5. In HVAC systems, the indoor air quality is managed using _____ and _____ systems.

State True or False

1. R-22 is a refrigerant with zero Ozone Depletion Potential. (T/F)
2. A water pipe carrying discharge from toilets is called a soil pipe. (T/F)
3. ELCB is used to detect gas leaks in guest rooms. (T/F)
4. A smart mirror can display weather updates and hotel services. (T/F)
5. Window AC systems are ideal for large banquet halls. (T/F)

Short Answer Questions

1. List any four signs of electrical faults in a hotel room.
2. What is the function of a Sewage Treatment Plant (STP) in hotels?
3. Define thermal comfort. What is the ideal range of humidity for hotel rooms?
4. Mention any two advantages of using smart room technology in hotels.
5. Differentiate between a trap and a vent pipe.

Long Descriptive Type Questions

1. Describe the basic components of an HVAC system and explain their functions in hotel guest comfort.
2. Explain the different types of plumbing pipes used in hotel buildings and their relevance.
3. Discuss the types and working of different air conditioning systems used in hotels.
4. What are the key safety practices for managing electrical systems in hotels?
5. Describe the concept of Smart Room Technology and its impact on guest experience and hotel operations.

Activity

Activity Title	Description	Learning Outcome
1. Role-Play: Engineering Round	Divide students into small teams. Assign them roles as housekeeping staff, maintenance staff, or guests. Each team will simulate reporting or resolving faults (e.g., electrical trip, blocked drain).	Understand fault identification and inter-departmental coordination.
2. Diagram Labelling Exercise	Provide students with unlabeled diagrams of HVAC or STP systems from the unit. Ask them to label components and explain their functions in pairs.	Reinforce system understanding through visual identification.

3. Energy Audit Walkthrough	Conduct a mock hotel energy audit in the classroom or campus. Students note energy-saving practices (e.g., LED use, insulation) and report gaps.	Develop awareness of sustainability practices in hotel operations.

Caselet: The Comfort Inn Operational Challenge

Background:

The Comfort Inn is a 120-room mid-sized hotel located in a popular hill station. As the tourist season begins, the hotel experiences full occupancy. However, within the first week of operations at peak capacity, several complaints begin surfacing:

• Guests in the deluxe block complain of inconsistent room temperatures and stuffy air, especially in the evening hours.

• A persistent leak from a concealed cistern in three washrooms leads to slippery floors and negative online reviews.

• The kitchen exhaust fans in the all-day dining restaurant stop functioning properly, creating uncomfortable conditions for both chefs and diners.

• During a weekend wedding event, one of the elevators malfunctions, leaving guests waiting for long durations.

• Maintenance staff report that electrical panels near the HVAC unit are overheating, and some circuits have tripped multiple times.

The General Manager is concerned about guest satisfaction, operational risk, and safety compliance. He calls for an emergency meeting with the Engineering Head, Housekeeping Executive, and Front Office Manager to evaluate the situation and take corrective steps.

Student Discussion Questions:

1. Identify which hotel building systems are failing in this case and how each issue affects guest experience and safety.

2. Suggest a preventive maintenance plan that could have avoided at least two of these problems.

3. How should different departments (Engineering, Housekeeping, Front Office) coordinate in such a situation?

4. What guest communication steps should be taken to manage complaints and protect the hotel's reputation?

5. As a hotel manager, how would you integrate energy-efficient and sustainable systems to reduce future risks?

Glossary:

1. AHU (Air Handling Unit) – A device used to circulate and condition air as part of a heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning system.

2. Biological Control – The use of natural predators, parasites, or pathogens to control pest populations (limited use in hospitality).

3. BMS (Building Management System) – An automated system that controls and monitors building services such as lighting, HVAC, security, and fire systems.

4. Brand Audit – It is a systematic evaluation process, to ensure the hotel adheres to the collaborating brand's operational and service standards.

5. Centralized Purchasing – A method where all procurement is done by one central department for all hotel units.

6. Circuit Breaker – A safety device that automatically stops electrical flow in a circuit if it becomes overloaded.

7. Cistern – A tank used to store and release water for flushing toilets. Can be conventional, low-level, or concealed.

8. Comprehensive AMC (Annual Maintenance Contract) – A maintenance agreement that includes both service and the cost of parts for hotel equipment over a set period.

9. Compressor – A component in HVAC systems that compresses refrigerant and drives the cooling cycle.

10. Concealed Cistern – A cistern hidden inside a wall or cabinet, used in modern restrooms for a clean look.

11. Condenser – A heat exchanger that condenses refrigerant vapor into liquid by releasing heat.

12. Contract Maintenance – It is the outsourced maintenance service, often requiring specialised equipment and manpower for jobs like façade cleaning, pest control, etc., often performed by third-party vendors.

13. Corrective Maintenance – Maintenance activities that are performed only after a fault is detected, done to repair the equipment and bring it back to its proper working condition.

14. Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee Model – A pricing model where the contractor is reimbursed for actual costs plus a fixed fee, ensuring transparency but lacking cost control incentives.

National Council for Hotel Management and Catering Technology
(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)
NCHMCT

15. CPVC (Chlorinated Polyvinyl Chloride) – A durable plastic pipe designed to handle both hot and cold water, commonly used in plumbing systems.

16. Cryonite - A non-chemical pest control method that uses frozen carbon dioxide to instantly kill insects like bed bugs by freezing them.

17. damage, wear, or being deemed unusable (requires a separate discard record).

18. Decentralized Purchasing – Each department or hotel unit does its own purchasing independently.

19. Deep Cleaning / Seasonal Maintenance – Activities done by hotel housekeeping & maintenance department, including – intensive cleaning and servicing done on a monthly, quarterly or annual basis, mostly during low occupancy periods or during seasonal change.

20. De-snagging – It is the corrective process of correcting the snags identified during the snagging process.

21. Down or Down – Alternative Upholstery: For duvets and pillows; synthetic options offer hypoallergenic benefits.

22. Eco-Friendly Practices – The sustainable methods that are employed to minimize the environmental impact of hotel operations.

23. Emergency Maintenance – The unplanned maintenance required during a sudden breakdown or failure of equipment.

24. Energy Conservation – The efficient use of energy to reduce costs and wastage while preserving environmental resources.

25. Engineering Department – The department in a hotel, responsible for all maintenance, repairs, and utilities management.

26. Evaporator Coil – The part of the HVAC system where the refrigerant absorbs heat and cools the surrounding air.

27. Expansion Valve – A device in refrigeration systems that controls the amount of refrigerant released into the evaporator.

28. FCU (Fan Coil Unit) – A simple unit consisting of a fan and a heating/cooling coil used to control room temperature.

29. Fire Suppression System – Equipment designed to extinguish or prevent the spread of fire, including sprinklers, extinguishers, and alarms.

30. Frass – Waste material or excrement produced by insects like carpenter ants or termites, often resembling sawdust.

31. Green Rating for Integrated Habitat Assessment (GRIHA)– India's national rating system for sustainable buildings.

32. GRN (Goods Received Note) – A document confirming the receipt of goods and checking them against the PO.

33. Grounding – A safety measure in electrical systems where excess electricity is safely directed into the earth.

34. Guestroom Maintenance – The upkeep of fixtures, fittings, and amenities done regularly or periodically in guest rooms to meet brand standards and guest expectations.

35. Harbourage – A place where pests live, hide, or reproduce, such as cracks, cluttered areas, or voids within walls.

36. HEPA Filter – High-Efficiency Particulate Air filter used in vacuums to trap fine particles, including insect debris and allergens.

37. HPMV – High pressure mercury vapour ,produces bluish, White light.

38. HPSV – High pressure sodium vapour produces golden, yellow Light.

39. Hue – Hue is the name of the colour. It is also the attribute of a colour by which we distinguish colour (Red, blue, green etc.).

40. HVAC – Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning – a system that controls indoor climate and air quality for comfort and safety.

41. Indent – A formal request raised by a department to procure required materials.

42. Insect Growth Regulator (IGR) – A chemical that disrupts the life cycle of insects, preventing them from maturing or reproducing.

43. Inspection – Checking the received items for quantity and quality against the specifications.

44. Integrated Pest Management (IPM) – A comprehensive approach combining monitoring, prevention, and targeted treatment to manage pests in an environmentally responsible way.

45. Intensity/ chroma – It refers to brightness or dullness of a colour

46. Internal Audit – In-house quality checks conducted by the hotel management to evaluate compliance and performance and maintain standardisation.

47. Invoice – A bill sent by the vendor listing the goods provided and the amount to be paid.

48. ISO Audit – The quality assessment conducted to check compliance with international standards such as ISO 9001 or ISO 14001 followed by hotels.

49. Issue Slip – A document used when goods are handed over from the store to a department.

50. Just-in-Time (JIT) – A purchasing method where goods are bought just before they are needed to avoid overstocking.

51. Last Inventory Data – The total quantity of each linen item recorded during the previous physical inventory.

52. Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) – A globally recognized green building certification system.

53. Lead-time Quantity – The number of purchase units that are used up between the time a supply order is placed and the time the order is actually received

54. Local Purchase – Emergency buying of goods from nearby local suppliers.

55. Maintenance – The process of care of equipment and infrastructure to ensure functionality to avoid breakdowns.

56. Maintenance Logbook – A record that tracks maintenance tasks, dates, issues, and actions taken by the maintenance department, either in physical or digital formats.

57. Material Issue Register – A logbook or digital system to record items issued from the store.

58. Mosaic – They are small, individual pieces (often under 100 mm²) made of ceramic, porcelain, glass, metal, natural stone, or a mix, mounted together to form patterns or images.

59. Non-recycled inventory items – These are consumed or used up during routine housekeeping operations. They are generally single-use or have a very short lifespan once put into service.

60. Non-Residual Spray – A pesticide that works only upon direct contact with pests and has no long-term effect after drying.

61. Ootheca – A protective egg case produced by female cockroaches, containing multiple eggs.

62. Par – Stands for the usual amount of each item that needs to be kept in stock in order to support regular, everyday housekeeping tasks.

63. Par Stock Level – The standard quantity of an item that should always be available in stock.

64. Performance-Based Pricing – A payment structure where the contractor's compensation is tied to measurable performance outcomes such as cleanliness scores or guest satisfaction.

65. PEX (Cross-linked Polyethylene) – A type of flexible plastic piping used for both hot and cold-water supply lines.

66. Pheromone Trap – A pest monitoring device that uses species-specific scents

(pheromones) to lure and trap insects.

67. Predictive Maintenance – Maintenance activities based on the actual condition of equipment, done using monitoring tools and data analytics, form records maintained.

68. prevent waste.

69. Preventive Maintenance – Scheduled maintenance that is carried out to prevent equipment breakdown before they occur.

70. Primary Treatment – The first stage in sewage treatment where solids settle at the bottom and lighter materials are skimmed from the top.

71. Procurement – The process of acquiring goods and services through purchase.

72. Purchase Discounts/Volume Pricing – Sometimes, buying in larger quantities offers significant discounts. The executive housekeeper must weigh these savings against storage costs and potential obsolescence

73. Purchase Order (PO) – A legally binding document sent to the vendor confirming the order details.

74. Quartzite – is a natural metamorphic rock formed from pure quartz sandstone, transformed under extreme heat and pressure.

75. Rate Contract – A fixed-price agreement with a supplier for a specified period.

76. Recorded Discard – The number of linen items formally removed from inventory due to wear and tear.

77. Recycled inventory – These items have a relatively limited useful life but are reused repeatedly in housekeeping operations

78. Requisition – A request form that lists the required items, quantities, and the purpose of usage.

79. Residual Spray – A pesticide that remains effective on surfaces for an extended period after application, killing pests on contact later.

80. Rodenticide – A chemical substance used to kill rodents like mice and rats, often requiring careful handling and placement.

81. Routine Maintenance – Regularly performed tasks like inspections, minor repairs, etc. to ensure smooth operation, as done in Annual Maintenance Contracts.

82. Safety Stock Level – The number of purchase units that must always be on hand in case of emergencies, unexpected damages, delays in delivery, or sudden spikes in demand. This ensures smooth daily operations even in unforeseen

circumstances

83. Secondary Treatment – A biological process where microorganisms break down dissolved and suspended organic matter.

84. Security & Safety System – This is a combination of all the physical and electronic measures designed to protect the guests, staff, and property. Upkeep of fire alarms, extinguishers, smoke detectors, and other safety devices.

85. Service Level Agreement (SLA) – A formal document that defines the level of service expected from a contractor, including quality benchmarks, timelines, and penalties for non-compliance.

86. Sewage Treatment Plant (STP) – A facility designed to treat wastewater through mechanical, biological, and chemical processes before safe disposal or reuse.

87. Shade – shade is a hue that has been darker by adding black.

88. Sheers – Light, translucent fabrics (e.g., voile or organza) used under blackout curtains to diffuse light softly

89. Shelf Life ('Best Before' or Expiry Date) – Perishable items or those with a limited shelf life (e.g., certain cleaning chemicals, some guest amenities) should have lower maximums to

90. Snagging – The process of identifying the faults or unfinished tasks during final stages of a project or renovation.

91. Staff Performance Appraisals – Conducting formal periodic reviews of individual staff performance against set objectives and standards.

92. Surveillance System – It includes equipment like CCTV cameras and monitoring systems in a hotel, used to enhance hotel security.

93. Sustainable Practices – These are the long-term environmentally and socially responsible maintenance and operational strategies followed by hotels.

94. Tertiary Treatment – The final stage in wastewater treatment, often involving disinfection to remove pathogens and fine particles.

95. Texture – It refers to the surface quality or the feel of an object. The roughness, smoothness, softness and hardness of surface is referred to as texture.

96. Thermal Comfort – The condition of mind that expresses satisfaction with the surrounding environment's temperature and humidity.

97. Thermal Remediation – A pest control technique that uses heat treatment to eliminate pests by raising temperatures to lethal levels.

98. Third-party Audit – The audit carried out by an independent external agency, done to verify hotel operations and standards.

99. Threshold Level – The pest population level at which control measures must be taken; in hospitality, this is often zero or near-zero.

100. Tint – is a hue that has been lighter by adding white.

101. Unit Pricing – A pricing model where services are billed per unit (e.g., per square foot cleaned or per item laundered), providing scalability but sometimes risking quality control.

102. Usage Tracking – Monitoring the consumption of cleaning supplies, guest amenities, and linen to identify unusual patterns, prevent waste, and deter pilferage

103. Value – Value describes the lightness or darkness of colour.

104. Vendor – A supplier who provides goods or services to the hotel.

105. Vertical Transportation – Systems such as elevators and dumbwaiters that transport people and goods within a building.

106. Waste Management – It is the process of handling solid and liquid waste which includes segregation, recycling, and safe disposal.

107. Water Closet (WC) – A sanitary fixture for the disposal of human waste; includes Western-style, Indian-style, or wall-hung types.

108. Zapper (ULV Fogging) – A device or method that disperses ultra-low volumes of insecticide as a fog or mist to kill flying pests, often discouraged over food prep areas due to contamination risk.

REFERENCES

A Guide to Improved Hospitality Procurement (2024). https://www.netsuite.com/portal/resource/articles/accounting/hospitality-procurement.shtml (retrieved on 10th June 2025)

AHLA. (2020). Smart Hotel Technology White Paper. American Hotel & Lodging Association.

Arora, C. P. (2013). Refrigeration and Air Conditioning. McGraw Hill Education.
ASHRAE. (2021). HVAC Applications Handbook. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers.

Bansal, R. K. (2016). Basic Electrical Engineering. Laxmi Publications.
Bhatnagar, A. (2022). Smart Hospitality: A Guide to Automation in Hotels. TechFront Publishers.

Bhave, P. R. (2013). Water Supply and Sanitary Engineering. Pearson Education India.

Bosch. (2022). PA and EVAC Systems in Hospitality. Bosch Security Systems.

Bureau of Energy Efficiency. (2021). Energy Efficiency in Electrical Utilities. Ministry of Power, Government of India.

Bureau of Indian Standards. (2015). IS 2190: Code of Practice for Selection, Installation and Maintenance of Portable First-Aid Fire Extinguishers.

Chattopadhyay, S. (2021). Hotel Maintenance Management. Oxford University Press.

Cisco Systems. (2021). Smart Room and IoT for Hospitality. Retrieved from https:// www.cisco.com

CPHEEO. (2019). Manual on Sewerage and Sewage Treatment Systems (Part A). Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs, Government of India.

G.Raghubalan Smritee Raghubalan .(2023)Hotel Housekeeping operations and management.

IS 14665-1:2000. (2016). Lift Code for Hydraulic and Electric Lifts. Bureau of Indian Standards.

IS 2065:1992. (2009). Code of Practice for Water Supply in Buildings. Bureau of Indian Standards.

ISHRAE. (2020). HVAC Guidelines for Hotels and Commercial Buildings. Indian Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers.

Joan C. Branson ,Margaret Lennox. Hotel, Hostel and Hospital Housekeeping.

John Cullen.(1986) The Lighting Hand Book.

Kappa, M. M., Nitschke, M. A., & Schappert, D. L. (2016). Managing housekeeping operations (3rd ed.). American Hotel & Lodging Educational Institute.

Margeret M. Kappa, Aleta Nitscheke, Patricia B.Schappert . Managing Housekeeping Operation.

Ministry of Home Affairs. (2020). Fire and Life Safety Guidelines for Hospitality Buildings, Government of India.

National Fire Protection Association. (2020). NFPA 70: National Electrical Code.

National Fire Protection Association. (2021). NFPA 10: Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers.

Otis Elevators. (2022). Elevator Design Guide for Hotels. Otis Worldwide Corporation.

P.Parimalam,A.Andal and M.R Premlata (2008). A text book of Interior

Decoration.

Pita, E. G. (2012). Air Conditioning Principles and Systems. Pearson Education.
Raghubalan, G., & Raghubalan, S. (2015). Hotel housekeeping: Operations and management (3rd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Robotics Business Review. (2022). Applications of Robotics in Hospitality Sector. Retrieved from https://www.roboticsbusinessreview.com

Schneider Electric. (2020). Hotel Building Management Systems Handbook.
Sharma, R. (2018). Hotel Facility Planning. Oxford University Press.
Sian Rees (Hamlyn) Lighting styles.
Singh, A. (2020). Hotel Facility Planning. Oxford University Press.
Smith, R. C. (2017). Building Services Engineering. Routledge.
Suzy Chiazzari. Living in colour.

World Travel and Tourism Council. (2021). Future of Housekeeping: Robotics and Automation. WTTC Reports.
Yamaha Corporation. (2021). AV Systems for Commercial Spaces. Yamaha Pro Audio.

Reference Books:
Hotel Engineering by G.C. Mahajan
Hotel Maintenance and Engineering by Amitabh Devendra
Facility Management by Kathy Roper & Richard Payant
Housekeeping Operations, Design and Management by Malini Singh & Jaya B. George
Tourism Principles, Practices, Philosophies by Goeldner and Ritchie
Housekeeping Operations, Design and Management, Malini Singh & Jaya B. George, Jaico
Publishing House, 2008, ISBN: 8179929477, 9788179929476.

HOTEL HOUSEKEEPING (A Training Manual), SUDHIR ANDREWS, McGraw Hill, 2018, ISBN: 9781259004988

The Professional Housekeeper, Madelin Schneider, Georgina Tucker, Mary Scoviak, Wiley, December 1998, ISBN: 978-0-471-29193-0

NCHMCT

NATIONAL COUNCIL FOR HOTEL MANAGEMENT & CATERING TECHNOLOGY (NCHMCT), NOIDA

(An Autonomous Body Under Ministry of Tourism, Govt. of India)

Plot No: A-34, Sector 62, Noida, Uttar Pradesh - 201309